

# Introduction

**Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 816SH.**

- For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
- This manual was created exclusively for SoftBank 816SH handset sold in Japan.
- Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

**SoftBank 816SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.**

## **Note**

- Copying this manual in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (**P.19-37**) about unclear or missing information.

# Content Search

Function/Title Search

▶ **Contents P.viii**  
**Index P.19-22**

Objective Search

▶ **Objective Search P.iv**  
**Index P.19-22**

Feature Search

▶ **Feature Search P.vi**  
**Contents P.viii**

Using Handset

▶ **Display Indicators P.1-6**  
**Function List P.19-8**

Manual Structure

▶ **Contents P.viii**  
**Chapter Contents**

Troubleshooting & Assistance

▶ **Troubleshooting P.19-4**  
**Warranty & Service P.19-36**

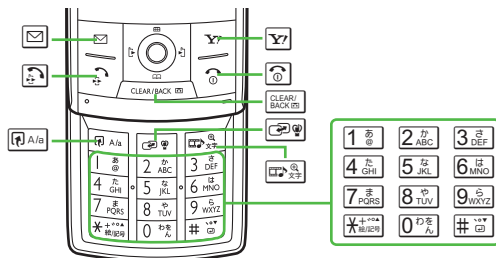
Getting Started	<b>1</b>
Basic Operations	<b>2</b>
Text Entry	<b>3</b>
Phone Book	<b>4</b>
Video Call	<b>5</b>
Camera	<b>6</b>
Media Player	<b>7</b>
Managing Files (Data Folder)	<b>8</b>
Additional Settings	<b>9</b>
Connectivity	<b>10</b>
Memory Card	<b>11</b>
Tools	<b>12</b>
Optional Services	<b>13</b>
Messaging	<b>14</b>
Yahoo! Keitai	<b>15</b>
S! Applications	<b>16</b>
Entertainment	<b>17</b>
Communication	<b>18</b>
Appendix	<b>19</b>

# Using This Manual

In this manual, most operations are described with Slider open (**P.1-8**) in Standby. Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.

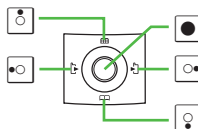
## Keypad Keys

Indicated in this manual as shown below.



## Multi Selector

Select menu items, move cursor and scroll, etc. In this manual, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown to the right.



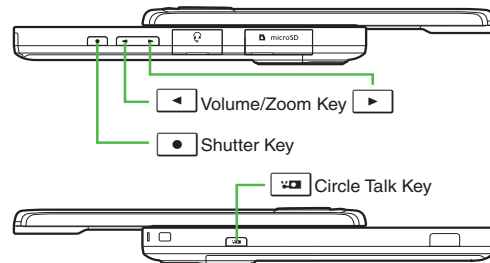
### Basic Multi Selector Operations

- : Press or
- : Press or
- : Press , , or

## Side Keys

Indicated in this manual as shown below.

Operate functions such as mobile camera and volume control.

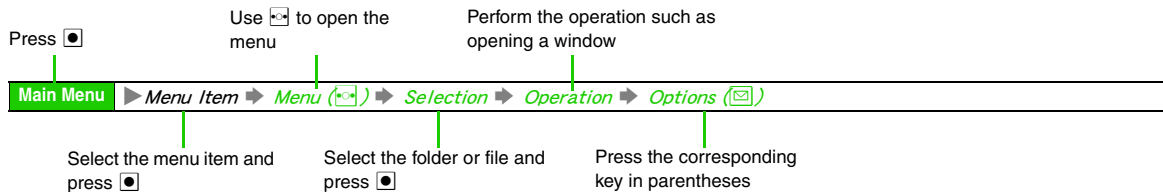


## Japanese Functions & Services

When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

## Abbreviated Steps

Handset operations starting from Main Menu are abbreviated as follows:



Manual descriptions are based on Standard Menu (P.1-21) with default font size (P.9-5). Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance when Simple Menu or Large Font Menu is active, font size is changed, etc.

In this SoftBank 816SH Instruction Manual, SoftBank 816SH is referred to as "handset."

# Objective Search

## My Contact Information

### My Phone Number

Easily confirm your own phone number (phone number is saved on USIM Card)

**My Details: P.1-16**

### My Mail Address

Change the default handset mail address to personalize it and help reduce spam

**Customizing Handset Address: P.14-2**

## Customizing 816SH

### Downloading Music (Japanese)

Access download site via Main Menu and follow links to find Chaku-Uta®

**Downloading Media Files: P.7-3**

### Setting Ringtones & Ringvideos

Use downloaded music or video files as sound/video for handset responses

**Ringtone/Ringvideo: P.9-2**

## Mastering The Basics

### Learning the Handset

Learn handset key assignments and how to open/select menu items to access useful functions

**Using This Manual: P.ii**

### Placing Calls

Place Voice Calls to other handsets or landlines, etc., or Video Calls to other video call-compatible mobile devices

**Initiating a Call: P.2-2**  
**Initiating a Video Call: P.5-3**

## Fun Stuff

### Using Mobile Camera

Take advantage of a built-in 2 Mega Pixel camera to capture quality digital still or video images wherever you go

**Capturing Still Images: P.6-7**  
**Recording Video: P.6-8**

### Using Media Player

Use Media Player to play music or video files imported from PCs, etc. and saved on a Memory Card

**Media Player: P.7-2**

### My Contact Information

Save your name, the handset mail address, etc. to exchange your own contact information with others easily

**My Details: P.4-18**

### Messaging Multiple Recipients

Send text or multimedia messages to multiple numbers or addresses at one time using SMS or S! Mail messaging

**Sending Text Messages: P.14-3**  
**Adding Recipients: P.14-5**

### Exchanging Files Wirelessly

Align 816SH Infrared Port within 20 cm of a compatible device's infrared port to exchange a variety of handset files, etc.

**Infrared: P.10-2**

### Customizing Standby Display

Change Wallpaper or install Custom Screens-applications that load single-themed Wallpaper, menus, tones, etc.

**Wallpaper: P.9-4**  
**Custom Screens: P.9-9**

### Customizing Fonts

Change font size/weight for menus, text entry, messaging windows, etc., or set all fonts with Large Font Menu

**Large Font Menu: P.1-23**  
**Font Settings: P.9-5**

### Customizing User Interface

Download and install applications that load user interface themes and menus based on previous handset interfaces

**Familiar Usability: P.9-11**

### Entering Text

Enter alphanumerics and Japanese script, and Pictograms and Symbols in messages and Phone Book, etc.

**Text Entry: P.3-2**  
**Key Assignments: P.19-10**

### Using Messaging Services

Send short text messages via SMS or longer text/multimedia messages via S! Mail, or create Arrange Mail

**Messaging: P.14-2**  
**Creating Arrange Mail: P.14-8**

### Browsing the Internet

Launch Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites, or use PC Browser to browse PC Internet sites on 816SH

**Yahoo! Keitai: P.15-2**

### Playing Games

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download different applications via Yahoo! Keitai to enjoy mobile gaming

**S! Applications: P.16-2**

### Staying in Touch

Talk with multiple parties simultaneously via Circle Talk; exchange current usage status/mood with friends via Hot Status

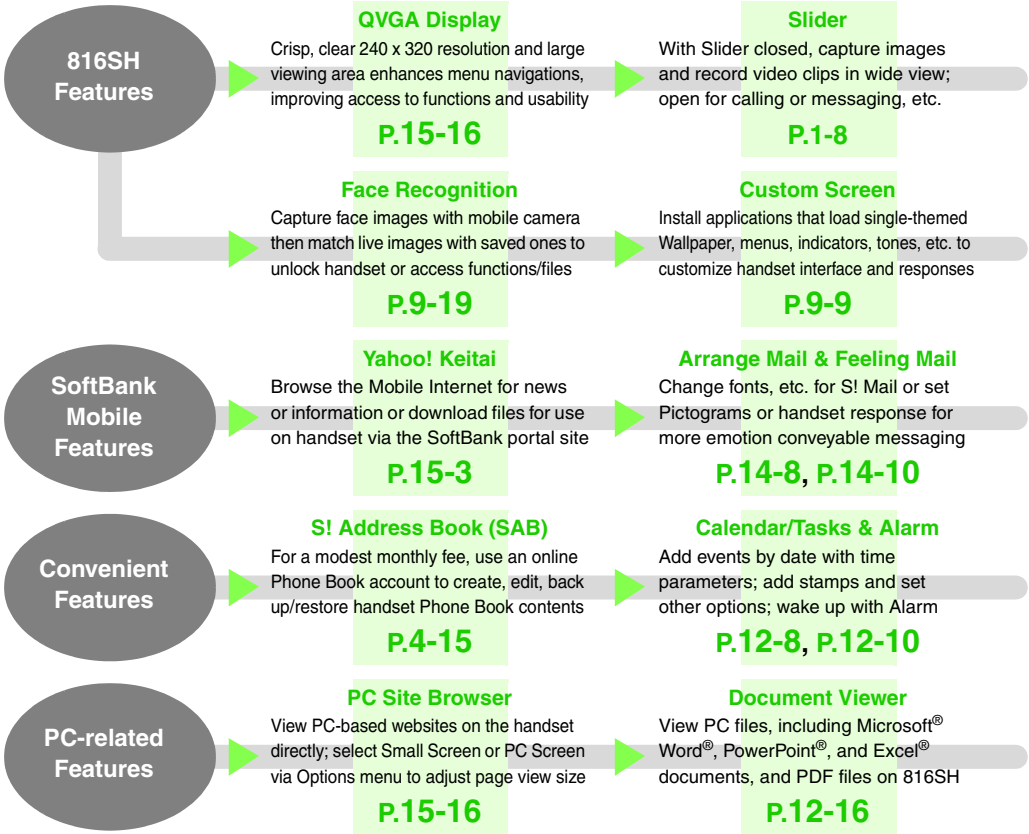
**Hot Status: P.18-3**  
**Circle Talk: P.18-8**

### Managing Schedules

Save events to Calendar or Tasks; set Alarm as important event/appointment reminders with customized video/tones

**Calendar: P.12-2**  
**Tasks: P.12-8**

# Feature Search



## International Roaming

Make/receive calls, exchange mail or access services wherever compatible networks are available outside Japan

**P.2-15**

## BookSurfing® (Japanese)

Download and view e-media, such as e-books, comics and photo books, via this preinstalled 816SH S! Application

**P.17-4**

## S! Town, S! Loop & S! Cast (Japanese)

Enjoy a virtual S! Town, keep in touch with S! Loop, or register for S! Cast for Weather Indicator, etc.

**P.17-2, P.18-2**

## Barcodes & Scan Card

Scan UPC/QR Code data and Japanese business cards into handset, or scan QR Codes to open Mobile Internet sites, etc.

**P.12-22, P.12-28**

## USB Charge (Japanese)

PC Required  
USB Cable Required

After installing Utility Software (CD-ROM) on a PC, connect 816SH via USB Cable to charge handset battery

**P.10-12**

## Camera

Use the 816SH 2 Megapixel CCD camera to capture quality still or video images, then send them to friends or out to other devices

**P.6-2**

## Simple Menu

Activate this function to radically transform handset user interface, limiting menu options to the basics

**P.1-21**

## Hot Status & Circle Talk (Japanese)

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with other pre-registered users or talk with multiple parties simultaneously

**P.18-3, P.18-8**

## Voice Recorder

Save voice memos on handset or Memory Card; use Memory Card to save longer recordings

**P.12-15**

## Mass Storage

PC Required  
USB Cable Required

Insert Memory Card into 816SH and connect it to a PC to access the Memory Card files via the PC

**P.11-8**

## Memory Card

Extend 816SH onboard memory, back up and restore handset files, or connect handset to a PC for file transfers, etc.

**P.11-2**

## Near Chat (Japanese)

Exchange text messages wirelessly with another compatible Bluetooth® handset via preinstalled Near Chat S! Application

**P.18-12**

## Media Player

Use handset as a portable music player; play downloaded music as well as files transferred via PC, or stream Net media

**P.7-2**

## Optional Services

Use Call Forwarding, Voicemail, etc. to handle incoming calls when unable to answer, or manage outgoing calling

**P.13-2**

## Handset Manager (Japanese)

PC Required

Install Utility Software (CD-ROM) on a PC and connect 816SH via USB Cable to transfer files between 816SH and PC

**P.X**



<b>1</b>	<b>Getting Started</b>	
	USIM Card .....	1-2
	Parts & Functions .....	1-4
	Slider Positions .....	1-8
	About Battery .....	1-9
	Handset Power On/Off .....	1-15
	Handset Menus .....	1-17
	Change Menu .....	1-21
	Security Codes .....	1-24
<b>2</b>	<b>Basic Operations</b>	
	Initiating a Call .....	2-2
	Incoming Call .....	2-6
	Answer Phone .....	2-8
	Engaged Call Operations .....	2-10
	Call Log .....	2-12
	Call Timers .....	2-13
	Call Costs .....	2-14
	Outside Japan (International Roaming) .....	2-15
	Manner Mode & Offline Mode .....	2-17
	Emergency Calls .....	2-20
<b>3</b>	<b>Text Entry</b>	
	Characters .....	3-2
	Entering Characters .....	3-3
	Conversion Methods (Japanese) .....	3-6
	Editing Characters .....	3-8
	User Dictionary .....	3-9
	Notepad .....	3-10

<b>4</b>	<b>Phone Book</b>	
	Overview .....	4-2
	Creating Phone Book Entries .....	4-4
	Using Phone Book .....	4-8
	Editing Phone Book Entries .....	4-9
	Category Settings .....	4-11
	Mail Groups .....	4-12
	Speed Dial List .....	4-13
	Additional Phone Book Settings .....	4-14
	S! Address Book (SAB) .....	4-15
	My Details .....	4-18
<b>5</b>	<b>Video Call</b>	
	Getting Started .....	5-2
	Initiating a Video Call .....	5-3
	Answering a Video Call .....	5-3
	Engaged Video Call Operations .....	5-4
	Video Call Settings .....	5-5
	Remote Monitor .....	5-6
<b>6</b>	<b>Camera</b>	
	Getting Started .....	6-2
	Capturing Still Images .....	6-7
	Recording Video .....	6-8
	Opening Images & Playing Video .....	6-9
	Special Shooting Modes .....	6-10
	Sending Images .....	6-14
	Camera Settings .....	6-15
<b>7</b>	<b>Media Player</b>	
	Media Player Basics .....	7-2
	Obtaining Music/Video .....	7-3
	Playback Preparation .....	7-4
	Playing Music/Video .....	7-6

Using Playlists .....	7-10
Editing Video .....	7-11

<b>8</b>	<b>Managing Files (Data Folder)</b>	
	Data Folder .....	8-2
	Opening Files .....	8-3
	Managing Files & Folders .....	8-5
	Using Files .....	8-7
	Editing Still Images .....	8-9

<b>9</b>	<b>Additional Settings</b>	
	Customizing Handset Responses .....	9-2
	Display Settings .....	9-4
	Sound Settings .....	9-14
	Date & Time .....	9-15
	Handset Security .....	9-17
	Reset .....	9-23
	Call Settings .....	9-24

<b>10</b>	<b>Connectivity</b>	
	Infrared .....	10-2
	Bluetooth® .....	10-6
	Network Settings .....	10-10
	Location Info .....	10-11
	USB Charge (Japanese) .....	10-12

<b>11</b>	<b>Memory Card</b>	
	About Memory Card .....	11-2
	Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) .....	11-6
	Mass Storage .....	11-8

**12 Tools**

Calendar.....	12-2
Tasks.....	12-8
Alarm.....	12-10
World Clock.....	12-13
Calculator.....	12-14
Voice Recorder.....	12-15
Document Viewer.....	12-16
Stopwatch.....	12-17
Countdown Timer.....	12-18
Hour Minder.....	12-19
Expenses Memo.....	12-21
Scan Barcode.....	12-22
Create QR Code.....	12-25
Text Scanner.....	12-26
Scan Card.....	12-28
Phone Help.....	12-29

**13 Optional Services**

Overview.....	13-2
Call Forwarding.....	13-3
Voicemail.....	13-4
Call Waiting.....	13-5
Conference Call.....	13-6
Call Barring.....	13-6
Caller ID.....	13-8

**14 Messaging**

Basics.....	14-2
Sending Text Messages.....	14-3
Incoming Text Messages.....	14-15
Using Messages.....	14-20
My Folders.....	14-28
Chat Folder.....	14-30

Settings.....	14-32
---------------	-------

**15 Yahoo! Keitai**

Getting Started.....	15-2
Using Yahoo! Keitai.....	15-3
Basic Operations.....	15-5
Advanced Features.....	15-10
Streaming.....	15-13
Live Monitor (Japanese).....	15-14
Using PC Site Browser.....	15-16
Additional Functions.....	15-18

**16 S! Applications**

Getting Started.....	16-2
Using S! Applications.....	16-2
Managing S! Applications.....	16-4
S! Application Settings.....	16-5

**17 Entertainment**

S! Cast (Japanese).....	17-2
e-Books (Japanese).....	17-4

**18 Communication**

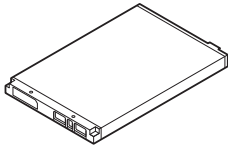
S! Town (Japanese).....	18-2
S! Loop (Japanese).....	18-2
Hot Status.....	18-3
Circle Talk.....	18-8
Near Chat (Japanese).....	18-12

**19 Appendix**

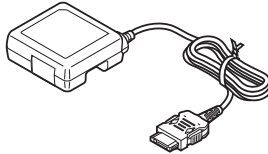
Software Update.....	19-2
Troubleshooting.....	19-4
Function List.....	19-8
Key Assignments.....	19-10
Pictogram List.....	19-12
Pager Code List.....	19-13
Character Code List.....	19-14
Specifications.....	19-20
Memory List.....	19-21
Index.....	19-22
Warranty & Service.....	19-36
Customer Service.....	19-37

# Accessories

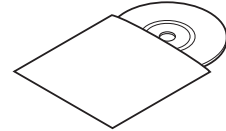
## ■ Lithium-ion Battery (Type 1) (SHBBE1)



## ■ AC Charger (ZTDAA1)



## ■ Utility Software (CD-ROM)<sup>★</sup> (Japanese)



\*Software updates/upgrades may be released via SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) without notice. Please check for the newest versions of Utility Software and download as required.

★Complimentary sample, not available for purchase.

**Note** ► Supplied Utility Software (Japanese) is designed exclusively for 816SH.

- Tip** ►
- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37).
  - 816SH takes microSD™ Memory Card (not included). Purchase one to use Memory Card functions.
  - In this manual, microSD™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card."

# Safety Precautions

- Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

## Before Using Handset

### ■ Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:



**DANGER**

Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use



**WARNING**

Risk of death or serious injury from improper use



**CAUTION**

Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

### ■ Symbols



Prohibited Actions



Compulsory Actions



Attention Required

# DANGER

## Handset, Battery & Charger

### **Use specified battery and Charger only (P.x).**

Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.



## Battery

### **Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire. Do not:**



- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Open/modify/disassemble battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or deformed battery
- Use non-specified charger (P.x)
- Force battery into handset
- Charge battery near fire or sources of heat; or expose it to extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment

**If battery fluid contacts eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.**



Eyes may be severely damaged.

# WARNING

## Handset, Battery & Charger

---

### Do not insert foreign objects into the handset or Charger.



Do not insert metal or flammable objects into handset or Charger; may cause fire or electric shock. Keep out of children's reach.

---

### Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.



Fire or electric shock may result.

---

### Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.



Keep the handset and Charger away from chemicals or liquids; fire or electric shock may result.

---

### Keep battery, handset or Charger away from microwave ovens.



Battery, handset or Charger may leak, burst, overheat or ignite, leading to accidents or injury.

---

### Do not disassemble or modify handset or related hardware.



- Do not open handset or Charger; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset or Charger; fire or electric shock may result.

---

### If water or foreign matter is inside handset:



Discontinue handset use to prevent fire/electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger, then contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

# WARNING

## Handset, Battery & Charger

**Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near filling stations or places with fire/explosion risk.**



**Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion.**

**Do not subject handset or Charger to strong shocks or impacts.**



- Avoid strong shocks to AC Charger while it is plugged into the outlet; may cause malfunction or injury.
- Strong shocks or impacts to handset or Charger may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset be damaged, remove battery then contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use; fire or electric shock may occur.

**If an abnormality occurs:**

If a handset emits an unusual sound, smoke or odor, discontinue use; may cause fire or electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger; contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.



## Handset

**Take measures to prevent accidents.**



- Do not use handset while driving; park beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004).
- Do not use Headphones while driving or cycling. Accidents may result.
- Moderate volume outside, especially near road/rail crossings, etc. to avoid accidents.

**Do not swing handset by strap.**

May result in injury or breakage.



**Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.**

Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.



**Adjust vibration and ringtone settings:**

Users with a heart condition/pacemaker/defibrillator should adjust handset settings accordingly.



**During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.**

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



# WARNING

## Charger

### Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.

- **AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input**

- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

- **In-Car Charger: DC 12V-24V Input**



### Do not use power adapters.

Using AC Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or damage.



### Do not use In-Car Charger in positive earth vehicles.

Fire may result. Use in negative earth vehicles only.



### Charger care

- Do not touch with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.



- Pull AC Charger straight out to unplug it; may cause malfunction or injury.
- Do not use multiple cords in one outlet; may cause excess heat/fire.
- Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.



### Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

May cause overheating, fire or electric shock. Keep metal away from terminals.



### Take measures to prevent accidents.

Secure In-Car Charger to avoid injury or accidents.



### Damaged AC Charger/In-Car Charger cord:

May cause fire or electric shock; discontinue use and purchase a new Charger.



### During thunderstorms:

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire or electric shock.



### Charger use and children:

May cause electric shock/injury; keep out of reach.





# WARNING

## Battery

- If battery does not charge properly, stop charging. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.
- If there is leakage or abnormal odor, avoid fire sources. Battery may catch fire or burst.



If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery from handset. It may leak, overheat or explode.



## Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

### **Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.**



Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

### **Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.**



Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

### **Observe these rules inside medical facilities:**

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals, including lobbies.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.



### **Consult electronic medical equipment vendor on radio wave effects.**



# CAUTION

## Handset, Battery & Charger

### Handset care

- Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from direct sunlight (inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.



### Usage environment

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, telephone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.



## Handset

### Handset temperature

Handset may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.



### Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.).

Handset may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries.



### Volume settings

Moderate handset volume; excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



### Earpiece/Speaker

Earpiece is a speaker. Always maintain some distance from Earpiece/Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play. Excessive volume may affect hearing.



### Opening/closing Slider

Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside; may cause injury, malfunction or breakage.



# CAUTION

## Handset

### Inside vehicles

Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction.



**If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.**



See handset materials below. Some materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side)	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic UV curing painting, discontinuous deposition)
Housing (Display back side)	Magnesium alloy/Acrylic baking finish (sealer: epoxy baking finish)
Screw cover sheet (Display back side)	PET
Housing cover (Display back side), housing (Keypad side), housing (Keypad back side), battery cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Display window	Acrylic resin/In-mold decorating
Lens cover	Acrylic resin
Back ornament plate, screw cover (Display side)	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Multi Selector/Keypad Lock Key (up/down/left/right)	PC resin/Paint
Multi Selector/Keypad Lock Key (center)	Aluminum/Anodized aluminum finish, tinted
Side Keys, Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Clear/Back Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Multi Job/Manner Key, Multimedia/Text Key, Keypad	PC resin/Paint
Memory Card Slot cover, Headphone Port cover, External Device Port cover	PC resin & urethane-based resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Battery	PA resin
Screw (all pieces)	SWCH12A/Ni plating
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel plating)
USIM Card stopper	POM resin

# CAUTION

## Charger

### Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if plug is hot or improperly connected. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. May overheat and cause injury.



### Use only the specified fuse.

- 1 A fuse for In-Car Charger. Or may cause damage/fire.



### Always charge battery in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger; may cause damage/fire.



### Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

To avoid weakening the car battery, always start engine before charging the handset using In-Car Charger.



### During periods of disuse

Always unplug AC Charger or In-Car Charger after use.



### Handset maintenance

Always disconnect AC Charger or In-Car Charger when cleaning handset.



### In-Car Charger installation

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.



# CAUTION

## Battery

Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.



Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside a closed vehicle; may reduce battery performance or overheat. An overheated battery may cause fire.



Do not expose battery to liquids. Performance may deteriorate.



If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, rinse with clean water immediately.



Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Keep battery out of children's reach.



- Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.
- If your child is using handset, explain all instructions **(P.1-9)** and supervise usage.
- If there is abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.



# General Notes

## General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or Memory Card data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**  
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

### **Eavesdropping**

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

## Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

## Aboard Aircraft

- Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off). Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

## Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

## FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
  - (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
816SH	APYHRO00059	0.566 W/kg	0.489 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left).

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

## European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide\*.

Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
816SH	1.215 W/kg	0.981 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

\*Please see General Notes (Electromagnetic Waves) on **P.xxi** for important notes regarding body-worn operation.

\*\*Values are measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

## Declaration of Conformity

# CE 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 816SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address: <http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>



## Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity). Avoid extreme temperatures and direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- When using Headphones, moderate volume to avoid sound bleed.
- **Function Usage Limits**  
These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/  
replacement or service cancellation:
  - Camera    ■ Media Player    ■ S! Applications
- After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.10-10**) to restore usability.
- **Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.**
  - Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
  - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (toilet, bathroom, etc.).
  - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
  - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- **Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.**
  - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Connect only specified products to Headphone Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

## Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use.

Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application. Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 1997-2007 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.



JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries. Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865  
5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196  
5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420  
5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784 5,778,338

## **NetFront®**

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player (SMIL player) developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 1996-2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereinafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.
- 3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

### SoftBank Customer Center, General Information

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.  
From landlines, see **P.19-37** "Customer Service."

- This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation.  
Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet).

2.4FH1

Microsoft® Word is a product name of Microsoft Corporation in the United States.

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

This product employs Adobe® Flash® Lite™ technology developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright© 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LCC. All rights reserved.

Adobe and Flash are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.



QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™

Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.  
©2002-2007 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.



Document Viewer is enabled by Picsel Technologies.

Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Viewer, Picsel File Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer, Picsel PDF Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

- SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.
- Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

Video Call, S! Application, Custom Screen, Sky Mail, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, 3D Pictogram, Input Memory, Near Chat, Multi Job, S! Mail, Arrange Mail, Feeling Mail, S! Cast, S! Town, S! Loop, Standby Window, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, Live Monitor, S! Address Book, Circle Talk, Hot Status and Familiar Usability are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

CP8 PATENT

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

# Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

## **816SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.**

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed  $2 \text{ W/kg}^*$ . This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 816SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is  $0.906 \text{ W/kg}$ . This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

-----  
Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications  
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>  
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)  
<http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html> (Japanese)  
-----

\*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2)

# 1

## Getting Started

<b>USIM Card</b> .....	<b>1-2</b>	<b>Handset Menus</b> .....	<b>1-17</b>
■ About USIM Card .....	1-2	■ Main Menu .....	1-17
■ USIM Card Installation .....	1-3	■ User Shortcuts .....	1-18
■ USIM PINs.....	1-3	■ Quick Operations .....	1-19
<b>Parts &amp; Functions</b> .....	<b>1-4</b>	■ Standby Window (Japanese) .....	1-19
■ Handset .....	1-4	■ Multi Job.....	1-20
■ Display Indicators .....	1-6	<b>Change Menu</b> .....	<b>1-21</b>
<b>Slider Positions</b> .....	<b>1-8</b>	■ Simple Menu .....	1-21
■ Features .....	1-8	■ Large Font Menu.....	1-23
■ Changing Position .....	1-8	<b>Security Codes</b> .....	<b>1-24</b>
<b>About Battery</b> .....	<b>1-9</b>	■ Handset Code .....	1-24
■ Battery & Charger.....	1-9	■ Center Access Code .....	1-24
■ Battery Installation.....	1-12	■ Network Password .....	1-24
■ Charging (AC Charger).....	1-13		
■ Charging (In-Car Charger) .....	1-14		
<b>Handset Power On/Off</b> .....	<b>1-15</b>		
■ My Details.....	1-16		
■ Keypad Lock.....	1-16		

# USIM Card

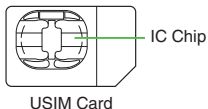
## About USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number, and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS messages. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

- Save Phone Book entries (P.4-3), etc. on USIM Card Phone Book.
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device.

SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.

- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.



**Note** ▶ Some downloaded files may be inaccessible after repairs, USIM Card replacement or handset upgrade/replacement. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing®, S! Town and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

### ■ If Handset is Dropped or Subjected to Shocks

Handset may not recognize USIM Card; **REFRESH** appears and handset returns to Standby. This is not a malfunction. If **Insert USIM Card** appears, clean and properly reinsert USIM Card then restart handset.

### Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37).

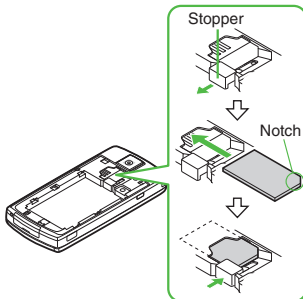


## USIM Card Installation

- Follow the steps below after removing battery (P.1-12).
- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

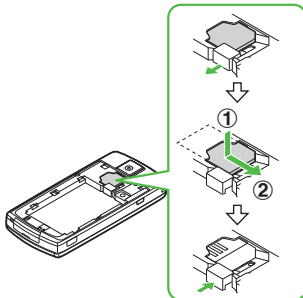
### Inserting

- 1 Pull out Stopper as shown until it clicks**
- 2 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down**
- 3 Push in Stopper until it clicks**
  - Reinstall battery (Steps 3 - 4 on P.1-12).



### Removing

- 1 Pull out Stopper as shown until it clicks**
- 2 Gently slide out USIM Card as shown**
- 3 Push in Stopper until it clicks**
  - Reinstall battery (Steps 3 - 4 on P.1-12).



## USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card: **PIN1** and **PIN2**. PIN 1 and PIN 2 are **9999** by default; change as needed (P.9-22).

<b>PIN1</b>	A 4-digit Security Code to prevent unauthorized use of handset; required when PIN Entry (P.9-22) is active
<b>PIN2</b>	Required to clear Call Costs and to set Max Cost (P.9-24)

### PIN Lock & PUK Code

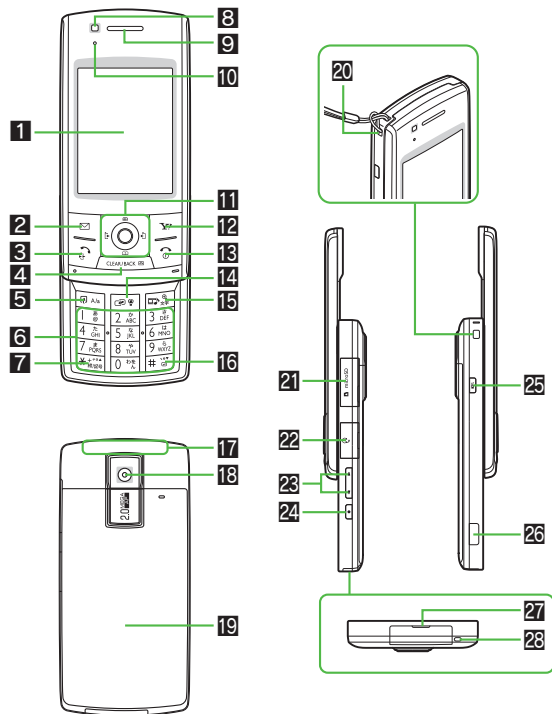
Entering incorrect PIN1 or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock. Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) cancels PIN Lock. Call SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37) for details.

#### Canceling PIN Lock

- **Open a function requiring PIN ➔ Enter PUK Code ➔ Press  ➔ Enter new PIN ➔ Press  ➔ Re-enter new PIN ➔ Press** 
  - Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times locks USIM Card, disabling handset. Write it down. To learn how to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37).

# Parts & Functions

## Handset



### 1 Display

### 2 Mail Key

Open Messaging menu or execute Softkey functions (P.1-17).

### 3 Start Key

Initiate/answer calls. Open records of All Calls.

### 4 Clear/Back Key

Delete entries, escape/return to previous window.

### 5 Shortcuts & A/a Key

Open Shortcuts menu. In text entry windows, toggle upper/lower case roman letters or standard/small hiragana/katakana.

### 6 Keypad

### 7 \* Key

### 8 Internal Camera

Use during Video Call.

### 9 Earpiece/Speaker

### 10 Small Light

Flashes for incoming calls/mail and new information; illuminates red while charging.

### 11 Multi Selector & Keypad Lock Key

Select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc. Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

**12 Yahoo! Keitai Key**

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu or execute Softkey functions (P.1-17).

**13 Power On/Off Key**

Press and hold to turn handset power on/off.

**14 Multi Job/Manner Key**

Toggle multiple active function windows. Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner mode.

**15 Multimedia/Text Key**

Start Media Player or change character entry mode.

**16 # Key****17 Internal Antenna Location****18 External Camera (lens cover)****19 Battery Cover****20 Strap Eyelet**

Attach straps as shown; avoid metallic straps.

**21 Memory Card Slot**

Insert Memory Card here.

**22 Headphone Port**

Connect optional Headphones, etc.

**23 Volume/Zoom Key**

Adjust Earpiece Volume or zoom mobile camera.

**24 Shutter Key**

Capture images with mobile camera. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate mobile camera.

**25 Circle Talk Key**

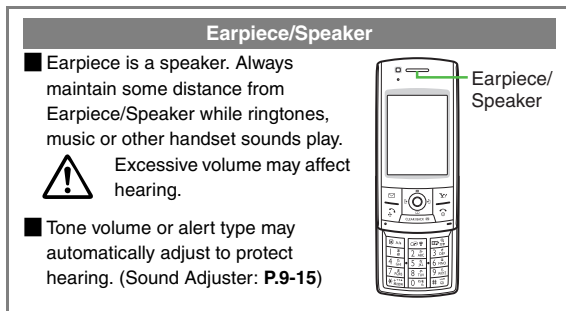
Press and hold to speak during Circle Talk.

**26 Infrared Port**

Use for infrared data transmissions.

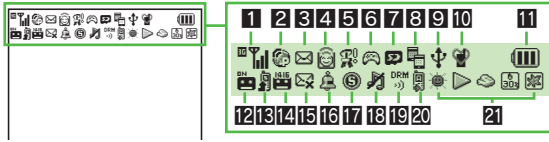
**27 External Device Port**

Connect Charger here.

**28 Microphone****Note ▶ Internal Antenna**

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.
- Voice quality varies with handset usage/location.

## Display Indicators



### 1 Signal Strength

- : Within 3G Range,
 : Within GSM Range
- : Strong,
 : Moderate,
 : Low,
 : Weak
- : Out-of-Range

### 2 Calls/Circle Talk, Offline Mode (P.2-19) SSL (P.15-2), Packet Transmission

- : Incoming Voice Call,
 : Voice Call in Progress
- : Incoming Video Call,
 : Video Call in Progress
- : Incoming Circle Talk Request,
 : Offline Mode
- : SSL,
 : Packet Transmission Protocol Ready
- : Waiting/Packet Transmission in Progress
- : Packet Transmission Available

### 3 Mail (P.14-17)

- : Unread Mail,
 : Unread Delivery Report
- (red) : Memory Low
- : Receiving Mail,
 : Sending Mail

### 4 Hot Status (P.18-3)

- : Hot Status Online
- : Unread Hot Status Notification
- : Hot Status Registration Request Received

### 5 Cast Info (P.17-2), Software Update (P.19-2) Live Monitor Info (P.15-14), Keypad Lock (P.1-16)

- : Cast Info,
 : Software Update
- : Software Update Result,
 : Live Monitor Info
- : Keypad Lock Active

### 6 S! Application (P.16-2), Music Player (P.7-5)

- : Active S! Application,
 : Paused S! Application
- : Music Player Active

### 7 Memory Card Status (P.11-2)




- : Inserted,
 : In Use,
 : Formatting
- : Unusable/Poor Connection



### 8 Multiple Functions (Multi Job) Active (P.1-20)


### 9 External Transmission, S! Address Book Transmission (P.4-15) PC Site Browser (P.15-16)

- : USB Transmission Ready,
 : USB Transmission in Progress
- : Infrared Connection in Progress
- : Infrared Transmission in Progress
- : Bluetooth® Transmission Ready
- Appears in gray when Visibility is set to **Hide My Phone.**
- : Bluetooth® Transmission in Progress
- : Bluetooth® Talk in Progress
- : Bluetooth® Audio Output in Progress
- : S! Address Book Transmission in Progress
- : PC Site Browser in Use


**10 Mode (P.9-2), Loudspeaker (P.2-10)****Microphone Mute (P.2-10)**

 : Manner,  : Drive,  : Original

 : Loudspeaker Active,  : Microphone Muted

 : Loudspeaker Active & Microphone Muted

**11 Battery Strength (P.1-11)**

Indicator may appear vertically (e.g. ).

**12 Answer Phone (P.2-8)**

 : Answer Phone Active



 : Answer Phone Active & Message Recorded

 : Answer Phone Canceled & Message Recorded

**13 Call Forwarding (P.13-3) or Voicemail (P.13-4) Active**



Appears when **Always** (forwarding condition) is set for Voice Calls.

**14 New Voicemail (P.13-4)****15 Message Delivery Failure (P.14-3), Hour Minder (P.12-19)**

 : Message Delivery Failure,  : Hour Minder Active

**16 Alarm (P.12-10), Schedule (P.12-4)**




 : Alarm Set

 : Schedule (Alarm Set),  : Schedule (Alarm Unset)

**17 Show Secret Data (P.9-23), Password Lock (P.9-17)**

 : Show Secret Data Active,  : Password Lock Active

**18 Ringtone Volume (P.9-2), Vibration (P.9-3)**


 : Silent,  : Increasing Volume,  : Vibration Active

 : Silent & Vibration Active

**19 Copyright Information, Infrared Transmission (P.10-2)**

 : Content Key Received

When Content Key memory is low,  (below 10 %) or

 (below 5 %) appears.

 (gray): Infrared Transmission Ready

**20 Auto Answer (P.9-24) or Remote Monitor (P.5-6) Active****21 Weather Indicator (P.17-3)**

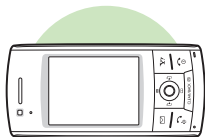
# Slider Positions

Use handset in the following positions.

## Features

### Slider Closed

Use mobile camera in wide view.



Keypad Lock (P.1-16) is active by default.

### Slider Open

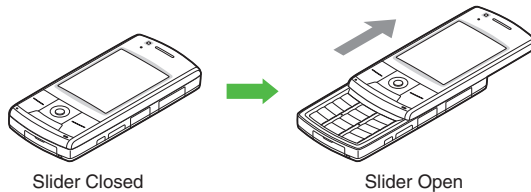
Access all functions/operations. (Wide view for mobile camera is not available in this position.)



Place/answer calls, send messages, adjust settings, etc.

## Changing Position

Slide Display until it stops.



Slider Closed

Slider Open

- Note** ▶
- Do not place labels or stickers on Keypad or behind Display; may hinder Slider movement.
  - Avoid touching Keypad when opening/closing Slider; malfunction may result.

- Tip** ▶ Use Keypad Lock (P.1-16) to prevent accidental operation/function activation.

# About Battery

## Battery & Charger

Charge battery before first use/after period of disuse.

### Battery Life

- Do not use/store battery at extreme temperatures; this may shorten battery life.  
Ideally, use/store between 5°C - 35°C.
- Use specified Charger only; others may damage handset/battery or overheat or ignite battery.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.


### Charging

- Do not use Charger for other purposes.
- Contact with metal may short, overheat or burst battery.
- Small Light illuminates red while charging. (It may take longer for the light to illuminate when handset is off.)

- Charging via AC Charger takes approximately 140 minutes (with handset off).
  - **Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.**
- Handset and Charger may warm during charging.
- Separate Charger from TV/radio if interference occurs.

### Precautions

- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.
- Avoid:
  - Extreme temperatures
  - Humidity, dust and vibration
  - Direct sunlight
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.

- Tip** ►
- Battery must be inside handset to charge it.
  - While charging battery with handset on,  flashes until battery is fully charged.
  - Charge battery via PC USB port (**P.10-12** "USB Charge").

## Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)

<b>Continuous Talk Time (P.19-20)</b>	230 minutes in 3G 230 minutes in GSM
<b>Continuous Standby Time (P.19-20)</b>	300 hours in 3G 290 hours in GSM
<b>Continuous Operating Time</b>	7 hours
<b>Continuous Playback Time</b>	15 hours
<b>Continuous Video Call Talk Time</b>	140 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)

Values calculated with Backlight Brightness set to **Level:2**.

- Continuous Operating Time is the length of time handset keys can be pressed continuously without calls.
- Continuous Playback Time is measured while music plays (Sound Effects set to **Normal**) using Headphones, Offline Mode canceled, and with Slider closed.
- The above values (Battery Time) are nominal values, measured under stable signal conditions.

## Battery Time

Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time:

### • Power Consuming Operations

- Activating/using S! Applications
- Repeated mobile camera use or barcode scanning
- Playing video images
- Continuous Keypad use (keeping backlights on for long periods)
- Using Music Player/Voice Recorder
- Frequent Bluetooth® transmissions
- Frequent infrared transfers
- Frequent opening/closing of Slider
- Signal is weak/handset is out-of-range

### • Power Hungry Settings

- Long Backlight Time Out/Display Saving times
- Setting Backlight to illuminate brighter
- Activating Bluetooth® in Standby
- Activating Keypad Tones

## ■ Extend Battery Time

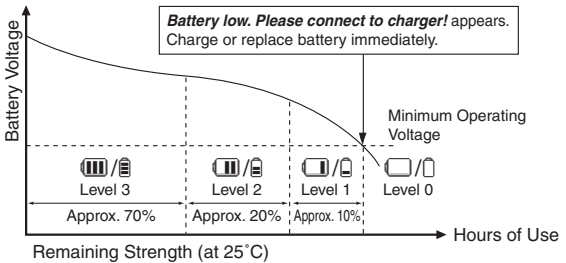
Adjust Light Settings (P.9-12) to extend Battery Time.

Select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time and lower Brightness.



## Battery Strength

Battery Strength indicator varies as shown.



## Battery Strength & Environment

- At low temperatures, battery is consumed faster.
- At high temperatures, battery lasts longer.

**Note** ▶ At Level 1, some functions including Video Camera, Music Player and Voice Recorder do not operate.

## Small Light & Battery Strength Indicator

### Handset Power On

Small Light	Indicator (  /  )	Conditions
Off	Flashes	Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C to 35°C
Flashes red	Flashes	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Flashes	Charging
Off	On	Charging completed/Standby

### Handset Power Off

Small Light	Indicator (  /  )	Conditions
Flashes red	Off	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Off	Charging
Off	Off	Charging completed

## When Battery Runs Out

A message appears and short beeps sound. Press to stop short beeps. (Short beeps do not sound in Manner mode.)

### During Voice Call

A double beep sounds every five seconds. After 20 seconds, the call ends and handset shuts down.

### During Video Call

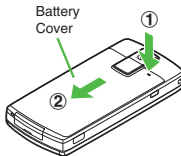
A message appears and call ends with a double beep, then short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

## Battery Installation

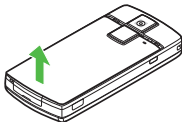
### Inserting

#### 1 Press down and slide cover as shown

- Hold handset firmly by its sides.

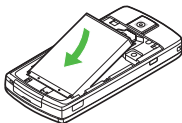


#### 2 Lift and remove cover as shown



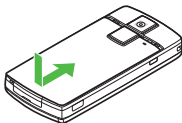
#### 3 Insert battery

- With printed side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.



#### 4 Close cover

- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.



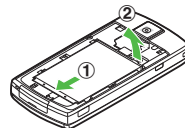
### Removing

- Turn handset power off before removing battery.
- Do not remove battery immediately after saving files, sending messages, etc.

#### 1 Perform Steps 1 - 2 on the left

#### 2 Push and lift battery as shown

- Take hold of Battery Tab (2) and lift as shown.



### Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

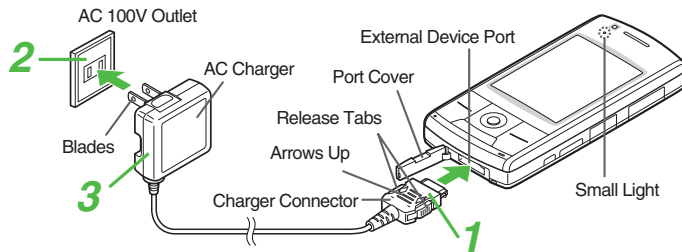
**Tip ▶ This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.**

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
  - Short-circuit battery
  - Disassemble battery



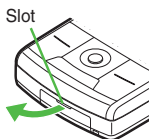
## Charging (AC Charger)

Use specified AC Charger only.



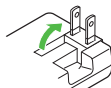
### 1 Open Port Cover to connect Charger

- Use slot to gently pull Port Cover down and out as shown.
- Insert connector until it clicks.



### 2 Plug Charger into AC outlet

- Small Light illuminates red while charging (P.1-11); may take up to approximately 140 minutes.
- When charging completes Small Light goes out.
- **Extend Charger blades.** (Fold back when not in use.)



### 3 After Charging

#### Unplug Charger, then disconnect handset

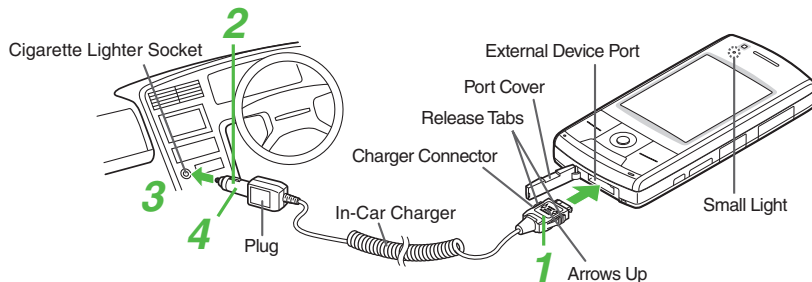
- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

#### Note

- Do not pull, bend or twist AC Charger cord.
- Pull AC Charger straight out to unplug it.
- AC Charger is compatible with household currents between AC 100V and 240V.
- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

## Charging (In-Car Charger)

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.



### 1 Open Port Cover to connect In-Car Charger

- Insert connector until it clicks.

### 2 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

### 3 Start car engine

- Small Light illuminates red while charging (P.1-11); may take up to approximately 140 minutes.
- When charging completes Small Light goes out.

### 4 After Charging

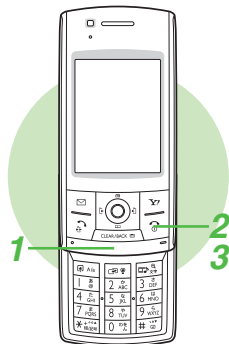
#### Unplug Charger, then disconnect handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

- Note** ▶
- Use In-Car Charger in negative earth vehicles (DC 12/24V) only.
  - Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
  - Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.
  - Never use handset while driving.

- Tip** ▶
- For more information, see In-Car Charger manual.
  - Use optional In-Car Holder to secure handset.

# Handset Power On/Off



**1** Open Slider

**2** Press and hold

After Power On Graphic, handset enters Standby.

**3** Turning Off

Press for 2+ seconds

After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.



Standby Display

## Initial Setup (Menu, My Details & Network Information)

■ If Japanese appears the first time handset is powered up, follow these steps to restart it in English.

**Press → Press → Press → Press → Press → Select 設定 (at bottom right) → Press → Select Language → Press → Select English → Press → Perform Step 3 above → Perform Step 2 above**

■ After startup, Change Menu window opens. (For details, see P.1-21.)

**Select Simple Menu, Standard Menu or Large Font Menu → Press**

■ After menu interface is set, My Details setup starts.

**Enter last name → Press → Enter first name → Press**

• Change Menu display option confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press . Standby appears.

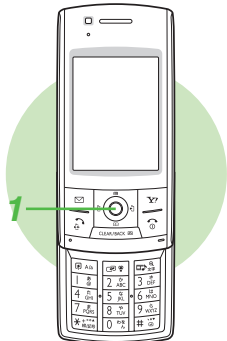
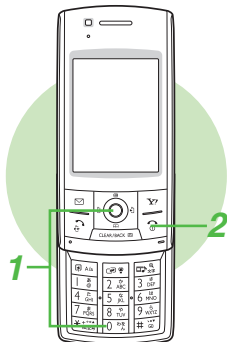
■ Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when , or is pressed for the first time.

**Choose Yes → Press**

- Retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services; retrieval automatically sets Clock.
- To update Network Information manually, see P.10-11 "Retrieve NW Info."
- Unless noted otherwise, operations in this manual are described with Clock set.

- Note** ▶
- USIM Card data is read after turning power on. Signal strength indicator may take some time to appear. It may take longer when turning power on for the first time.
  - **Insert USIM Card** appears when USIM Card is not inserted (P.1-2).

**Tip** ▶ Display turns off after a period of inactivity.



## My Details

**1** Press

Handset phone number appears.

- To add, edit or delete My Details, see **P.4-18**.

**2** Press to exit

## Keypad Lock

Use Keypad Lock to lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation. By default, closing Slider activates Keypad Lock (**P.9-18**); open Slider to temporarily cancel.

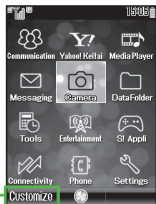
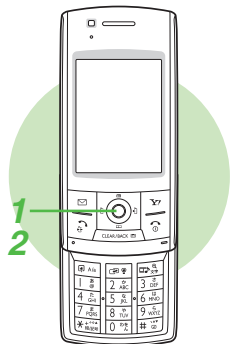
### Activating/Canceling Keypad Lock

**1** Press for 1+ seconds

**Note** ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible when Keypad Lock is active. See **P.2-20**.

**Tip** ▶ When Keypad Lock is Active

- Incoming calls temporarily cancel Keypad Lock. To answer a call, press . [Activate Any Key Answer (**P.9-3**) to answer calls with other keys (**P.2-6**.) Keypad lock reactivates after the call.
- Handset power does not turn off even if is pressed for 2+ seconds.
- When Display Backlight is off and Slider closed, press to reactivate it.
- Keypad Lock is unavailable during calls or mobile camera use, or when viewing media.



Main Menu  
Shortcut to Custom  
Screens (P.9-9)

## Main Menu

Access functions/operations from **Main Menu**.

- 1 Press .  
Main Menu opens.
- 2 Use to select an item and press .  
Sub Menu opens (P.19-8 - 19-9).

### Softkeys

- Softkey functions appear at the bottom of Display.



Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

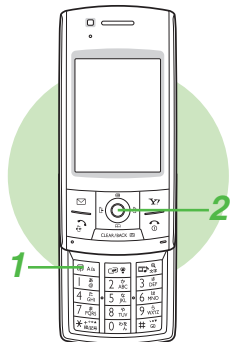
Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

### Return to Standby

- Press to return to Standby from function windows, menus, etc.
  - When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press . Handset returns to Standby.

## Main Menu Items

<b>Communication</b>	Launch Hot Status, Circle Talk, S! Town, S! Loop or Near Chat
<b>Yahoo! Keitai</b>	Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites or use Live Monitor
<b>Media Player</b>	Play/download media files
<b>Messaging</b>	Open/create messages, etc.
<b>Camera</b>	Capture images or record video
<b>Data Folder</b>	Open files saved on handset/Memory Card
<b>Tools</b>	Use Calendar, Alarms, etc.
<b>Entertainment</b>	Use e-Book Viewer, access BookSurfing® or launch S! Cast
<b>S! Appli</b>	Use/download S! Applications
<b>Connectivity</b>	Use Bluetooth®, Infrared, etc.
<b>Phone</b>	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
<b>Settings</b>	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.



## User Shortcuts

Access functions, folders or menus quickly via Shortcuts.

### 1 Press















Default shortcuts appear.



### 2 Select a function and press

### ■ Editing Shortcuts

Edit items except *Main Menu* and *Enter Number*.

Move	Change item order
	Press  → Select an item →
	Press  <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Move</i> → Press  → Use  to select target location → Press 
Assign	Change default shortcuts
	Press  → Select an item →
	Press  <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Assign</i> →
	Press  → Select new item → Press  or  <b>Assign</b>
Set to Default	Restore default shortcuts
	Press  → Press  <b>Options</b> →
	Select <i>Set to Default</i> → Press  → Choose <i>Yes</i> → Press 

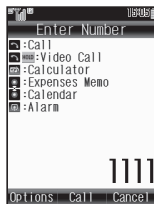


## Quick Operations

In Standby, enter numbers to access functions. Accessible functions vary by entered digits. To activate functions, press corresponding Softkey.

### ■ Example: Enter 1111 to use Calculator

**1** Press

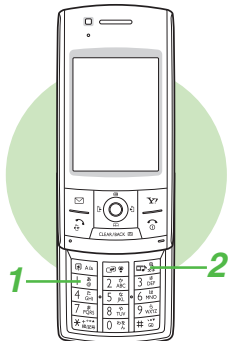


**2** Press

### ■ Available Operations

Function	Digits	Refer to
Speed Dial*	1	P.4-14
Speed Video Call*	1	P.4-14
Speed Mail*	1	P.14-13
Expenses Memo	1 - 6	P.12-21
Calculator	1 - 12	P.12-14
Calendar	4	P.12-2
Set Alarm	4	P.12-10
Place International Calls	5 - 32	P.2-3
Call Circle Talk	11 - 32	P.18-8

\* Save entries beforehand.



## Standby Window (Japanese)

View Live Monitor news in Standby.

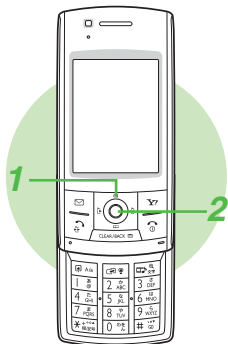
**1** Press

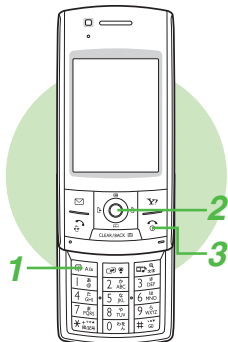
Standby Window (P.9-6) opens.

**2** Press

Information appears.

■ Press to exit.






## Multi Job

### 1 In a function window, press

Shortcuts menu opens.


- In text/phone number entry windows, press  for 1+ seconds.
- Some shortcuts are disabled.
- Multi Job cannot be activated from some windows/under some conditions (e.g. when an S! Application is active, etc.).

### 2 Select a function and press

Menu/window opens ( appears).

- Press  to toggle active windows.


### 3 Press to exit

The other window appears ( disappears).

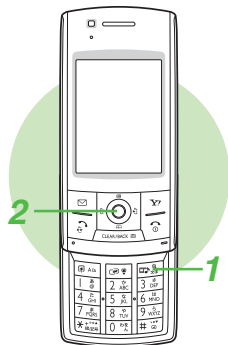
- When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes**

➔ Press 

## Handling Incoming Calls

- Press  to answer a call. End the call to return.

# Change Menu



Handset Menu Interface Options:

<b>Standard Menu</b>	All menus are available
<b>Simple Menu</b>	Simplified menus appear in large fonts
<b>Large Font Menu</b>	All menus appear in large fonts

## Simple Menu

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.



- Handset is limited to basic operations (P.1-22).
- Clock and fonts are enlarged and Calendar is hidden while Simple Menu is active.
- Some menu items, function names, etc. differ from Standard Menu.

- Note** ▶
- These functions are not available while Simple Menu is active:
    - Bluetooth®
    - Infrared
    - Mass Storage/USB Charge
    - Drive mode
    - Original mode
  - Simple Menu activation is disabled in the following cases:
    - Media Player is active (playing background music)
    - Infrared transmission is in progress
    - S! Application is paused
    - Bluetooth® is active





Simple Main Menu


### Activating

- 1** Press  for 1+ seconds
  - 2** Select **Simple Menu** and press 
- Simple Menu remains active even after handset power is turned off.

### Canceling

- 1** Press  for 1+ seconds
  - 2** Select **Standard Menu** and press 
- Alternatively, select **Large Font Menu** (P.1-23).

## Simple Menu Operations
















In Standby, press  to open Simple Main Menu.

Messaging	Received Msg.	P.14-21	
	Create Msg.	P.14-4	
	Drafts	P.14-26	
	Templates	P.14-10	
	Sent Messages	P.14-20	
	Unsent Msg.	P.14-20	
	Create SMS	P.14-11	
Phone	Phone Book	P.4-2	
	Add New Entry	P.4-4	
	Play Messages	P.2-9	
	Answer Phone	P.2-8	
	Call VM	P.13-4	
	My Details	P.4-18	
	Speed Dial	P.4-13	
Camera	-	P.6-2	
Convenient Tool	Calendar	P.12-2	
	Alarms	P.12-10	
	Calculator	P.12-14	
	Assignment	Wallpaper	P.9-4
		Assign Tone	P.9-2
		Volume	P.9-2
	Hot Status	P.18-3	
Circle Talk	P.18-8		
Change Menu	P.1-21		
Data Folder	Pictures	P.8-2	
	DCIM	P.8-2	
	My Pictograms	P.8-2	
	Ring Tones	P.8-2	
	S! Appli	P.16-2	

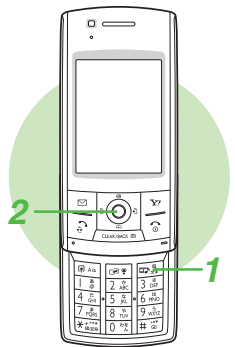
Data Folder	Music	P.8-2
	Videos	P.8-2
	Books	P.8-2
	CustomScreens	P.9-9
	Flash®	P.8-2
	Flash®Ringtones	P.8-2
	Other Docs.	P.8-2
	Memory Status	P.8-2

## Key Assignments

In Standby:

 (Long Press)	Open Change Menu window	P.1-21
 (Long Press)	Turn handset on/off	P.1-15
	Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	P.15-2
	Open Messaging menu	P.14-2
 (Long Press)	Open S! Mail Composition window	P.14-4
	Open Call Log (All Calls)	P.2-12
	Open Calendar	P.12-2
	Open Call Log (Dialled No.)	P.2-4
	Open Call Log (Received Calls)	P.2-5
	Open Phone Book	P.4-8
 (Long Press)	Create new Phone Book entry	P.4-4
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Manner mode	P.2-18
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Keypad Lock	P.1-16
	Play Answer Phone messages	P.2-9
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Answer Phone	P.2-8

While Simple Menu is active, shortcuts and some Quick Operations (P.1-19) are disabled.



## Large Font Menu

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. at the same time.



Large Font Shortcuts Menu

### Activating

- 1 Press for 1+ seconds
  - 2 Select **Large Font Menu** and press
- Large Font Menu remains active even after handset power is turned off.

### Canceling

- 1 Press for 1+ seconds
  - 2 Select **Standard Menu** and press
- Alternatively, select **Simple Menu** (P.1-21).

# Security Codes



Handset Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are needed for handset use. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37).

## Handset Code

4-digit number (**9999** by default) required to use or change some handset functions.

- ✕ appears as digits are entered.
- If **Handset code is incorrect!** appears, enter again.
- Change Handset Code as needed (P.9-17).

## Center Access Code

4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to access Voicemail via landlines or subscribe to fee-based information.

- Note** ▶
- Write down Handset Code, Center Access Code and Network Password.
  - Do not reveal Handset Code, Center Access Code and Network Password. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

- Tip** ▶ There are two other Security Codes: PIN 1 and PIN2. For details, see P.1-3 "USIM PINs."

## Network Password

4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to restrict handset services (P.13-6 "Call Barring").

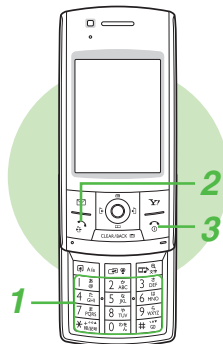
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37).
- Change Network Password as needed (P.13-7).

# 2

## Basic Operations

<b>Initiating a Call</b> .....	<b>2-2</b>	<b>Call Timers</b> .....	<b>2-13</b>
■ Placing an International Call from Japan.....	2-3	■ Dialed Calls & Received Calls.....	2-13
■ Redial .....	2-4	■ Clear Timers .....	2-13
■ Calling from Received Calls .....	2-5	<b>Call Costs</b> .....	<b>2-14</b>
<b>Incoming Call</b> .....	<b>2-6</b>	■ Last Call & All Calls.....	2-14
■ Information .....	2-7	■ Additional Functions.....	2-14
<b>Answer Phone</b> .....	<b>2-8</b>	<b>Outside Japan (International Roaming)</b> .....	<b>2-15</b>
■ Activating & Canceling.....	2-8	■ Switching Network Services .....	2-15
■ Playing Messages .....	2-9	■ Calling from Outside Japan.....	2-16
<b>Engaged Call Operations</b> .....	<b>2-10</b>	<b>Manner Mode &amp; Offline Mode</b> .....	<b>2-17</b>
■ Earpiece Volume .....	2-10	■ Minding Mobile Manners.....	2-17
■ Voice Output .....	2-10	■ Activating/Canceling Manner Mode .....	2-18
■ Caller Voice .....	2-11	■ Activating/Canceling Offline Mode .....	2-19
■ Other Engaged Call Operations .....	2-11	<b>Emergency Calls</b> .....	<b>2-20</b>
<b>Call Log</b> .....	<b>2-12</b>	■ Emergency Location Report .....	2-20
■ Deleting/Using Call Log.....	2-12	■ Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls .....	2-20

# Initiating a Call

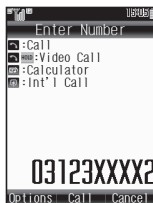


## CHECK!

- Confirm handset is on.
- Check signal strength (P.1-6 ).
- Handset will not transmit when , or appears (P.19-4 - 19-6).

See **P.2-3** to initiate international calls from Japan, **P.2-16** for Voice Calls from outside Japan and **P.5-3** for Video Calls.

## 1 Enter a phone number



- Include area code for all numbers.

- Note** ▶
- Earpiece is a speaker. Always maintain some distance from Earpiece/Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.
  - Do not cover Microphone while talking.
  - Avoid covering area over Internal Antenna.
  - Voice quality is affected depending on how and where handset is used.

- Tip** ▶
- For operations during a call (Loudspeaker, Mute, Hold, etc.), see **P.2-10 - 2-11**.
  - To send/block Caller ID, enter the following numbers/symbols before a phone number when placing a call.



- Alternatively, enter a phone number and press **Options** to select **Show My ID** or **Hide My ID**.

## 2 Confirm the number and press

Handset dials the number.

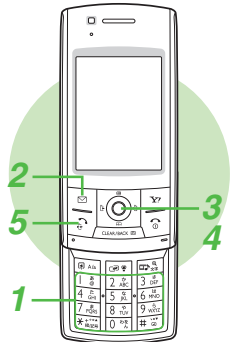
### Correcting Numbers

- Use to move cursor and press to delete the digit above the cursor. Move cursor and press for 1+ seconds to delete the digits above and after the cursor.
- Before moving cursor, press for 1+ seconds to delete the entire number and return to Standby.

## 3 Press to end call

- Alternatively, close Slider to end call.
- Close To: **P.9-26**





### Contract Required

- Service requires an additional contract. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37).

## Placing an International Call from Japan

See P.2-16 to initiate Voice Calls from outside Japan.

### 1 Enter a phone number

- Include area code for landline numbers.

### 2 Press

### 3 Select *Int'l Call* and press

Country names appear.

### 4 Select a country and press

- To call unlisted countries, select **Enter Code** ➔ Press ➔ Enter country code ➔ Press

### 5 Press

#### Quick Operation

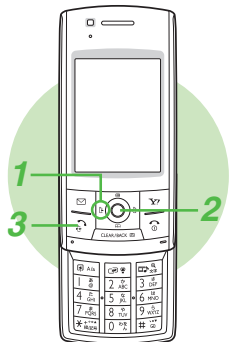
■ Enter a phone number ➔ Press ➔ Select a country ➔ Press ➔ Press

#### Direct Entry

■ Press (+ appears) ➔ Enter country code ➔ Enter a phone number including the area code ➔ Press

- Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy (country code: 39).

- Tip** ➤
- To change the default international prefix (denoted by +), see P.9-25 "Int'l Prefix."
  - To save frequently used country codes, see P.9-25 "Country Codes."
  - To restrict outgoing international calls, see P.13-6 "Call Barring."



## Redial

Place calls from Dialed Numbers. Up to 30 recently dialed numbers are saved. (Records remain even after handset power is turned off.)

**1** Press



- Use to open Received Calls/All Calls.

**2** Select a record and press

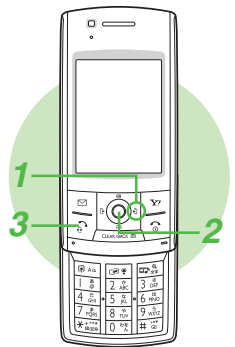
**3** Press

Handset dials the number.

### ■ Indicators

	Dialed Voice Call		Dialed Video Call
	Requested Circle Talk		

- Tip** ▶
- When the same number is dialed more than once, only the last record appears. (All records appear for Circle Talk.)
  - Names in Secret entries appear only when Show Secret Data is active.
  - When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see **P.2-12**.



## Calling from Received Calls

Up to 30 received calls are saved. When Caller ID is sent, number appears. Place calls directly to those numbers. (Records remain even after handset power is turned off.)

**1** Press (↑)



- Use to open Dialed Numbers/All Calls.

**2** Select a record and press

**3** Press

Handset dials the number.

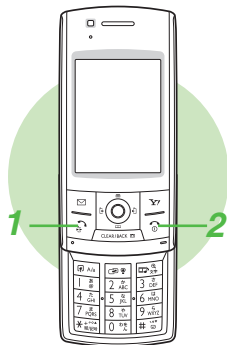
### ■ Indicators

	Answered Voice Call		Rejected Voice Call
	Answered Video Call		Rejected Video Call
	Requested Circle Talk		Missed Call Notification
	Missed Voice Call		Answer Phone Answered
	Missed Video Call		Forwarded to Voicemail Center
	Missed Circle Talk Request		

**Tip** ▶

- Names in Secret entries appear only when Show Secret Data is active.
- When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see P.2-12.

# Incoming Call

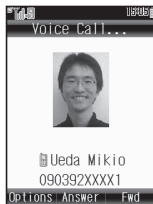


## Redirecting a Call

- Call Forwarding (P.13-3)
- Voicemail (P.13-4)
- Answer Phone (P.2-8)

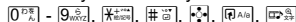
## 1 When a call arrives, press

- Available regardless of Slider position.



### When Any Key Answer (P.9-3) is Active

- Press any of these keys to answer calls



### Answering Calls with Headphones

- Press Call Button for 1+ seconds. To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.

- Quick Recorder: When a call arrives, press **Options** → Select **Record Message** → Press

- Use Quick Recorder to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive.

- To reject an incoming call, press **Options** while handset is ringing/vibrating → Select **Reject** → Press
- Standby returns; record appears in Received Calls.

- To place a caller on hold, press while handset is ringing/vibrating.

- Press to answer the call on hold.

- Answering a Video Call: P.5-3

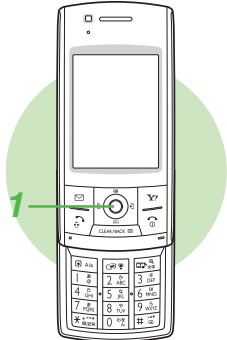
- Open To Answer: P.9-25

## 2 Press to end call

- Alternatively, close Slider to end call.
- Close To: P.9-26

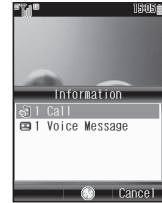
- Note** ▶
- Earpiece is a speaker. Beware of ringer or other handset sounds.
  - Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: P.9-15)

- Tip** ▶
- When Caller ID is not sent, **Withheld** appears instead of the phone number.
  - Names in Secret entries appear only when Show Secret Data is active.
  - Change ringtone volumes/patterns, vibration patterns and Small Light status (P.9-2 - 9-3).
  - To instantly mute ringer, press .



## Information

- Information window opens for:
  - Missed Calls
  - New messages
  - New S! Cast information
  - Calls answered with Answer Phone
  - Alarms
  - Weather Indicator updates, etc.
- Customize Status Light (P.9-3 "Small Light Illumination") for compatible items.



Information Window

## Opening Information Items

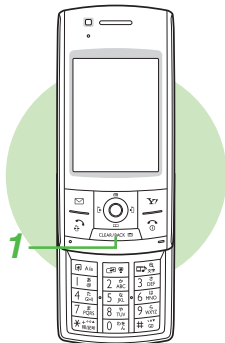
- 1 In Information window, select an item and press

Corresponding window opens.

### Opening Information List Manually

- Press ➔ Select *Phone* ➔ Press ➔ Select *Information* ➔ Press
  - To clear list, open Information list and press *Options* ➔ Select *Reset* ➔ Press ➔ Choose *Yes* ➔ Press

# Answer Phone




Record caller messages on handset.


- Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in Offline Mode. Use Voicemail (P.13-4) to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.
- Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Answer Phone and Caller Voice (P.2-11).
- Answer Phone is inactive by default.

## Activating & Canceling




### Activating

- 1 Press **CLEAR/BACK** for 1+ seconds  
 appears and Answer Phone is set.

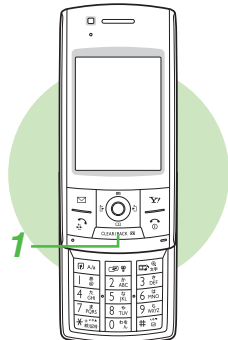
### Canceling

- 1 Press **CLEAR/BACK** for 1+ seconds  
 disappears and Answer Phone is canceled.

### When Answer Phone is Active

- For incoming calls, outgoing message plays and recording starts.
  - Recording continues even if Slider is closed.
  - To answer calls, press  during recording (no message will be recorded).
  - When recording ends,  appears.
- If recording capacity becomes full after the recording, Answer Phone is canceled and  appears.


- Note** ▶
- When less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, Answer Phone is disabled. Delete messages to activate Answer Phone.
  - Answer Phone is not available for incoming Video Calls.
  - In Manner, Drive or Original mode, respective Answer Phone setting (P.9-4) takes priority.










## Playing Messages

### 1 Press







Number of recordings appears and playback starts from the most recent message. After all messages have played, playback ends automatically.

- Message playback stops for incoming calls. Press  to answer a call.







### ■ Playback Operations

<b>Replay</b>	Press 
<b>Stop</b>	Press 
<b>Skip Forward</b>	Press  <b>Next</b> or 
<b>Skip Backward</b>	Press  twice
<b>Delete</b>	Press  <b>Delete</b> → Choose <b>Yes</b> → Press 

### Answer Time

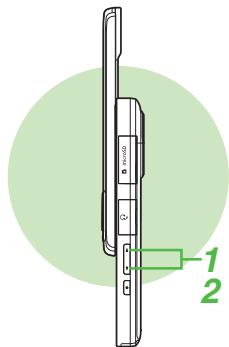
- Adjust ring time between 0 and 30 seconds (Answer Phone waits to answer calls).  
**Press  → Select *Settings* → Press  → Use  to select *Call/Video Call* → Select *Answer Phone* → Press  → Select *Answer Time* → Press  → Enter time (00 - 30 seconds) → Press **
  - Answer Time is **18** seconds by default.
- When Answer Phone and Voicemail or Call Forwarding are both active, the function with the shortest ring time takes priority.  
**Example:**  
**Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds**  
**Ring time for Voicemail or Call Forwarding: 10 seconds**  
 In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)
  - If Answer Phone is full or handset is in Offline Mode, incoming calls are handled by Voicemail or Call Forwarding.

### Earpiece Volume

- Follow these steps to activate or mute Earpiece for outgoing message/caller message recordings.  
**Press  → Select *Settings* → Press  → Use  to select *Call/Video Call* → Select *Answer Phone* → Press  → Select *Volume* → Press  → Select *Link to Profile* or *Silent* → Press **
  - For **Link to Profile**, current Earpiece Volume applies.

**Note** ► When messages play via Loudspeaker incoming call ringtone sounds at Level 1 or lower regardless of setting.

# Engaged Call Operations



## Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels).

- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.
- To adjust Earpiece Volume in Standby, see **P.9-25**.
- Earpiece Volume is **Level:3** by default.

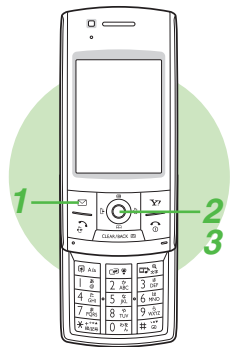
**1** During a call, press or

**2** Press (up) or (down) to adjust volume

## Voice Output

<b>Loudspeaker</b>	Use Loudspeaker for handsfree conversations
	<p><b>Press</b> </p> <p> To cancel, press .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activating Loudspeaker lowers Earpiece Volume to Level 2 or softer to protect hearing.</li> </ul>
<b>Mute</b>	Mute Microphone Other party's voice is audible
	<p><b>Press</b> <b>Mute</b></p> <p> To cancel, press  <b>Unmute</b>.</p>
<b>Hold</b>	Hold tone sounds and each other's voice is not audible
	<p><b>Press</b> <b>Options</b> <math>\rightarrow</math> <b>Select Hold</b> <math>\rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> </p> <p> To cancel, press .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Subscription to Call Waiting (<b>P.13-5</b>) or Conference Call (<b>P.13-6</b>) is required.</li> </ul>





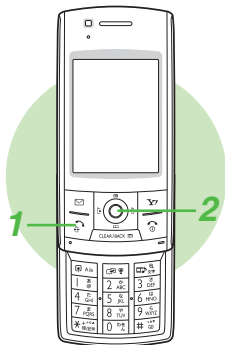
## Caller Voice

- Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Caller Voice and Answer Phone (P.2-8).
  - To play recorded messages, see P.2-9.
- 1 During a call, press** **Options**
  - 2 Select *Record Caller Voice* and press**
  - 3 Press** **to stop**
    - Alternatively, end call to stop. (Recordings remain even after handset power is turned off.)
- Recording starts.

## Other Engaged Call Operations

<b>Open Phone Book Entry</b>	Open Phone Book entries Press <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Phone Book</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Select an entry</b> ➔ Press
<b>Save Phone Book Entry</b>	Save the other party's number to Phone Book Press <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Phone Book</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Press <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Add New Entry</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Perform from Step 2 on P.4-4</b>
<b>Open Message</b>	Check received/sent/draft messages Press <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Messaging</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Select an item</b> ➔ Press
<b>Create Message</b>	Create a new message Press <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Messaging</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Select Create Message or Create New SMS</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11</b>
<b>Dial New Number</b>	Call another number Press <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Dial New Number</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Enter a phone number</b> ➔ Press
<b>Enable/Disable DTMF</b>	Select whether to send Touch Tones during a call Press <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Disable DTMF or Enable DTMF</b> ➔ Press
<b>Touch Tones</b>	Send alphanumeric messages to pagers or operate a home answer phone remotely Use <b>0 PPA</b> - <b>9 PPP</b> / <b>Xxxx</b> / <b>#xxx</b> • Touch Tones for the pressed buttons are sent.

# Call Log



## 1 Press

- All Calls opens.
- Available in Standby or during calls.
- Press to open others.

## 2 Select a record and press

Record details appear.

### ■ Tabs

All Calls	All dialed/received calls
Dialled Numbers	All dialed calls
Received Calls	All received calls

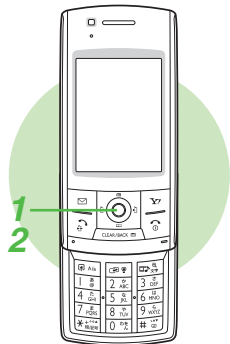
## Deleting/Using Call Log

Follow these steps first.

Press ➔ Select a record ➔ Press **Options**

<b>Delete</b>	Delete records one at a time <b>Select <i>Delete</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press </b>
<b>Delete All</b>	Delete all records <b>Select <i>Delete All</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press </b>
<b>Call</b>	Place calls <b>Select <i>Call</i> or <i>Video Call</i> ➔ Press </b> • Select <b><i>Int'l Call</i></b> to place international calls. Select <b><i>Edit Before Call</i></b> to edit numbers before dialing.
<b>Create Message</b>	Create messages <b>Select <i>Create Message</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <i>S! Mail</i> or <i>SMS</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 6 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11</b>
<b>Call Circle Talk</b>	Initiate Circle Talk <b>Select <i>Call Circle Talk</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 2 on P.18-8</b>

**Tip** ➤ To save phone numbers to Phone Book, see P.4-7 "Saving from Other Functions."



## Dialled Calls & Received Calls

Check estimated time of the most recent call (Last Call Time) and all calls made since Clear Timers was last applied (All Calls Time).

To show elapsed Call Time during a call, see **P.9-26** "Call Time Counter."

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Timers

- 1** Select **Dialled Calls or Received Calls** and press **⏏**
- 2** Press **⏏** to return

- Tip** ▶
- Last Call Time and All Calls Time remain even after handset power is turned off.
  - Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. On hold time is counted.

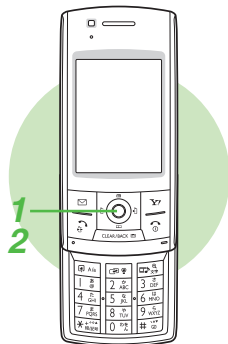
## Clear Timers

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Timers

Clear Timers	Reset Call Timers
	Select <b>Clear Timers</b> ▶ Press <b>⏏</b> ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press <b>⏏</b> ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press <b>⏏</b>

# Call Costs



Call Costs (including Max Cost) may not be available depending on subscription status.

## Last Call & All Calls

Check estimated call charge of the most recent call or all calls.

To show Call Cost automatically after each call, see **P.9-26** "Display Call Cost."

**Main Menu** ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (☎)* ▶ *Call Time & Cost* ▶ *Call Costs*

- 1** Select **Last Call or All Calls** and press **☐**
- 2** Press **☐** to return

- Tip** ▶
- Call Costs remain even after handset power is turned off.
  - Sum of charges appears for Conference Call (Optional Service).

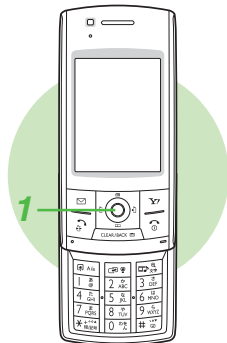
## Additional Functions

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call (☎)* ▶ *Call Time & Cost* ▶ *Call Costs*

<b>Clear Costs</b>	Reset Call Costs
	Select <b>Clear Costs</b> ▶ Press <b>☐</b> ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press <b>☐</b> ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press <b>☐</b>
<b>Cost Units</b> Default: YEN 1	Set currency and conversion rate (per yen) to show converted amount in Call Costs
	Select <b>Cost Units</b> ▶ Press <b>☐</b> ▶ Press <b>☐</b> <b>Edit</b> ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press <b>☐</b> ▶ Enter currency ▶ Press <b>☐</b> ▶ Enter conversion rate ▶ Press <b>☐</b> ▶ Press <b>☐</b>

# Outside Japan (International Roaming)



## Switching Network Services

- **Auto** is set by default.
- Use **Auto** whenever possible.

<b>Auto</b>		Sets Network by location (Network status) when selected and each time handset is turned on thereafter
<b>Manual</b>	<b>3G/GSM</b>	Use in 3G or GSM service areas
	<b>3G</b>	Use in 3G service areas
	<b>GSM</b>	Use in GSM service areas

**Main Menu** ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Network Settings* (↔) ▶ *Select Service*

### 1 Switching Automatically

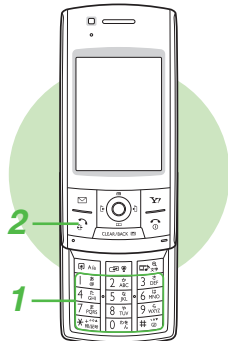
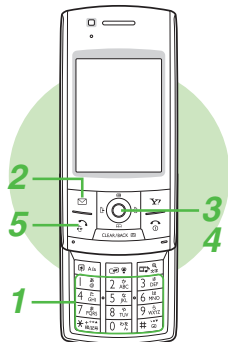
- 1 Select **Auto** and press

### Switching Manually

- 1 Select **Manual** and press
- 2 Select **3G/GSM, 3G or GSM** and press

Selected service is activated.

- Note** ▶
- International roaming requires a separate contract. For service basics, see **Global Roaming Guide**, available in English via SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>). For up-to-date information, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37).
  - Download and print **Global Roaming Guide** to carry with you while traveling abroad.



## Calling from Outside Japan

Use the same SoftBank handset number overseas.

### Calling Other Countries

#### 1 Enter a phone number

- Include area code for landline numbers.

#### 2 Press Options

#### 3 Select *Int'l Call* and press

Country names appear.

- To call Japan, select **日本 (JPN)** ➔ Press
- ➔ Skip ahead to Step 5

#### 4 Select a country and press

- + and country code are inserted before the phone number. The first 0 is omitted except when calling Italy (39). (+ indicates an outgoing international call.)

- To call unlisted countries, select **Enter Code** ➔ Press ➔ Enter country code ➔ Press

#### Calling SoftBank Handsets

- Always select **日本 (JPN)** (or press for direct entry).

#### 5 Press

### Calling Japan via Quick Operation

- Enter a phone number ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 4

### Direct Entry

- Press (+ appears) ➔ Enter country code ➔ Enter a phone number including the area code ➔ Perform Step 5
  - Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy (country code: 39).

### Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country

#### 1 Enter a phone number

- Include area code for landline numbers.

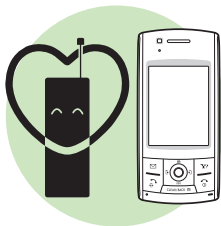
#### 2 Press

**Note** ➤ In some areas, other parties may not be able to hear you and vice versa after returning to calls on hold (P.2-10).

#### **Tip** ➤ Adding Country Codes

To save frequently used country codes, see P.9-25 "Country Codes." For more information, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37).

# Manner Mode & Offline Mode



## Minding Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

## Manner-Related Features

### ■ Manner Mode: P.2-18

Press Manner Key to automatically mute all sounds and activate vibration for incoming transmissions.

### ■ Vibration Mode: P.9-3

Activate vibration for incoming transmission alerts.

### ■ Volume Settings: P.9-2

When carrying handset in public, decrease or mute incoming transmission alerts or S! Application tones.

### ■ Offline Mode: P.2-19

Temporarily suspend all handset transmissions without turning off handset power.

### ■ Answer Phone: P.2-8

Handle incoming calls inappropriate/unsafe to answer.

### ■ Drive Mode: P.9-2

Small Light flashes for incoming calls; if unanswered driving message plays and Answer Phone activates.






## Activating/Canceling Manner Mode

Activate/cancel Manner mode in Standby, while browsing the Internet, during calls or while using Media Player or S! Applications.

### Activating


#### 1 Press for 1+ seconds

 appears and Manner mode is set.

-  (Answer Phone),  (Silent) and  (Silent & Vibration) appear as set in Manner settings (P.9-4 "Customizing Handset Modes").

### Canceling

#### 1 Press for 1+ seconds

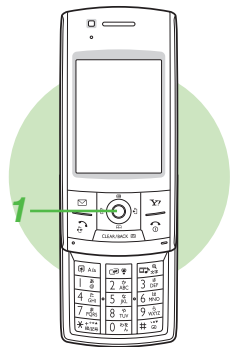
 disappears and Manner mode is canceled.

### When Manner Mode is Active

- Keypad Tones, Power On/Off and error tones are muted. Swap Call (P.13-6) beeps are audible.
  - Even in Manner mode, ringtone is audible from Headphones. Volume is fixed to **Level 1**.
- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound even in Manner mode.
- Manner settings (P.9-4 "Customizing Handset Modes") apply to Answer Phone, ringtones, Vibration, etc.

**Tip** ▶ While Answer Phone is recording, caller's voice is audible from Earpiece.





## Activating/Canceling Offline Mode

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions.

- Offline Mode blocks all calls/Internet transmissions. Bluetooth®/infrared transmissions are available.
- Offline Mode is **Off** by default.

### Activating

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (F4) ▶ Offline Mode

1 Choose **On** and press

☒ appears and Offline Mode is set.

### Canceling

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (F4) ▶ Offline Mode

1 Choose **Off** and press

☒ disappears and Offline Mode is canceled.

**Note** ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible in Offline Mode. See P.2-20.

# Emergency Calls



## Emergency Location Report

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets.

- 816SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.
- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.

- Note** ▶
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
  - Location Information is not reported when emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with **184**). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
  - Not available during international roaming (**P.2-15**).

## Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110, 119, 118, etc.) are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls	Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
<b>Keypad Lock (P.1-16)</b>	Not Possible	<b>Password Lock (P.9-17)</b>	Possible
<b>Max Cost (P.9-24)</b>	Possible	<b>Outgoing Calls (P.13-7)</b>	Possible
<b>Offline Mode (P.2-19)</b>	Not Possible	<b>PIN Entry (P.9-22)</b>	Not Possible

- Note** ▶ Emergency calls may not be possible when outside Japan as handset operations are affected by wireless network/radio signals available in the country or handset settings.

# 3

## Text Entry

<b>Characters</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>	<b>Editing Characters</b> .....	<b>3-8</b>
■ Switching Entry Modes .....	3-2	■ Deleting & Replacing .....	3-8
■ Character Entry Basics .....	3-2	■ Copy/Cut & Paste .....	3-8
<b>Entering Characters</b> .....	<b>3-3</b>	<b>User Dictionary</b> .....	<b>3-9</b>
■ Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana .....	3-3	■ Entries (Japanese) .....	3-9
■ Alphanumerics .....	3-4	■ 816SH Download Dictionary (Japanese) .....	3-9
■ Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons .....	3-4	<b>Notepad</b> .....	<b>3-10</b>
■ Mail & Web Extensions .....	3-5	■ New Entry .....	3-10
■ Character Code .....	3-5	■ Opening Notepad .....	3-10
■ Pager Code .....	3-5	■ Editing & Deleting Entries .....	3-10
■ Additional Character Entry Options .....	3-6		
<b>Conversion Methods (Japanese)</b> .....	<b>3-6</b>		
■ Phonetic Conversion .....	3-6		
■ Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion .....	3-6		
■ Quick Conversion (for Hiragana) .....	3-7		
■ One-Hiragana Conversion .....	3-7		
■ Conversion Settings .....	3-7		

# Characters

Use Kana and Pager (P.3-5) to enter alphanumerics, Symbols, hiragana, kanji, katakana and Pictograms. Unless noted otherwise, text entry operations are described for use in text entry windows using Kana Mode.

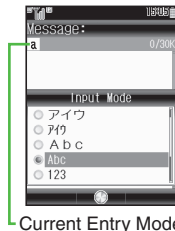
## Switching Entry Modes


### 1 Press

- Entry mode list appears.

### 2 Use to select a mode and press

- For **Pictogram** or **Symbols**, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)
- Available Modes:




漢	Kanji (hiragana)	A	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
ア	Double-byte katakana	a	Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
ア	Single-byte katakana	1	Single-byte number
A	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)		Character Code
a	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)		

## Character Entry Basics


Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

**Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press  three times.**



- Press  to toggle options in reverse. (Not available for single-byte numbers or Character Codes.)
- Key Assignments: P.19-10

### ■ Entering Characters Assigned to the Same Key

When the next character is on the same key, press  first to move cursor.

**Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.**



Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the current character and advance cursor.



# Entering Characters

## Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Following the example below, enter **鈴木タロウ** to learn how to enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

### 1 Enter **すずぎ**

- 1 Press **3 DEF** three times
- 2 Press **C**
- 3 Press **3 DEF** three times
- 4 Press **4 ABC**
- 5 Press **2 ABC** twice



### 2 Convert **すずぎ** to **鈴木**

- 1 Press **Q** (convert)
- 2 Use **Q** to select **鈴木**
  - To exit the list, press **ESC**.
  - To change segment, see "Segmenting Phrases" on the right.
- 3 Press **Q**
  - Press **Q** to cancel conversion. (Not available for Arrange Mail.)



### 3 Switch to double-byte katakana mode

- 1 Press **ALT**
- 2 Select **アイウ** and press **Q**

### 4 Enter **タロウ**

- 1 Press **4 GHU**
- 2 Press **9 WXYZ** five times
- 3 Press **1 あお** three times
- 4 Press **Q**

### ■ Segmenting Phrases

If the word is not listed, press **CLEAR/BACK** after Step 2-2 on the left to exit. Use **C** to segment hiragana to convert separately.

Example: Segment **みち** into **み** and **ち**.



### ■ Selecting Multiple Converted Words

Press **PA**.

Example: To enter **西山大輔**



### User Dictionary

- Save frequently used words/phrases to select from the word suggestion list. For details, see P.3-9.

### Help

- Press **Options** -> Select **Help** -> Press **Q**

### Predictive & Previous Usage

- Use these functions to convert hiragana to kanji more quickly.




<b>Predictive</b>	Word suggestions change as up to five hiragana are entered
<b>Previous Usage</b>	Suggests words/characters likely to follow entry based on previous entries

- Both functions are active by default (P.3-7 "Optional Predictive Functions").
- Predictive is disabled when Show Secret Data (P.9-23) is active.





### Small Kana (っ, っ, etc.)

- Enter a character and press 

### Adding ° or °

- Enter a character and press 
  - For か (Ka), さ (Sa) and た (Ta) row characters, press  to add/remove °. For は (Ha) row characters, press  once to add °, twice to add ° and three times to remove.
  - In single-byte katakana entry, ° and ° each count as one character.


### Line Break

- Press  at the end of text
  - Insert line breaks in message text, Notepad, etc.
  - To insert line breaks in text, press  until  appears, then press .

### Space

- Press 

### Alphanumerics


- In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press a key until the assigned character appears
  - Alternatively, enter numbers in single-byte number mode.
  - Press  to toggle case.

- Press 



### Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons

#### Symbols & Pictograms

Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible handsets.

- In double-byte entry mode, press  to open Log/History (Log/History is available in some entry modes; see P.19-10)

Recently used double-byte Symbols/Pictograms appear.

- In single-byte entry mode, press  → Press 
  - Symbols do not appear in Log/History.



- Press  or  to toggle Symbol/Pictogram List(s)



### 3 Use to select one and press



- Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte entry mode.

### 4 Press to exit list

**Clear Log/History**

■ Press  **Options** ➔ Select *Input/Conversion* ➔ Press 

➔ Select *Clear History* ➔ Press  ➔ Choose *Yes* ➔ Press 

■ To return to the text entry window, press  ➔ Press 



- Tip ▶ • For available Pictograms, see P.19-12.  
 • Enter cross-carrier Pictograms (Step 9 on P.14-4) or My Pictograms (P.14-8).

## Emoticons

### 1 Press **Options**

### 2 Select *Emoticons* and press

### 3 Select an emoticon and press

- Tip ▶ • For other emoticons, enter *かお* and press  (convert). Alternatively, enter a descriptive word such as *カーイ* or *うーん* and press  (convert). Corresponding emoticons can be selected.
- Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as *嬉しい* or *悲しい*, corresponding emoticons may appear in the word suggestion list. To disable this function, see P.3-7 "Optional Predictive Functions" (EmoticonWordLink).

## Mail & Web Extensions

Enter *.co.jp*, *http://*, etc., easily.

### 1 Press **Options**

### 2 Select *Quick Address List* and press

### 3 Select an extension and press

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

## Character Code

### 1 In Character Code entry mode, enter four digits (P.19-14)

## Pager Code

### 1 Press **Options**

### 2 Select *Input/Conversion* and press

### 3 Select *Input Method* and press



### 4 Select *Pager Code* and press

- To switch to Kana Mode, select *Kana* ➔ Press 

### 5 Enter two digits (P.19-13)

### Character Entry Modes

#### ■ After Step 4, press ➔ Select a mode ➔ Press

- For *Pictogram* or *Symbols*, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)
  - To toggle between upper and lower case modes, press  ➔ Press  **P/p**

## Additional Character Entry Options

**Jump to** Jump to the end or top of text

Press **Options** → **Select Cursor Position** → Press → **Select Jump to End or Jump to Top** → Press

**Undo** Cancel the previous conversion or recover characters immediately after deletion

Press **Options** → **Select Undo/Reverse Order** → Press

• Also an alternative to undo Cut or Paste (P.3-8).

**Phone Book** Insert Phone Book entry items into text entry windows

Press **Options** → **Select Advanced** → Press → **Select Phone Book** → Press → **Select a Phone Book entry or My Details** → Press → **Select an item** → Press

**Font Size** Change font size

Press **Options** → **Select Advanced** → Press → **Select Font Size** → Press → **Select a size** → Press

Default Standard

**Candidates Format** Change word suggestion list view (Single or Double Column)

Press **Options** → **Select Input/Conversion** → Press → **Select Candidates Format** → Press → **Select a format** → Press

Default Double Column

• Format is fixed to **Single Column** when Font Size (above) is **Large** or **Huge**.

## Conversion Methods (Japanese)

### Phonetic Conversion

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji.

**1** Enter reading in hiragana

**2** Press **Kanji**

**3** Select a kanji and press

### Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

See P.19-10 "Key Assignments" or use Keypad inscriptions.

**1** Enter hiragana and press **Kana**

• To enter **AM**, press then **Kana**.

**2** Use to select a word and press





## Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)


Quick Conversion helps reduce keystrokes needed to enter frequently used words. A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.



**Example: To enter 微妙**

Normal Conversion	6 <sub>mic</sub> 6 <sub>mic</sub> *+ (ツ) 7 <sub>ps</sub> 7 <sub>ps</sub> (ズ)
	8 <sub>top</sub> 8 <sub>top</sub> 8 <sub>top</sub> 8 <sub>top</sub> 8 <sub>top</sub> 8 <sub>top</sub> (ト)
	1 <sub>ex</sub> 1 <sub>ex</sub> 1 <sub>ex</sub> (フ) (convert)
Quick Conversion	6 <sub>mic</sub> *+ (ズ) 7 <sub>ps</sub> (ズ) 8 <sub>top</sub> (ト) 1 <sub>ex</sub> (オ)
	(convert)

### 1 Enter hiragana and press

Cursor turns green.

- While cursor is green, use  to segment entered hiragana and then convert one segment at a time.


To cancel Quick Conversion, press   $\Rightarrow$  Press  for normal conversion

### 2 Use to select a word and press

#### One Hiragana Predictive Entry

- Enter hiragana and initiate Quick Conversion. Word suggestions preset by time blocks appear.
  - Words starting with a hiragana in the same row appear.

#### One Hiragana Word Call

- Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press .

## One-Hiragana Conversion

Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

**Example: To enter 鈴木**



Up to 20 word selections are saved per hiragana. When memory is full, the oldest entry is deleted to make room for a new entry.

## Conversion Settings

**Optional Predictive Functions** Activate or cancel Predictive, Previous Usage or EmoticonWordLink

Press  **Options**  $\Rightarrow$  **Select Input/Conversion**  $\Rightarrow$  Press  Default On (all)

$\Rightarrow$  **Select Predictive, Previous Usage or EmoticonWordLink**

$\Rightarrow$  Press   $\Rightarrow$  **Choose On or Off**  $\Rightarrow$  Press 



- Predictive (P.3-4) is disabled when Show Secret Data is active.

**Set Low Priority** Select types of words to lower their priorities in the word suggestion list

Press  **Options**  $\Rightarrow$  **Select Input/Conversion**  $\Rightarrow$  Press 

$\Rightarrow$  **Select Set Low Priority**  $\Rightarrow$  Press   $\Rightarrow$  **Select an item**

$\Rightarrow$  Press   $\Rightarrow$  Press  **OK**

- To select multiple items, select and press  for each item before pressing  **OK**.

**Reset Learning** Clear log of words selected in kanji conversion, Predictive, etc.

Press  **Options**  $\Rightarrow$  **Select Input/Conversion**  $\Rightarrow$  Press 

$\Rightarrow$  **Select Reset Learning**  $\Rightarrow$  **Choose Yes**  $\Rightarrow$  Press 

- Words saved in User Dictionary remain.

# Editing Characters

## Deleting & Replacing

- 1** Use to select a character and press .

Mi**k**ako

The highlighted character is deleted.

Press for 1+ seconds to delete characters on and after cursor.

Mi**k**ako

To delete all text, place cursor at the end of text and press for 1+ seconds.

Mi**k**ako

## 2 Enter another character

### Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press once for each character immediately after deletion to recover up to 64 characters.
  - Not available for Arrange Mail or after using (Long Press).

## Copy/Cut & Paste

When **Options** appears, copy or cut and paste text into the same window or another.

- Copy text strings of up to 6 KB each.
- My Pictograms copied from Arrange Mail Composition window, etc. may not be pasted.

- 1** Press **Options**

- 2** Select **Copy** or **Cut** and press

- 3** Use to select the first character of text and press

Start point is set.

To change the start point, press **Quit**.

- 4** Select the end point and press

- Up to ten copied/cut text strings are saved in Paste List (below). Entries appear most recent first.

To undo Cut, press .

- 5** Open text paste target window

- 6** Press for 1+ seconds

To undo Paste, press .

### Using Paste List

- Press **Options** → **Select Paste** → Press → **Select text** → Press
  - Available when text is saved in Paste List.
    - To reset the list, press **Reset** → Choose **Yes** → Press
  - In Arrange Mail Composition window (P.14-8), last text string copied or cut is pasted. Paste List does not appear.

# User Dictionary

## Entries (Japanese)

Save frequently used words/phrases. Assign a reading (keyword) in hiragana to each entry. In text entry windows, enter a reading and convert. Saved words/phrases appear among word suggestions.

- Save up to 100 entries.
- Save up to five words/phrases per reading.

### New Entry

Save words/phrases to User Dictionary

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary  
▶ New Entry

**Enter a word/phrase** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ **Enter a reading (keyword)** ▶ Press [OK]

- Enter up to 15 characters per word/phrase and eight characters in hiragana per reading.

- Alternatively, in other text entry windows, press [Options] ▶ Select **Add to Dictionary** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select the first character of text ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select the end point ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter a reading (keyword) ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Press [OK]

### Edit/Delete

Edit or delete entries

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary  
▶ Saved Word List

### Edit

**Select a word/phrase** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ **Edit the word/phrase** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ **Edit reading** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press [OK]

### Delete

**Select a word/phrase** ▶ Press [Options] ▶ **Delete** ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press [OK]

## 816SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Download specialized 816SH Download Dictionaries from Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site (P.15-10). Activate up to five dictionaries at one time to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among word suggestions.

### Acquire Dictionary

Activate downloaded dictionary

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary  
▶ Acquire Dictionary

**Select from Dictionary 1 to Dictionary 5** ▶ Press [OK]  
▶ **Select a dictionary** ▶ Press [OK]

- Follow the same steps to replace dictionaries.

**Note** ▶ Some dictionary files may not be usable.

### Cancel

Cancel dictionary

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary  
▶ Acquire Dictionary

**Select a dictionary** ▶ Press [Options] ▶ **Select Cancel** ▶ Press [OK]

### Info

View dictionary information

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary  
▶ Acquire Dictionary

**Select a dictionary** ▶ Press [Options] ▶ **Select Info**  
▶ Press [OK]

- Press [OK] to return.

# Notepad

Save frequently used phrases for use in mail message, etc.  
Save up to 60 entries (1,536 characters each).

## New Entry

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 3 (F3) ► Notepad ► <Add New Entry>

- 1 Enter text and press
- 2 Select a category and press

### Call Notepad

- Insert text saved in Notepad into text entry windows.  
Press Options ► Select **Notepad** ► Press ►  
Select **Call Notepad** ► Press ► Select an entry  
► Press

## Opening Notepad

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 3 (F3) ► Notepad

- 1 Select an entry and press
- 2 Press to return

## Editing & Deleting Entries

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 3 (F3) ► Notepad

Edit	<b>Edit Text</b> Select an entry ► Press <b>Edit Text</b> ► Edit text ► Press
	<b>Change Category</b> Select an entry ► Press <b>Options</b> ► Select <b>Change Category</b> ► Press  ► Select a Category ► Press
Delete	Select an entry ► Press <b>Options</b> ► Select <b>Delete</b> ► Press  ► Choose Yes ► Press

# 4

# Phone Book

<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>4-2</b>	<b>Mail Groups</b> .....	<b>4-12</b>
■ Phone Book Entry Items.....	4-2	■ Creating Mail Groups .....	4-12
■ USIM Card Phone Book .....	4-3	■ Saving Group Members .....	4-12
■ Phone Book Memory Status.....	4-3	■ Editing Mail Groups.....	4-12
■ Phone Book-Related Functions.....	4-3	■ Editing Group Members .....	4-13
<b>Creating Phone Book Entries</b> .....	<b>4-4</b>	<b>Speed Dial List</b> .....	<b>4-13</b>
■ Saving Basic Items .....	4-4	■ Saving Phone Numbers .....	4-13
■ Customizing Handset Responses .....	4-5	■ Speed Dial .....	4-14
■ Saving Secret Entries .....	4-7	■ Editing Speed Dial List.....	4-14
■ Saving from Other Functions.....	4-7	<b>Additional Phone Book Settings</b> .....	<b>4-14</b>
<b>Using Phone Book</b> .....	<b>4-8</b>	<b>S! Address Book (SAB)</b> .....	<b>4-15</b>
■ Dialing via Phone Book .....	4-8	■ Service Usage Outline .....	4-15
<b>Editing Phone Book Entries</b> .....	<b>4-9</b>	■ SAB Sync Commands & Features .....	4-16
■ Correction/Change .....	4-9	■ Backup & Restore .....	4-17
■ Copying Phone Book Entries .....	4-10	■ Synchronizing Phone Book .....	4-17
■ Deleting Phone Book Entries .....	4-10	■ Opening Log .....	4-18
<b>Category Settings</b> .....	<b>4-11</b>	<b>My Details</b> .....	<b>4-18</b>
■ Changing Category Name.....	4-11	■ Opening My Details.....	4-18
■ Moving Categories .....	4-11	■ Editing My Details .....	4-18
■ Customizing Handset Responses .....	4-11		

# Overview

Save frequently used phone numbers and mail addresses to Phone Book (up to 750 entries).  
Entry names appear for calls from numbers saved in Phone Book.

## Phone Book Entry Items

Item	Description	Item	Description
<b>Last Name:</b>	Enter up to 32 characters	<b>Note:</b>	Add personal details. Enter up to 256 characters.
<b>First Name:</b>		<b>Birthday:</b>	Enter birth date
<b>Reading (Last Name):</b>		<b>Picture:</b>	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/mail
<b>Reading (First Name):</b>			
<b>Add Phone Number:</b>	Enter up to five numbers (32 digits each)	<b>Tone/Video for Voice Call:</b>	Set ringtone/ringvideo or Vibration by caller/sender
<b>Add Email Address:</b>	Enter up to five addresses (128 single-byte alphanumerics each)	<b>Tone/Video for Video Call:</b>	
<b>Category:</b>	Sort entries into 16 Categories. Category names can be changed. Set ringtone/ ringvideo and Vibration by Category.	<b>Tone/Video for New Message:</b>	
<b>Address:</b>	Enter postal code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/province (64 characters), city name (64 characters), street name/number (64 characters) and building name (64 characters)	<b>Vibration for Incoming Call:</b>	
		<b>Vibration for New Message:</b>	
<b>Homepage:</b>	Save URLs. Enter up to 1,024 bytes.	<b>Secret:</b>	Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries

### Note ► Back Up Important Information

When battery is exhausted/removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost; handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered data.

## USIM Card Phone Book

Save entries to USIM Card.

Entry Items:

- Name, reading, phone number (up to two numbers per entry), mail address (one address per entry) and Category

**Note** ▶ Depending on the USIM Card in use, some items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

## Phone Book Memory Status

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Manage Entries

### 1 Select *Memory Status* and press

Numbers of entries on handset and USIM Card appear.

Press  to return.

## Phone Book-Related Functions

<b>Phone Book Lock</b>	Restrict access to Phone Book information (P.9-18)
<b>S! Address Book</b>	Back up Phone Book via Server; synchronize Phone Book/SAB to reflect changes (P.4-15)
<b>Speed Dial</b>	Save phone numbers (directly or via Phone Book) to Speed Dial List for easy dialing (P.4-13)

# Creating Phone Book Entries

## Saving Basic Items

Enter a name, reading, phone number and mail address.  
To create USIM Card Phone Book entries, set storage media beforehand (P.4-14 "Save New Entry").

Main Menu ▶ Phone

### 1 Select **Add New Entry** and press

Entry Details appears.

### 2 Enter name (last/first)

**1** Select **Last Name:** and press 

**2** Enter last name and press 




**3** Select **First Name:** and press 

**4** Enter first name and press 



Entry Details

Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

 To correct reading, select **Reading(Last Name):** or **Reading(First Name):** → Press  → Edit reading → Press 

### 3 Enter phone number

**1** Select **Add Phone Number:** and press 

**2** Enter a phone number and press 

- Include area code for landline numbers.

**3** Select an icon and press 

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat Step 3.

### 4 Enter mail address

**1** Select **Add Email Address:** and press 

**2** Enter a mail address and press 

**3** Select an icon and press 

- To save additional mail addresses, repeat Step 4.
- Enter other items as needed.

### 5 Press **Save**



### Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

**Note** ▶ To save an entry, enter at least one of the following: a) last name; b) first name; c) phone number; or d) mail address.

### ■ Other Phone Book Entry Items

<b>Category</b>	Select <b>Category</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select a Category ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>
<b>Address</b>	Select <b>Address</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Postal Code</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Enter postal code ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Country</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Enter name ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>State/Province</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Enter name ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>City</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Enter name ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Street &amp; Number</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Enter street name/number ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Building</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Enter building name ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Address Type</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select a type (Home or Office) ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>OK</b>
<b>Homepage</b>	Select <b>Homepage</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Enter URL ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select a type (Home or Office) ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>
<b>Note</b>	Select <b>Note</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Enter text ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>
<b>Birthday</b>	Select <b>Birthday</b> : ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Enter date ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>

## Customizing Handset Responses

Set Picture, ringtone/ringvideo or Vibration for incoming calls/mail by entry.

Follow these steps after opening Entry Details (P.4-4).

When finished, Entry Details returns. Complete other fields.

### Picture

#### 1 Select **Picture**: and press

- To cancel saved image, select **Remove Picture** ▶ Press  ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

#### 2 **Selecting from Data Folder**

##### 1 Select **Assign Picture** and press

##### 2 Select an image and press

#### **Capturing New Image**

##### 1 Select **Take Picture** and press

##### 2 Frame image on Display and press








Captured image appears.

##### 3 Press

#### **Note** ▶

- Setting is canceled when:
  - Source file is deleted, moved or renamed (warnings do not appear)
  - Source file license or usage period expires (copy protected files, etc.)
- Images may not appear for incoming calls/mail when another function is active, etc.

## Ringtone/Ringvideo







- 1** Select any/all items (*Tone/Video for Voice Call: ... Tone/Video for New Message:*) and press 
- 2** Select *Assign Tone* and press 
  - To cancel assigned tone/video, select *Remove Tone/Video*
    - ▶ Press  ▶ Choose *Yes* ▶ Press 
- 3** *Ringtone*
  - 1** Select *Preset Sounds, Ring Songs-Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtones* and press 
  - Ringvideo*
    - 1** Select *Videos* and press 
- 4** Select a file and press 

### Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail

- After Step 4, select *Tone/Video for New Message:* ▶  
 Press  ▶ Select *Duration* ▶ Press  ▶ Enter time ▶  
 Press 

- Note** ▶ Sounds & Alerts (P.9-2 "Ringtone/Ringvideo") setting applies when:
- Source file is deleted, moved or renamed (warnings do not appear)
  - Source file license or usage period expires (copy protected files, etc.)
  - Memory Card with the source file is removed (setting returns when the card is re-inserted)

## Vibration

- 1** Select *Vibration for Incoming Call:* or *Vibration for New Message:* and press 
- 2** Select *Switch On/Off* and press 
- 3** Select *On, Link to Sound or Off* and press 
  - Link to Sound: P.9-3
- 4** Select *Vibration Pattern* and press 
- 5** Select a pattern and press 
- 6** Press 

## Saving Secret Entries

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries.

- Name/image is hidden for calls/mail from Secret entries.
- Follow these steps after opening Entry Details (P.4-4). When finished, Entry Details returns. Complete other fields.

**1** Select **Secret:** and press

**2** Choose **On** and press

### Unlock Temporarily

- For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps.

Press  ➔ Press  **Options** ➔ Select **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press

- Secret entries are hidden next time Phone Book is opened.

- Note** ▶
- Activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23) to open Secret entries.
  - To cancel Secret, activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23) and choose **Off** in Step 2. To edit Phone Book entries, see P.4-9 "Editing Phone Book Entries."
  - Secret entries do not appear in Standby Window or Hot Status member list.

## Saving from Other Functions

Save phone numbers and mail addresses from Call Log, messages, etc.

- Available when **Save to Phone Book** or **Save Address** appears in Options.
- Follow these steps to save from Call Log.

**1** Use  to open Dialed Numbers/Received Calls

**2** Use  to select a record and press  **Options**

**3** Select **Save to Phone Book** and press

**4** Select **As New Entry** and press

Phone number is entered automatically and Entry Details (P.4-4) appears. Complete other fields.

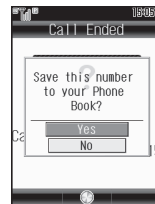
- To save to an existing Phone Book entry, select **As New Detail** ➔ Press  ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press

### After Calls with Unsaved Numbers

- Confirmation for saving the number to Phone Book appears.

- To save, choose **Yes** ➔ Press  ➔ Perform Step 4 above
- To end without saving, choose **No** ➔ Press

- To hide this confirmation, see P.4-14 "New Number Prompt."



# Using Phone Book

## Dialing via Phone Book

Search Phone Book by katakana row (default search method) to call numbers within entries.

- To dial numbers saved in Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23).
- To search by other methods, see P.4-9.
- To use USIM Card Phone Book, first set Select Phone Book (P.4-14) to *USIM Memory*.

**1** Press

**2** Use to specify katakana row

- Alternatively, enter Reading to search Phone Book.

**3** Use to select an entry and press

Phone Book entry opens.  
(Window Description: right)

- For entries with multiple numbers, use to select one.

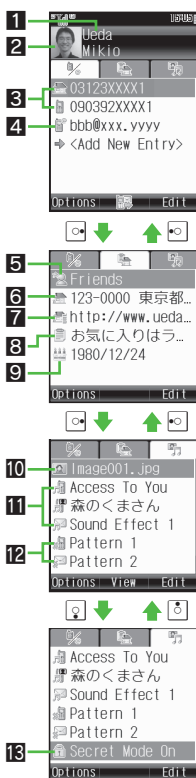
**4** Press

Handset dials the number.

- For other options, press → Select an option → Press



## Window Description



- 1** Name
- 2** Image Set for Picture
- 3** Phone Number
- 4** Mail Address
- 5** Category Name
- 6** Address
- 7** Homepage
- 8** Note
- 9** Birthday
- 10** Name of Image Set for Picture
- 11** Ringtone/Ringvideo Settings
- 12** Vibration Settings
- 13** Secret Status

**Tip** ▶ To see details or use saved information, select an item and press . To add information, select an item in angle brackets (<Add New Entry>, etc.) and press .

## Phone Book Search Methods












<b>By Reading</b>	Shows entries that start with specified Reading
<b>By Category</b>	Opens entries in the specified Category
<b>By a-ka-sa-ta-na</b>	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row

By *a-ka-sa-ta-na* is set by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ Phone ▶ Ph.Book Settings ▶ Sort Entries

### 1 Select *By Reading*, *By Category* or *By a-ka-sa-ta-na* and press

- Use these dialing methods in Standby:

<b>By Reading</b>	Press  ➔ Enter Reading ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press  ➔ Press 
<b>By Category</b>	Press  ➔ Select a Category ➔ Press  ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press  ➔ Press 
<b>By a-ka-sa-ta-na</b>	Press  ➔ Use  to specify a row ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press  ➔ Press 

For entries with multiple numbers, select one and press .

## Editing Phone Book Entries

To edit Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23).

### Correction/Change

**1** Press , then select an entry

**2** Press  **Options**

**3** Select *Edit* and press 

**4** Select an item and press 

- See procedure for saving items to Phone Book (P.4-4 - 4-7).
- Edit Reading after editing names.

**5** Press  when finished

- To edit other items, repeat Steps 4 - 5.

 To cancel, press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 




**6** Press  **Save**

The entry is overwritten.

## Copying Phone Book Entries

Exchange entries between handset and USIM Card.  
Only supported entry items are copied to USIM Card (P.4-3 "USIM Card Phone Book").

### One Entry

- 1 Press , then select an entry
- 2 Press  **Options**
- 3 Select *Manage Entries* and press 

### 4 Handset to USIM Card

- 1 Select *Copy Entry to USIM* and press 
- 2 Choose *Yes* and press 

### USIM Card to Handset

- 1 Select *Copy Entry to Phone* and press 

### All Entries





**Main Menu** ▶ Phone ▶ Manage Entries ▶ Copy All

- 1 Select *USIM to Phone* or *Phone to USIM* and press 
- 2 Choose *Yes* and press 

**Note** ▶ If handset or USIM Card memory is low, entries cannot be copied all at once.




## Deleting Phone Book Entries

### One Entry

- 1 Press , then select an entry
- 2 Press  **Options**
- 3 Select *Delete* and press 
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press 

### All Entries

**Main Menu** ▶ Phone ▶ Manage Entries ▶ Delete All

- 1 Select *Phone Entries, USIM Entries or Both Entries* and press 
- 2 Choose *Yes* and press 
- 3 Enter Handset Code and press 

# Category Settings

Customize Category options; create new Category names or sort Categories.

## Changing Category Name

Main Menu ► Phone ► Category Control

- 1 Use to select (handset) or (USIM)
- 2 Select a Category and press .
  - No Category cannot be renamed.
- 3 Select **Edit Name** and press .
  - To change icons, select **Change Icon** ► Press ► Select an icon ► Press (Omit the next steps.)
- 4 Enter name
  - Enter up to 16 characters on handset; USIM Card character entry limit varies according to card specifications.
- 5 Press .

## Moving Categories

Main Menu ► Phone ► Category Control

- 1 Use to select (handset) or (USIM)
- 2 Select a Category and press **Move**
- 3 Use to select target location and press

Tip ► Moving Categories changes Category view for **By Category** Phone Book search (P.4-9) accordingly.

## Customizing Handset Responses

Set ringtone/ringvideo or Vibration for incoming calls/mail by Category.

Category settings for incoming calls/mail are not available for Categories on USIM Card.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Category Control

- 1 Use to select (handset)
- 2 Select a Category and press **Options**
- 3 Select **Assign Ringtone** or **Assign Vibration** and press
- 4 Select an item and press .
  - For more, see the corresponding procedure for Phone Book entries (P.4-6).

Note ►

- Ringtone/ringvideo setting is canceled when:
  - Source file is deleted, moved or renamed (warnings do not appear)
  - Source file license or usage period expires (copy protected files, etc.)
- Ringtone/ringvideo and Vibration settings for Phone Book entries (P.4-6) take priority.

# Mail Groups

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

## Creating Mail Groups

Create up to 20 Mail Groups.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Mail Groups

- 1 Select **<Add New Group>** and press
- 2 Enter name and press 
  - Enter up to 16 characters.

## Saving Group Members

Save up to 20 members per Group.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Mail Groups

- 1 Select a Group and press
- 2 Select **<Assign New Entry>** and press
- 3 Select an entry and press 
  - For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use  to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ▶ Press
  - To add more members, repeat Steps 2 - 3.

## Editing Mail Groups

### Renaming Groups

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Mail Groups

- 1 Select a Group and press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Edit Name** and press
- 3 Enter name and press
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press

### Deleting Groups

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Mail Groups






- 1 Select a Group and press  **Options**
- 2 Select **Delete** and press
- 3 Choose **Yes** and press
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press



## Editing Group Members




### Changing Members

Main Menu ► Phone ► Mail Groups ► *Open a Group*

- 1 Select a member and press  **Options**
- 2 Select *Re-assign Entry* and press 
- 3 Select an entry and press 
  - For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use  to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ► Press 
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press 

### Deleting Members

Main Menu ► Phone ► Mail Groups ► *Open a Group*

- 1 Select a member and press  **Options**
- 2 Select *Remove Entry* and press 
- 3 Choose *Yes* and press 








**Tip** ► Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.

## Speed Dial List







### Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial List for easy dialing.


Main Menu ► Phone ► *Speed Dial List*

- 1 Select from  to  and press 
- 2 Select an entry and press 
  - For entries with multiple numbers, use  to select one ► Press 
  - To overwrite existing number, choose *Yes* ► Press 

#### Saving from Phone Book

- Open a Phone Book entry (P.4-8) and follow these steps.  
Select a phone number ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Add Speed Dial* ► Press  ► Select from  to   
► Press 
  - To overwrite existing number, choose *Yes* ► Press 

**Note** ► Saved numbers are deleted from Speed Dial List when edited in Phone Book or when source entry is deleted.

**Tip** ► Use Headphones with Call Button to call the number saved in Speed Dial .


## Speed Dial

**1 Press a key** (0<sup>D</sup> - 9<sup>S</sup>)

**2 Press** 

- To place Video Calls, press  for 1+ seconds. (Speed Video Call)







### Using Headphones with Call Button

- In Standby, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in Speed Dial .
- To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.

## Editing Speed Dial List

Follow these steps first.






**Main Menu** ▶ *Phone* ▶ *Speed Dial List*

Delete	Delete entries one at a time Select an entry ▶ Press  <b>Options</b> ▶ Select <b>Delete</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press 
	• Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting Speed Dial entries.
Clear All	Return Speed Dial List to default setting Press  <b>Options</b> ▶ Select <b>Clear All</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press 

## Additional Phone Book Settings

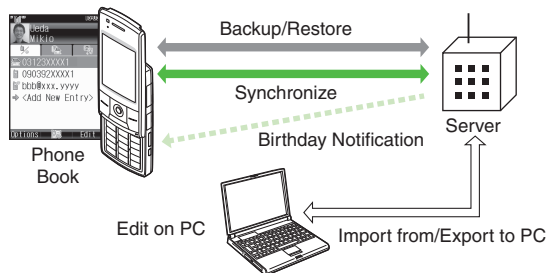
Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Phone* ▶ *Ph.Book Settings*

Select Phone Book <small>Default: Phone</small>	Switch between handset and USIM Card Select <b>Select Phone Book</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>Select Phone, USIM Memory or Both</b> ▶ Press  . • For <b>Both</b> , entries in both storage media appear.
	Save New Entry <small>Default: Phone</small>
New Number Prompt <small>Default: On</small>	Show or hide confirmation for saving to Phone Book after calls with unsaved numbers Select <b>New Number Prompt</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>Incoming Call or Outgoing Call</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <b>On or Off</b> ▶ Press 

# S! Address Book (SAB)

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.4-17).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/support/useful/sab/>).

**Note** ► Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur transmission fees.

## Service Usage Outline

### Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank via Yahoo! Keitai.

### Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, User ID and Password arrive via SMS.  
• User ID and Password are required to use SAB via a PC.

### Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

**Tip** ► If User ID and Password SMS does not arrive, dial 157 for Customer Service or follow these steps.

Press **[Y]** ► Select **メニュー/ソフト** ► Press **[OK]** ►  
Select **My SoftBank** ► Press **[OK]** ► Select  
**English** ► Press **[OK]** ► Select **Password**  
**confirmation for S! Address Book** ► Press **[OK]**  
■ Follow onscreen instructions.

## SAB Sync Commands & Features

<b>Backup/ Restore</b>	<b>Backup</b>	Export Phone Book content to SAB <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Restore</b>	Import SAB content to Phone Book <sup>2</sup>
<b>Synchronize</b>	<b>Synchronize</b>	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB <sup>3</sup>
	<b>Sync from Client</b>	Add Phone Book changes to SAB <sup>4</sup>
	<b>Sync from Server</b>	Add SAB changes to Phone Book <sup>5</sup>
<b>Edit on PC</b>	<b>Import from PC</b>	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	<b>Export to PC</b>	Export SAB content to PC address book
<b>Send Notice<sup>6</sup></b>	<b>Birthday Notification</b>	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	<b>Email Address Notification</b>	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	<b>"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification</b>	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
<b>Spam Filter</b>	<b>Tomodachi Email Filter<sup>7</sup></b>	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

<sup>1</sup>Any existing SAB content is deleted.

<sup>2</sup>Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

<sup>3</sup>If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

<sup>4</sup>Unrelated SAB changes remain.

<sup>5</sup>Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

<sup>6</sup>Access this function via handset or a PC.

<sup>7</sup>Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.

### Precautions

#### Unsyncronizable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

- Picture, Tone/Video, Vibration

#### Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

#### Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

#### Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

## ■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

### • SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets

SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.

### • Other 3G Handsets

SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.

### • V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series

Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

## ■ Availability

SAB is only accessible within Japan.

## Backup & Restore

### Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Main Menu ► Phone ► *SI Address Book* ► Backup

**1 Choose Yes and press**

**2 Enter Handset Code and press**

Handset connects to the Server and Backup starts.

- After Backup, details appear.

To cancel, press  **Cancel** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

**3 Press**  to return

### Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Main Menu ► Phone ► *SI Address Book* ► Restore

**1 Choose Yes and press**

**2 Enter Handset Code and press**

Handset connects to the Server and Restore starts.

- After Restore, details appear.

To cancel, press  **Cancel** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

**3 Press**  to return

## Synchronizing Phone Book

### Manual Synchronization

- For details, see the table on **P.4-16**.

- If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronization is performed via **Synchronize** regardless of selection.

Main Menu ► Phone ► *SI Address Book*

**1 Select Synchronize, Sync from Client or Sync from Server and press**

**2 Choose Yes and press**

**3 Enter Handset Code and press**

Handset connects to the Server and Synchronization starts.

- After Synchronization, details appear.

To cancel, press  **Cancel** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

**4 Press**  to return

## Auto Synchronization

Auto Sync Settings is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ *S!* Address Book ▶ Auto Sync Settings

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press
- 2 Select **Set On/Off** and press
- 3 Choose **On** and press

### Setting Auto Sync Frequency and Command

■ By default, when Auto Sync is activated, **Synchronize** starts at 4:00 AM every Sunday. To change Auto Sync frequency/command, follow these steps after completing the above steps.

- Set Frequency

Select **Set Frequency** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Every Month, Every Week or Every Day** ▶ Press ▶ Enter date/time/day of the week ▶ Press

- Set Sync Mode

Select **Set Sync Mode** ▶ Press ▶ Select a command ▶ Press

## Opening Log

View up to ten Backup/Restore/Synchronization records.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ *S!* Address Book ▶ View Log

- 1 Select a record and press
- 2 Press to return

## My Details

### Opening My Details

Confirm handset number (phone number on USIM Card).

Main Menu ▶ Phone

- 1 Select **My Details** and press
  - My Details are similar to Phone Book entries (P.4-8).
- 2 Press to exit

### Editing My Details

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ My Details

- 1 Press **Edit**
- 2 Select an item and press
  - For more, see the procedures for creating/editing Phone Book entries.

Note ▶ Phone number in **Tel 1**: cannot be changed.

### Clearing My Details

- Open My Details and press **Options** ▶ Select **Reset My Details** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press
- Phone number in **Tel 1**: remains.

# 5

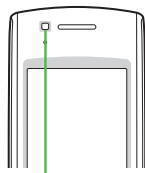
## Video Call

<b>Getting Started</b> .....	5-2
<b>Initiating a Video Call</b> .....	5-3
<b>Answering a Video Call</b> .....	5-3
<b>Engaged Video Call Operations</b> .....	5-4
<b>Video Call Settings</b> .....	5-5
<b>Remote Monitor</b> .....	5-6
■ <b>Activating Remote Monitor</b> .....	5-6
■ <b>Adding to Auto Answer List</b> .....	5-6

# Getting Started

Communicate with another party using live video images.

- Use Video Call with compatible handsets only.
- Use Internal Camera to send your own image.
- Use External Camera to send higher quality images.



Internal Camera

## Window Description



Incoming Image<sup>1</sup>

Outgoing Image<sup>1</sup>

Other Party's Number<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Change incoming/outgoing image size/position (P.5-4 "Switch Images").

<sup>2</sup>Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

## Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.
- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise. Use Headphones to reduce noise.
- Handset temperature may rise during Video Calls; this is normal.
- Use AC Charger during Video Call to avoid battery exhaustion.
- Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: P.9-15)
- When initiating Video Calls with Loudspeaker active, Earpiece Volume is automatically lowered to Level 2 or softer to protect hearing. Press ◀ or ▶ during a call to adjust volume. Earpiece Volume setting is not affected by volume adjustments made while using Loudspeaker (below).

### Loudspeaker

- Increasing Earpiece Volume for Loudspeaker (P.5-4, P.5-5) use may cause feedback/interference. Moderate volume or use Headphones.
- Loudspeaker is temporarily canceled when receiving Video Calls in Manner mode. To reactivate, set to **Loudspeaker On** during a call.



# Initiating a Video Call

## 1 Enter a phone number

- Alternatively, select a record from Call Log.

## 2 Press for 1+ seconds

When the call is answered, incoming image appears.

- Incoming image may appear small depending on the other party's handset. Incoming image may not appear depending on handset settings. (Video Call charges apply.)

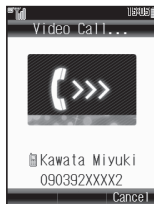
For operations during a Video Call, see P.5-4.

## 3 Press to end call

- Alternatively, close Slider to end call.

Close To: P.9-26


**Tip** ▶ Select **Video Call** in Options menu of Phone Book, etc. to initiate a Video Call.



# Answering a Video Call

## 1 When a call arrives, press **Answer**

- Available regardless of Slider position.

To reject the call, press  **Options** →

Select **Reject** → Press 

To redirect the call, press  **Fwd**.

To place the caller on hold, press 

- Callers placed on hold receive Hold Guidance Picture; Microphone is muted.

Open To Answer: P.9-25

## 2 Choose **Yes** and press

- Internal Camera image is sent.

To answer with voice only, choose **No** → Press 

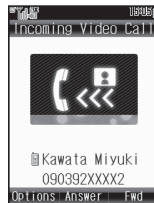
- Video Call charges apply.

For operations during a Video Call, see P.5-4.

## 3 Press to end call

- Alternatively, close Slider to end call.

Close To: P.9-26



# Engaged Video Call Operations

<b>Camera Picture</b> Default Internal Camera	<p>Toggle outgoing image between Internal Camera image, External Camera image and Alternative Image</p> <p><b>Use</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change Alternative Image, see P.5-5 "Camera Picture."</li> </ul>
<b>Switch Images</b>	<p>Toggle incoming/outgoing image view</p> <p><b>Press</b> </p>
<b>Loudspeaker</b>	<p>Cancel or activate Loudspeaker</p> <p><b>Press</b> <b>Options</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Loudspeaker Off or Loudspeaker On</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> </p>
<b>Hold</b>	<p>Pause live voice/image transmissions</p> <p><b>Press</b> <b>Options</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Hold</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hold Guidance Picture is sent.</li> </ul>
<b>Mirror Image</b>	<p>Activate or cancel reversed Internal Camera image</p> <p><b>Press</b> <b>Options</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Settings</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Mirror Image</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Choose On or Off</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mirror Image is <b>On</b> when initiating Video Calls.</li> </ul>
<b>Exposure</b>	<p>Adjust outgoing image brightness</p> <p><b>Press</b> <b>Options</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Settings</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Exposure</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Use</b> <b>to adjust level</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alternative Image appearance is fixed.</li> <li>Exposure is <b>Level 0</b> when initiating Video Calls.</li> </ul>

<b>Anti-flicker*</b> Default Mode 2: 60Hz	<p>Change the setting when stripes appear on Display under fluorescent lights</p> <p><b>Press</b> <b>Options</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Settings</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Anti-flicker</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Mode 1: 50Hz or Mode 2: 60Hz</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> </p>
<b>Enable/Disable DTMF</b>	<p>Select whether to send Touch Tones during a call</p> <p><b>Press</b> <b>Options</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Enable DTMF or Disable DTMF</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Enable DTMF</b> is set when initiating Video Calls.</li> </ul>
<b>Help</b>	<p>See key assignments</p> <p><b>Press</b> <b>Options</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Help</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> </p> <p> Press  to return.</p>

\* Available for External Camera.

## Other Engaged Call Operations

<b>Digital Zoom</b>	<p>Press  (zoom in) or  (zoom out)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not available for Alternative Image.</li> </ul>
<b>Auto Focus*</b>	<p>Press </p>
<b>Settings</b>	<p><b>Press</b> <b>Options</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Select Settings</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> <b>Press</b> <math>\Rightarrow</math> See P.5-5</p>
<b>Earpiece Volume</b>	P.2-10 "Earpiece Volume"
<b>Mute</b>	P.2-10 "Mute"
<b>Phone Book</b>	P.2-11 "Other Engaged Call Operations"
<b>Manner Mode</b>	P.2-18 "Activating/Canceling Manner Mode"
<b>Transfer Audio</b>	P.10-9 "Switching Sound Output"

\* Available for External Camera.

# Video Call Settings

- Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call

- These settings can also be changed during calls.

<p><b>Camera Picture</b> Default: Internal Camera</p>	<p>Outgoing image is either live video via Internal Camera or Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls</p> <p>Select <b>Camera Picture</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <b>Default Image</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <b>Internal Camera or Alternative Image</b> ▶ Press [OK]</p> <p>■ To change Alternative Image, select <b>Alternative Image</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <b>Preset Picture or Pictures</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select an image ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Press [OK]</p> <p>■ To use Custom Screen image, select <b>Alternative Image</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <b>Custom Screen</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Press [OK]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>External Camera image is selectable during a call.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Incoming Picture/Outgoing Picture</b> Default: Normal</p>	<p>Select quality of incoming/outgoing images</p> <p>Select <b>Incoming Picture or Outgoing Picture</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select quality ▶ Press [OK]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>Quality Prior</b> for higher quality and <b>Frame Rate Prior</b> for faster frame rate.</li> <li>Outgoing Picture setting may automatically change during calls depending on the other party's setting.</li> </ul>

<p><b>Hold Guidance Pict</b> Default: Picture 1</p>	<p>Select image that can be sent while calls are on hold</p> <p><b>Preset Picture/Data Folder Images</b> Select <b>Hold Guidance Pict</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <b>Preset Picture or Pictures</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select an image ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Press [OK]</p> <p><b>Custom Screens</b> Select <b>Hold Guidance Pict</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <b>Custom Screen</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Press [OK]</p>
<p><b>Backlight</b> Default: Always On</p>	<p>Select a Backlight status for Video Calls</p> <p>Select <b>Backlight</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select a pattern ▶ Press [OK]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selecting <b>Normal Setting</b> applies Display Backlight setting (P.9-12).</li> </ul>
<p><b>Loudspeaker</b> Default: On</p>	<p>Activate or cancel Loudspeaker for Video Calls</p> <p>Select <b>Loudspeaker</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose <b>On or Off</b> ▶ Press [OK]</p>
<p><b>Mute Microphone</b> Default: Off</p>	<p>Mute Microphone for Video Calls</p> <p>Select <b>Mute Microphone</b> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose <b>On (mute) or Off</b> ▶ Press [OK]</p>

## Remote Monitor

When active, handset automatically connects Video Calls from numbers saved in Answer List.

- A tone sounds from Speaker for calls answered via Remote Monitor. (Tone and volume are fixed.)
- Internal Camera image is sent regardless of Camera Picture settings (P.5-5). Switch to Alternative Image during the call.
- Remote Monitor is effective with Slider open.

### Activating Remote Monitor

Remote Monitor is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Remote Monitor

#### 1 Enter Handset Code and press

To change ring time (00 seconds by default), select **Answer Time** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter time ▶ Press

#### 2 Select **Switch On/Off** and press

#### 3 Choose **On** and press

To cancel Remote Monitor, choose **Off** ▶ Press  (Omit the next step.)

#### 4 Press

### Adding to Auto Answer List

Save up to ten numbers.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Remote Monitor

#### 1 Enter Handset Code and press

#### 2 Select **Auto Answer List** and press

To edit numbers, select an entry ▶ Press  ▶ Edit the number ▶ Press  (Omit the next steps.)

To delete numbers, select an entry ▶ Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press  ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press  (Omit the next steps.)

#### 3 **Direct Entry**

##### 1 Select **<empty>** and press

**From Phone Book or Call Log**

##### 1 Select **<empty>** and press **Options**

##### 2 Select **Change** and press

##### 3 Select **From Phone Book** or **From Call Log** and press

#### 4 Enter or select a number and press

# 6

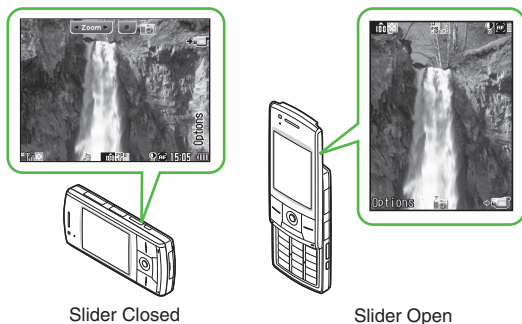
## Camera

<b>Getting Started</b> .....	<b>6-2</b>	<b>Special Shooting Modes</b> .....	<b>6-10</b>
■ Mobile Camera Basics .....	6-2	■ Self-timer.....	6-10
■ Key Assignments.....	6-3	■ Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera).....	6-11
■ Adjusting Focus.....	6-4	■ Camera Effects (Photo Camera).....	6-12
■ Photo Camera Mode .....	6-5	■ Adding Frames (Photo Camera) .....	6-12
■ Video Camera Mode .....	6-6	■ Panorama Picture (Photo Camera).....	6-13
<b>Capturing Still Images</b> .....	<b>6-7</b>	<b>Sending Images</b> .....	<b>6-14</b>
■ Still Image Functions .....	6-7	■ Still Images .....	6-14
<b>Recording Video</b> .....	<b>6-8</b>	■ Video Clips.....	6-14
■ Video Recording Operations .....	6-9	<b>Camera Settings</b> .....	<b>6-15</b>
<b>Opening Images &amp; Playing Video</b> .....	<b>6-9</b>	■ Shooting Options .....	6-15
		■ Image Settings .....	6-16
		■ Additional Settings .....	6-17

# Getting Started

816SH features a 2 Megapixel CCD camera. Capture still images or record video.

Image/video orientation depends on Slider position.



- Tip ▶**
- Slider is open in most operation descriptions/screenshots.
  - Use Internal Camera or External Camera; unless noted otherwise, operations describe External Camera.

## Opening/Closing Slider while Using Camera

Image preview orientation changes with Slider position.

- May not be available in some windows.
- Closing Slider does not activate Keypad Lock.

## Shutter Click

- Shutter click volume is fixed, and sounds even in Manner mode.
- To change shutter click sound for still images, see **P.6-15**.
- Camera motor may be audible when Auto Focus is in use or when canceling mobile camera.

## Mobile Camera Basics

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a soft cloth before use.
- Handset movement may blur images; hold handset firmly or place it on a stable surface and use Self-timer (**P.6-10**).
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's color filter.

### Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture, mobile camera shuts down after three minutes of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

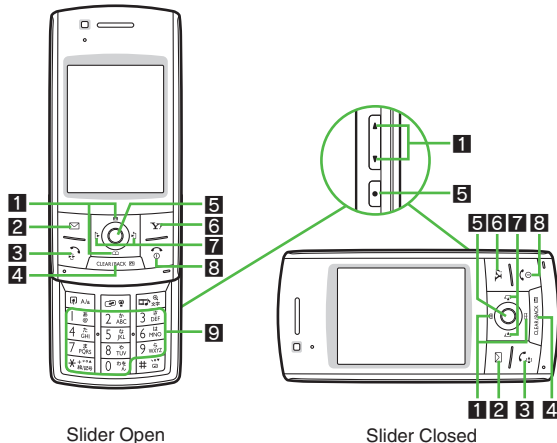
### Internal Camera Images

- Your image appears on Display as a mirror image before/after shutter is released; saved image appears reversed.

## Precautions for Video Recording

- When battery is low, Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low while recording video, recording stops. (Recorded video is saved.)

## Key Assignments



Slider Open

Slider Closed

### 1 Digital Zoom

Press (zoom in) or (zoom out).

- Alternatively, use (zoom in) and (zoom out).

### 2 Options

### 3 Focus Lock

### 4 Cancel

### 5 Shutter

### 6 Toggle Mode

### 7 Exposure

(darker), (brighter)

### 8 Exit

### 9 Function Shortcuts

Activate mobile camera and press the following keys to use the corresponding functions.

	Show Exposure slider (P.6-16)
	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (P.6-15 "Display Indicators")
	Toggle Viewfinder size (P.6-15 "Display Size")
	Toggle between Auto Focus, Manual Focus and Macro (P.6-15 "Focus Setting")
	Switch save location (P.6-17 "Save to")
	Change image size (P.6-16 "Picture Size" or "Record Time/Size")
	Scan barcodes (P.12-22)
	Turn Microphone on/off for video recording (P.6-16)
	Change image quality (P.6-16)
	Toggle Self-timer mode (P.6-10)
	Maximize or cancel Digital Zoom
	Open Help (below)
	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (P.6-17 "Internal Camera/External Camera")

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode. For details, see P.6-7 "Still Image Functions" and P.6-9 "Video Recording Operations."

## Help



- In Camera, follow these steps to see key assignments.

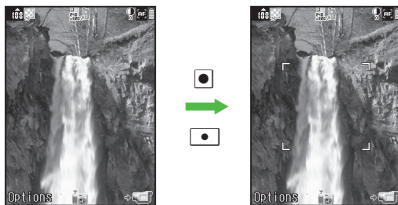
Press **Options** ➔ **Select Help** ➔ Press

- Press to return.

## Adjusting Focus

### Auto Focus

Mobile camera **Auto Focus (AF)** measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus. Focus adjusts automatically when you press  or  for image capture.










Auto Focus

Switch to **Macro** depending on subject and environment. Alternatively, adjust focus manually for more flexibility (P.6-15).

### Focus Lock



Lock focus then recompose and capture image.








<b>Activate Focus Lock</b>	Press  or half press  and hold
<b>Focus Lock Active</b>	A white frame appears and focus adjusts. When in focus, frame turns green and a double beep sounds.
<b>Image Capture</b>	Press  or press  fully

- Once focus locks, image is captured immediately after shutter is released.
- To cancel Focus Lock, press  again, release  (Photo Camera), or half press  again (Video Camera).

### Manual Focus

Adjust focus manually to capture out-of-focus images, etc.

- Activate Manual Focus mode beforehand (P.6-15).
- To start over, before image capture, press  or half press  again and follow these steps.

<b>Adjust Focus</b>	Use  ,  or 
<b>Lock Focus</b>	Press  or half press  and hold
<b>Image Capture</b>	Press  or press  fully



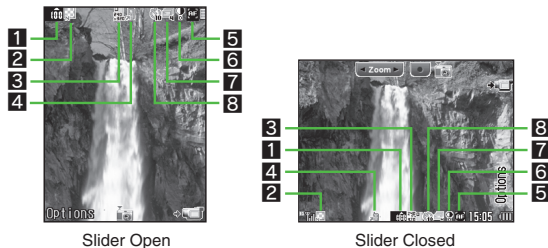
## Photo Camera Mode

<b>Picture Size &amp; Digital Zoom</b>	2M (1200 x 1600 dots: UXGA) : None Wide (900 x 1600 dots) : None 1.2M (960 x 1280 dots: Quad-VGA): 1 - 1.3x VGA (480 x 640 dots: VGA) : 1 - 2.5x Mail L (240 x 320 dots: QVGA) : 1 - 5x Mail S (120 x 160 dots: QQVGA) : 1 - 10x
<b>Format</b>	JPEG (.jpg) <sup>1</sup>
<b>Save Location</b>	Handset or Memory Card Data Folder [Pictures or DCIM (P.6-17 "Save to")]
<b>Picture Quality</b>	High Quality/Fine/Normal
<b>S! Mail Attachment</b>	OK
<b>Memory Capacity<sup>2</sup></b>	3,200 files

<sup>1</sup>Default file names appear as *Image001.jpg*, *Image002.jpg*, etc. (*SBSH0001.JPG*, *SBSH0002.JPG*, etc. in DCIM folder).

<sup>2</sup>Approximate value for images captured with default settings.

## Display Indicators



### 1 Capacity (left)

- 100: 101 or more

### 2 Picture Quality (P.6-16)

- ☑: High Quality, ☑: Fine, ☑: Normal

### 3 Picture Size (P.6-16)

### 4 Save to (P.6-17)

- ☑: Handset, ☑: Memory Card
- ☑: Memory Card (DCIM), ☑: Ask Each Time

### 5 Focus (P.6-15)

- ☑: Auto Focus, ☑: Manual Focus, ☑: Macro

### 6 Exposure (P.6-16)



Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright

### 7 Continuous Shoot (P.6-11)

- ☑: 4 Pictures, ☑: 9 Pictures, ☑: Overlapped

### 8 Self-timer (P.6-10)

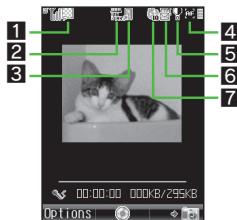
- ☑: 10 seconds, ☑: 5 seconds, ☑: 2 seconds

## Video Camera Mode

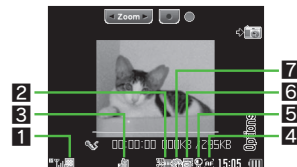
Image Size	176 x 144 dots (QCIF)	320 x 240 dots (QVGA)	
	128 x 96 dots (SubQCIF)	240 x 176 dots (HQVGA) <sup>1</sup>	
Format	MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp) <sup>2</sup>	MPEG-4 (.3gp) <sup>2</sup>	MPEG-4 (.ASF) <sup>3</sup>
Save Location	Handset or Memory Card Data Folder (Videos)		Memory Card (SD VIDEO)
Video Quality	High Quality/Fine/Normal		Normal (handset) High Quality (Memory Card)
S! Mail Attachment	OK		N/A
Recording Time (per shot)	For Message	Approx. 60 seconds (Normal) Approx. 50 seconds (Fine) Approx. 30 seconds (High Quality)	—
	Extended Video	30 minutes on Memory Card <sup>4</sup>	
	SD VIDEO	—	Capacity-based

<sup>1</sup>MPEG-4 (.3gp) only.<sup>2</sup>Default file names appear as **video001.3gp**, **video002.3gp**, etc.<sup>3</sup>Default file names appear as **MOL001.ASF**, **MOL002.ASF**, etc.<sup>4</sup>Varies by selected image size when saving to handset.

## Display Indicators



Slider Open



Slider Closed

**1 Video Quality (P.6-16)**

: High Quality, 
 : Fine, 
 : Normal

**2 Record Size (P.6-16)****3 Save to (P.6-17)**

: Handset, 
 : Memory Card, 
 : Ask Each Time

**4 Focus (P.6-15)**

: Auto Focus, 
 : Manual Focus, 
 : Macro

**5 Exposure (P.6-16)**

Dark ← Standard → Bright

**6 Record Time (P.6-16)**

: For Message, 
 : Extended Video, 
 : SD VIDEO

**7 Self-timer (P.6-10)**

: 10 seconds, 
 : 5 seconds, 
 : 2 seconds

# Capturing Still Images

Main Menu ▶ Camera

## 1 Frame image on Display

## 2 Press

Shutter clicks and the captured image appears on Display.

■ To start over, press .




■ To send image via S! Mail, press    
 ▶ Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4



Photo Camera

## 3 Press to save


Image is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press .

■ To open saved images, see P.6-9.

## 4 Press to exit

### When Captured Image is Unsaved


■ If  is pressed without returning to Viewfinder, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt.

### Incoming Calls/Alarm after Capturing Images


■ Captured image is temporarily saved.  
 • End the call or close Alarm Time notice to return.

**Tip** ▶ When Auto Save is active, each captured image is saved and Viewfinder returns.

## Still Image Functions

Before image capture, press  **Options** to use the following functions. Available options vary by selected Picture Size or camera type (Internal/External).

<b>Exposure</b>	Adjust image brightness (P.6-16)	
<b>Modes</b>	<b>Add Frame</b>	Add frames (P.6-12)
	<b>Continuous Shoot</b>	Capture images sequentially (P.6-11)
	<b>Camera Effects</b>	Capture images with special effects (P.6-12)
	<b>Panorama Picture</b>	Capture panoramic images (P.6-13)
<b>Focus Setting</b>	Select <b>Auto Focus</b> , <b>Manual Focus</b> or <b>Macro</b> (P.6-15)	
<b>Data Folder</b>	Access Data Folder files (P.6-9)	
<b>Picture Size</b>	Select image size (P.6-16)	
<b>Barcode/Scan</b>	Scan barcodes (P.12-22), business cards (P.12-28), etc.	
<b>Picture Quality</b>	Select <b>High Quality</b> , <b>Fine</b> or <b>Normal</b> (P.6-16)	
<b>Self-timer</b>	Set Self-timer (P.6-10)	
<b>Settings</b>	<b>Display Indicators</b>	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (P.6-15)
	<b>Shutter Sound</b>	Change shutter click sound (P.6-15)
	<b>Save Pictures to</b>	Select handset or Memory Card (P.6-17)
	<b>Auto Save</b>	Select whether to save captured image automatically (P.6-17)
	<b>Anti-flicker</b>	Adjust to reduce Display flicker (P.6-15)
<b>Panorama Settings</b>	Show/hide guides or adjust Brightness automatically (P.6-13)	
<b>Internal Camera/ External Camera</b>	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (P.6-17)	
<b>Help</b>	See key assignments (P.6-3)	

**Tip** ▶ Before saving captured images, press  **Options** to select a save location, or delete Data Folder files to free memory.

# Recording Video

For best results, record within 1.5 meters, in good light.

Main Menu ► Camera

## 1 Press ( + )

Video Viewfinder appears.

- Omit this step if Video Camera is already active.

## 2 Frame image on Display

## 3 Press

Recording begins after a tone.

- To start over, press .

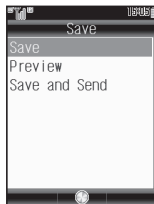


Video Camera

## 4 To stop, press

Recording stops with a tone.

- To play back, select **Preview** ► Press .
- To start over, press .
- To send image via S! Mail, select **Save and Send** ► Press ► Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4



## 5 To save, select **Save and send**

Image is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ► Press .

## 6 Press to exit

### When Recorded Video is Unsaved


- If is pressed without returning to Viewfinder, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt.

### Incoming Calls/Alarm while Recording Video

- If a call or Alarm Time arrives before recorded video is saved, captured clip is temporarily saved.
  - End the call or close Alarm Time notice to return.
- If Alarm Time arrives while recording, Alarm sounds/vibrates after a period of post-image capture inactivity or exiting mobile camera.

**Tip** ► When Auto Save is active, each recorded clip is saved and Viewfinder returns.

## Video Recording Operations

Before recording, press  **Options** to use the following functions. Available options vary by selected Record Time/Size or camera type (Internal/External).

<b>Exposure</b>	Adjust image brightness (P.6-16)
<b>Display Size</b>	Change Viewfinder size (P.6-15)
<b>Focus Setting</b>	Select <b>Auto Focus</b> , <b>Manual Focus</b> or <b>Macro</b> (P.6-15)
<b>Data Folder</b>	Access Data Folder files (right)
<b>Record Time/Size</b>	Select a format based on recording time and image size (P.6-16)
<b>Microphone</b>	Activate to record sound (P.6-16)
<b>Video Quality</b>	Select <b>High Quality</b> , <b>Fine</b> or <b>Normal</b> (P.6-16)
<b>Self-timer</b>	Set Self-timer (P.6-10)
<b>Settings</b>	<b>Save Videos to</b> Select handset or Memory Card (P.6-17)
	<b>Auto Save</b> Select whether to save recorded video automatically (P.6-17)
	<b>Video Encode</b> Select a video encoding format (P.6-16)
	<b>Anti-flicker</b> Adjust to reduce Display flicker (P.6-15)
<b>Internal Camera/ External Camera</b>	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (P.6-17)
<b>Help</b>	See key assignments (P.6-3)

**Tip** ▶ Save menu opens after recording; save or play recorded clip or attach it to S! Mail.

## Opening Images & Playing Video

To open files directly from Data Folder, see P.8-3.

Main Menu ▶ Camera

### 1 Opening Still Images

1 In Photo Camera mode, press  **Options**

#### Playing Video



1 In Video Camera mode, press  **Options**




### 2 Select Data Folder and press



File list appears.

- Memory Status appears at the top.

- File list appears vertically regardless of Slider position.

 To open still images with Memory Card inserted, select **Pictures** or **DCIM** ▶ Press 

 To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  **Options**  
▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ▶ Press 

 To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it  
▶ Press 

### 3 Select a file and press

 To open other files, press  ▶ Select one ▶ Press 

- Playback starts after opening video files.

SD VIDEO Play QVGA size (.ASF) video

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Videos ▶ SD VIDEO

Select a file ▶ Press 

 To open other files, press  ▶ Select one ▶ Press 

# Special Shooting Modes

## Self-timer

Delay shutter release after Shutter Key is pressed to capture still images or record video.



- Available for External Camera.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on **P.6-7**) or recording video (after Step 2 on **P.6-8**).
- Self-timer is **Off** by default.

**1** Press  **Options**

**2** Select **Self-timer** and press 

**3** Select time and press 



Viewfinder returns (, , or  appears).

 To cancel, choose **Off** → Press 

**4** Frame image on Display and press 

Tone sounds and countdown starts.

- After selected time elapses, shutter is released and captured image appears or video recording starts.



 To cancel Self-timer during countdown, press  **Cancel**.

- Viewfinder returns. (Self-timer remains active.)

**5** Press  to save image or stop recording

- Still image is saved and Viewfinder returns. Self-timer is canceled.


 To save video, select **Save** → Press 

 When confirmation for save location appears, select a location → Press 


**6** Press  to exit

 When Captured Image/Recorded Video is Unsaved: **P.6-7, P.6-8**

### Self-timer Details

- To release shutter manually during countdown, press . Image is captured or video recording starts and Self-timer is canceled.
- Incoming calls and Alarm interrupt countdown. (Self-timer remains active.)
- Available functions during countdown are Digital Zoom and Exposure.

**Note** ▶ Self-timer is not available when shutter speed for Continuous Shoot (**P.6-11**) is **Manual**.

**Tip** ▶ Activate mobile camera and press  to toggle Self-timer as follows:

**10 seconds → 5 seconds → 2 seconds → Off**

## Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Capture a series of 4 or 9 separate images automatically with a single press of the Shutter Key. Select from three speed settings or choose the manual option to control the rate at which images are captured.

<b>4 Pictures</b>	Capture four separate images with Index Image
<b>9 Pictures</b>	Capture nine separate images with Index Image
<b>Overlapped</b>	Capture five images to create a composite image

- Switch to External Camera to use Continuous Shoot; depending on selected Picture Size, Continuous Shoot may not be available or Index Image may not be created.
- Available shutter speed options vary by selected Picture Size.
- In 4 Pictures or 9 Pictures mode, select shutter interval from three levels, or select **Manual** to release shutter manually.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-7).

**1** Press  **Options**

**2** Select **Modes** and press 

**3** Select **Continuous Shoot** and press 

**4** Select from **4 Pictures** to **Overlapped** and press 

**5** Select speed and press 



Viewfinder returns with corresponding indicator (P.6-5).

- **Manual** is not available when Self-timer (P.6-10) is active.

**6** Frame image on Display and press 



The first frame is captured with subsequent frames captured at selected speed.




- For manual control (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat Step 6 for each frame.

 To stop before capturing all frames, press  **Cancel**.

**7** Index Image or a composite image appears

- When Picture Size is **VGA (480x640)**, the first captured image appears.



 Use  to toggle between frames and Index Image.

 To send image via S! Mail, press  ()  
➔ Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4



4 Pictures


**8** To save, press 

 When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

**9** Select **All Pictures** and press 

Images are saved and Viewfinder returns with Continuous Shoot active.

**10** Press  to exit

 When Captured Image is Unsaved: P.6-7

### Saving the Selected Image

 In Step 7, use  to select an image ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Selected Picture** ➔ Press 








- Viewfinder returns. To save other images, repeat the steps above.

**Note** ➤ In low light, shutter speed may be slower.

## Camera Effects (Photo Camera)














Capture images with special effects.

- Switch to External Camera to use Camera Effects; depending on selected Picture Size, Camera Effects may not be available.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-7); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.

- 1** Press  **Options**
- 2** Select *Modes* and press 
- 3** Select *Camera Effects* and press 
- 4** Select an effect and press 
  - To check effects, press  **View**.
    - Press  to return.
  - To cancel, choose *Off* ➔ Press 

## Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

- In addition to Preset Frames, use transparent PNG files (40 KB or smaller) obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.
- Switch to External Camera to add frames; depending on selected Picture Size, frames may not be available.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-7); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.

- 1** Press  **Options**
- 2** Select *Modes* and press 
- 3** Select *Add Frame* and press 
- 4** *Preset Frames*
  - 1** Select *Preset Frames* and press 
  - 2** Select a frame and press 
    - To check frames, select one ➔ Press  **View**
      - Press  to return.
- Frames in Date Folder*
  - 1** Select *Data Folder* and press 
  - 2** Select a frame and press 
    - To check frames, select one ➔ Press  **View**
      - Press  to return.
  - 3** Press 
- Canceling*
  - 1** Choose *Off* and press 

**Tip** ► In Continuous Shoot, frame is added to each image.

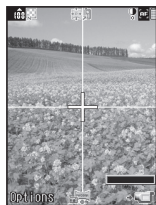


## Panorama Picture (Photo Camera)

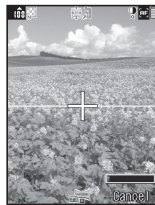
Capture panoramic images in portrait or landscape orientation.

- Switch to External Camera to use Panorama Picture.
- While Panorama Picture is active, other image capture modes are not available and Self-timer is disabled.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-7).

- 1 Press** **Options**
- 2 Select Modes** and press
- 3 Select Panorama Picture** and press
- 4 Choose On** and press
- 5 Capture an image**



Press



Move handset horizontally or vertically



Press   
(Captured)

To start over, press .

- Move handset slowly to keep aligned with either of yellow lines.
- Image is captured automatically when the bar () turns blue.

## 6 Select Save and press

- To check captured image, select **Preview** Press
  - To change preview method, press **Options** Select **Auto Scroll**, **Manual Scroll** or **Full Image** Press
- To send image via S! Mail, select **Save and Send** Press
  - Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4

## Panorama Settings

Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-7).

<b>Assisting Lines</b> Default On	Show or hide yellow lines and  during image capture Press <b>Options</b> <b>Select Settings</b> Press <b>Select Panorama Settings</b> Press <b>Select Assisting Lines</b> Press <b>Choose On or Off</b> Press
<b>AE-Lock</b> Default Disable	Select whether to lock Display Brightness during image capture Press <b>Options</b> <b>Select Settings</b> Press <b>Select Panorama Settings</b> Press <b>Select AE-Lock</b> Press <b>Select Disable (adjust automatically) or Enable</b> Press


## Sending Images

- To set pre-attachment save option for files newly captured with 816SH camera, see **P.14-34** "Send File Settings."
- To attach files in Data Folder, see **P.8-8**.
- Recipient's handset must be attachment-compatible. For service and model compatibilities, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

### Still Images


Capture and send images as S! Mail attachments.

#### 1 Capture an image

- Perform Steps 1 - 2 on **P.6-7**.
- To attach Continuous Shoot images, after Step 7 on **P.6-11**, use  to select a frame or Index Image.

#### 2 Press

Image is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with image attached.

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

#### 3 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-4)

### Video Clips

Send recorded video clips via S! Mail.

- For details of attachable files, see the table on **P.6-6**.
- Send video clips to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.

#### 1 Record video

- Perform Steps 1 - 4 on **P.6-8**.

#### 2 Select **Save and Send** and press

Video is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with the video file attached.

- If **Attach Only** is set for Send File Settings (**P.14-34**), **Multimedia** appears.
- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

#### 3 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-4)

# Camera Settings

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode.
- Shortcut keys are assigned to some functions (P.6-3 "Function Shortcuts").
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-7) or recording video (after Step 2 on P.6-8); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture/recording.

## Shooting Options

<b>Display Indicators</b>	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display		
Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Display Indicators** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Normal FINDER or Hide Indicators** ➔ Press

Default Normal FINDER

<b>Shutter Sound</b>	Change shutter click sound		
Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Shutter Sound** ➔ Press ➔ **Select a pattern** ➔ Press

Default Pattern 1

- To check sound, select a pattern ➔ Press **Play**
- Volume is fixed.
- Shutter click sounds for Continuous Shoot and Panorama Picture are unique and fixed.

<b>Display Size</b>	Change Viewfinder size for video		
Photo Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>

\*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.  
Default Standard

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Display Size** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Standard or Enlarge** ➔ Press

<b>Focus Setting</b>	Select auto or manual focus		
Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>

\*Available for External Camera.  
Default Auto Focus

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Focus Setting** ➔ Press ➔ **Select a mode** ➔ Press

- For **Manual Focus**, use to adjust focus ➔ Press
  - To start over, press to adjust focus ➔ Press
- Setting returns to default after exiting mobile camera.

<b>Auto Focus</b>	Distance between subjects and mobile camera is measured to adjust focus
<b>Manual Focus</b>	Adjust focus manually
<b>Macro</b>	Focus adjusts faster for close-up shots

<b>Anti-flicker</b>	Adjust to reduce Display flicker		
Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>

\*Available for External Camera.  
Default Mode 2: 60Hz

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Anti-flicker** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Mode 1: 50Hz or Mode 2: 60Hz** ➔ Press

## Image Settings

### Exposure

Adjust brightness for still images and video

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Default 0 (standard)

Press **Options** → Select **Exposure** → Press → Use to adjust level

- Exposure setting returns to default upon exiting Photo Camera/ Video Camera or switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (P.6-17).

### Picture Size

Select still image size

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	----------------------------------

Default Mail L (240 x 320)

Press **Options** → Select **Picture Size** → Press → Select a size (P.6-5) → Press

- Select **Mail L (240x320)** or **Mail S (120x160)** for Internal Camera.

### Picture/Video Quality

Select image or video quality

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-----------------------

\* Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default Normal (Photo Camera), Fine (Video Camera)

Press **Options** → Select **Picture Quality or Video Quality** → Press → Select quality → Press

- The image quality increases as follows: **Normal** → **Fine** → **High Quality**. Saving higher quality images/video requires more space in memory.

### Record Time/Size

Select **For Message** to record short video (up to 295 KB) to send via S! Mail  
For longer recording, select **Extended Video**

Photo Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	----------------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Default For Message, QCIF (176 x 144)

Press **Options** → Select **Record Time/Size** → Press → Select **For Message, Extended Video or SD VIDEO** → Press → Select a size → Press

- For SD VIDEO size, choose **Yes** → Press
- For more information, see the table on P.6-6.

### Microphone

Record sound together with video

Photo Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	----------------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Default On

Press **Options** → Select **Microphone** → Press → Choose **On or Off** → Press

### Video Encode

Select a video encoding format

Photo Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	----------------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

\* Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default MPEG4

Press **Options** → Select **Settings** → Press → Select **Video Encode** → Press → Select **H.263 or MPEG4** → Press

## Additional Settings

**Internal Camera/  
External Camera** Switch between Internal Camera and External Camera

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-----------------------

\* Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.  
Default External Camera

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Internal Camera or External Camera** ➔ Press

- Setting returns to default after exiting mobile camera.

**Save to** Select a save location for images or video

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-----------------------

\* Not available when Record Time/Size is set to **SD VIDEO**.  
Default Phone Memory

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Save Pictures to or Save Videos to** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Phone Memory** (handset Pictures or Videos folder), **Memory Card** (Memory Card Pictures or Videos folder), **SD(Pictures)** (Memory Card Pictures folder), **SD(DCIM)** (Memory Card DCIM folder) or **Ask Each Time** ➔ Press

- For **Ask Each Time**, confirmation appears each time you save an image or video (with Record Time/Size set to **For Message**).
- **Memory Card** appears for video and 240 x 320 or smaller still images. **SD(Pictures)** and **SD(DCIM)** appear for 640 x 480 or larger still images.

- Note** ➤
- **Ask Each Time** is not available when Auto Save (right) is active.
  - To save to Memory Card, insert a card before saving image or recording video.

**Auto Save** Select whether to save captured images or recorded video automatically

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press Default Off ➔ **Select Auto Save** ➔ Press ➔ **Choose On or Off** ➔ Press

- Note** ➤ Auto Save is not available when **Ask Each Time** is set for Save Pictures to or Save Videos to (left).

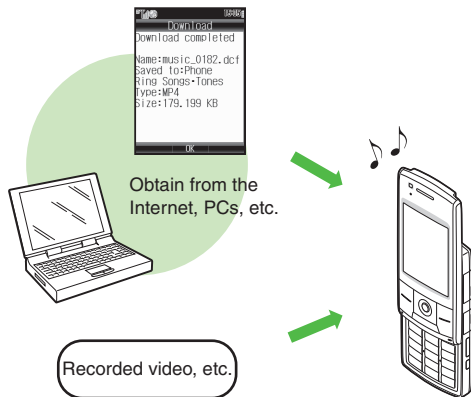
# 7

## Media Player

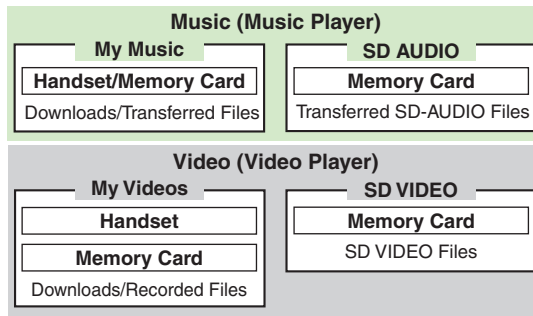
<b>Media Player Basics</b> .....	<b>7-2</b>	<b>Using Playlists</b> .....	<b>7-10</b>
<b>Obtaining Music/Video</b> .....	<b>7-3</b>	■ Accessing Playlists .....	7-10
■ Downloading Media Files .....	7-3	■ Starting Playback from a Playlist.....	7-10
■ Saving Music Files from PCs.....	7-3	■ Editing Playlists .....	7-11
<b>Playback Preparation</b> .....	<b>7-4</b>	<b>Editing Video</b> .....	<b>7-11</b>
■ Precautions .....	7-4	■ Cropping & Editing Video Clips.....	7-11
■ Playback Window Indicators.....	7-5	■ Adding Subtitles .....	7-12
<b>Playing Music/Video</b> .....	<b>7-6</b>		
■ Playing Music .....	7-6		
■ Playing Video.....	7-6		
■ Playback Operations .....	7-7		
■ Music Playback Settings.....	7-8		
■ Video Playback Settings.....	7-8		
■ Additional Playback Setting .....	7-9		
■ Additional Music/Video Operations .....	7-9		

# Media Player Basics

Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Music Player directly and save them on handset or Memory Card. Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.



Features & File Support:



For My Music and My Videos details, see **P.7-10** "Using Playlists."



# Obtaining Music/Video

Obtain media files from the Internet or PCs.

## Downloading Media Files

Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.

Main Menu ▶ Media Player

- 1 Select *Music* or *Videos* and press** 
- 2 Select *Download Music* or *Download Videos* and press** 

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Follow the links to download music/video.

### Music Search

- In Step 1 above, select *Music* ▶ Press  ▶ Select *Music Search* ▶ Press 

- Fill in fields or follow links to search for/download music.

## Saving Music Files from PCs

Save PC music files to Memory Card via Mass Storage (P.11-8).

- Insert 816SH-formatted Memory Card first (P.11-2 - 11-3).
- After Step 3 on P.11-8, save music to the following folders on Memory Card.
  - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music  
Music is saved to Data Folder (Music).
  - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones  
Music is saved to Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones).

## Supported File Formats

Handset supports AAC files (extension: .m4a, etc.) and Secure AAC files compliant with the SD-Audio standard.

### Handling AAC Files

- Use software such as iTunes to convert music to AAC format.
- iTunes is an example only. SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.

iTunes is a trademark of Apple Inc. registered in the United States and other countries.



## Supported Bit Rates & Sampling Frequencies

Bit Rate (kbps)	16 <sup>*1</sup> , 24, 32, 48, 64, 96 <sup>*2</sup> , 128 <sup>*2</sup>
Sampling Frequency (Hz)	16000, 22050, 24000, 32000, 44100, 48000

\*1 Monaural only.

\*2 Stereo only.

**Note** ▶ Titles and artist names for AAC files created using iTunes, etc. do not appear on handset.

## Music File Precautions

### Respect copyrights.

- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained music.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.

### Compatibility

Obtained files cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.

# Playback Preparation

## Precautions

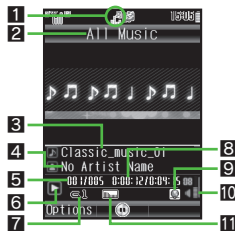
- Music/Video Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- When battery is low, Music/Video Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Music/Video Player shuts off.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.

### Tip

- To toggle Manner mode during playback, see **P.2-18**.
- In Manner mode, sound is audible from Headphones.
- When activated via Music menu, control Music Player functions via optional Remote/Mic.

## Playback Window Indicators

### Music Player



#### 1 Playback in Progress

#### 2 Playlist Name

#### 3 Title

#### 4 Artist Name

#### 5 Track Number

#### 6 Status

▶ : Playing

⏸ : Paused

⏩ : Fast Forwarding

⏮ : Fast Rewinding

#### 7 Playback Pattern\* (P.7-8)

↺ 1 : Repeat

↺ : Repeat All

⤵ : Random

↺ ⤵ : Random Repeat

#### 8 Elapsed Time

#### 9 Information Link

#### 10 Volume

#### 11 Sound Effects\* (P.7-8)

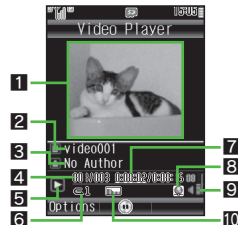
🔊 : Bass

⏮ : Surround

⏮ : Surround Bass

\*Indicator does not appear for **Normal**.

## Video Player



#### 1 Video Image/Subtitles

#### 2 Title

#### 3 Artist Name

#### 4 Clip Number

#### 5 Status

▶ : Playing

⏸ : Paused

⏩ : Advancing Frame

⏩ : Fast Forwarding

⏮ : Fast Rewinding

#### 6 Playback Pattern\* (P.7-8)

- See indicator descriptions for Music Player (left).

#### 7 Elapsed Time

#### 8 Information Link

#### 9 Volume

#### 10 Sound Effects\* (P.7-9)

- Indicators are the same as those for Music Player (left).


\*Indicator does not appear for **Normal**.


# Playing Music/Video

## Playing Music

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Music

### 1 Select *My Music* or *SD AUDIO* and press

For *My Music*, use  to select *Music Folder* or *Ring Songs-Tones*.

To play the last played file from where it stopped, select *Last Played Music* ▶ Press 

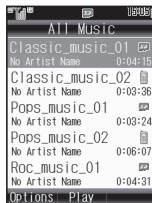
### 2 Select *All Music* and press

File list appears.

Starting Playback from a Playlist: P.7-10

### 3 Select a file and press

Playback window opens and playback starts.



File List  
(All Music)

**Note** ▶ Playback pauses for Alarm, then resumes automatically.

## Playing Video

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Videos

### 1 Select *My Videos* or *SD VIDEO* and press

For *SD VIDEO*, skip ahead to Step 4.

To play the last played file from where it stopped, select *Last Played Video* ▶ Press 

### 2 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* and press

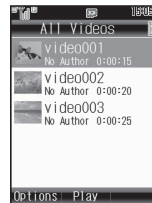
### 3 Select *All Videos* and press

File list appears.

Starting Playback from a Playlist: P.7-10


### 4 Select a file and press

Playback window opens and playback starts.



File List  
(All Videos)

### Video with Linked Information

After playing video, Internet connection confirmation appears.  
To access linked information, choose *Yes* ▶ Press 

**Note** ▶ Playback stops for Alarm.

**Tip** ▶ Video recorded on other devices may appear rotated.

## Playback Operations

### Basic Operations

Some operations may not be available depending on playback method/status.

<b>Replay</b>	Press . For multiple files, press to play previous ones. <sup>1</sup>
<b>Skip Forward</b>	Press .
<b>Fast Forward</b>	Press and hold . Release for playback.
<b>Fast Rewind</b>	Press and hold . Release for playback.
<b>Pause</b>	Press . Press again to resume playback. • To advance frames, press  for 1+ seconds while paused.
<b>Volume Control<sup>2</sup></b>	Press  (up) or  (down)
<b>Mute</b>	Press  (Long Press) Press  to play sound.
<b>Switch Sound Output (P.7-9)</b>	Press  (Long Press)
<b>Toggle Display Size</b>	Press  (P.7-8)
<b>Open Help</b>	Press

<sup>1</sup>In Random or Random Repeat Play, only replays the current file.

<sup>2</sup>Volume level remains as set until changed.

### Options Menu

In Playback window, press **Options** to use these features. Availability depends on playback method/status.

<b>Sound Effects</b>	P.7-8, P.7-9	<b>Settings</b>	P.7-8
<b>Playback Pattern</b>	P.7-8	<b>Access WEB Link</b>	Below
<b>Edit</b>	P.7-11	<b>Details</b>	P.7-9
<b>Time Search</b>	Below	<b>Help</b>	-

#### Time Search

■ Specify start point while playing or paused.

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Time Search** ➔ Press ➔ **Enter time** ➔ Press

#### Accessing Linked Information

■ While playing or paused, press **Options** ➔ **Select**

**Access WEB Link** ➔ Press ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ Press

- Accessing linked information activates Internet connection and may incur transmission fees.

## Music Playback Settings

### Sound Effects

Play back files in surround sound; increase bass or dynamic range

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Music ► Settings

Select **Sound Effects**  ► Press  ► Select an effect  
► Press 

<b>Normal</b>	No sound effects
<b>Bass</b>	Boosts bass frequencies
<b>Surround</b>	Adds surround effect
<b>Surround Bass</b>	Adds surround effect with enhanced bass

### Playback Pattern

Play all or Playlist files repeatedly or randomly

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Music ► Settings

Select **Playback Pattern** ► Press  ► Select a pattern  
► Press 

## Video Playback Settings

### Playback Pattern

Play all or Playlist files repeatedly or randomly

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► Settings

Select **Playback Pattern** ► Press  ► Select a pattern  
► Press 

- Available for My Videos files only.

### Backlight

Select a Backlight status for playback

Default Always On

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► Settings

Select **Backlight** ► Press  ► Select a pattern  
► Press 

<b>Always On</b>	Backlight remains on during playback
<b>Always Off</b>	Backlight remains off during playback
<b>Normal Settings</b>	Applies Display Backlight setting (P.9-12)



### Display Size

Change playback size

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► Settings

Select **Display Size** ► Press  ► Select **Normal, Enlarge or Full Screen** ► Press 

- Some Display sizes may not be selectable.
- Alternatively, press  during playback to toggle Display Size.
  - Press  in paused Full Screen view to show or hide indicators.

## Sound Effects

Play back files in surround sound; increase bass or dynamic range

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► Settings

Select **Sound Effects** ► Press **Enter** ► Select an effect ► Press **Enter**

- For descriptions of each effect, see P.7-8.

## Web Link Setting

Select whether to show linked information

Default On

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► Settings

Select **Web Link Setting** ► Press **Enter** ► Choose **On** or **Off** ► Press **Enter**

- Available for My Videos files only.

## Additional Playback Setting

### Sound Output

Select audio output device

- Pair with Bluetooth® wireless Headphones beforehand (P.10-8).

Default Phone/Earphone

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Setting

Select **Sound Output** ► Press **Enter** ► Select **Phone/Earphone** or **Bluetooth Device** ► Press **Enter**

**Note** ► Even if **Bluetooth Device** is selected, streaming sound is heard from Speaker or Headphones.

## Additional Music/Video Operations

- Open file list (P.7-6) and follow these steps.
- Some operations may not be available depending on the file/list.

Search	Press <b>Enter</b> <b>Options</b> ► Select <b>Search</b> ► Press <b>Enter</b> ► Enter search text ► Press <b>Enter</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.</li></ul>
Sort	Press <b>Enter</b> <b>Options</b> ► Select <b>Sort</b> ► Press <b>Enter</b> ► Select a sort option ► Press <b>Enter</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Sort</b> is available for All Music/All Videos files.</li></ul>
Download Content Keys	Select a file ► Press <b>Enter</b> ► Choose <b>Yes</b> ► Press <b>Enter</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.</li><li>• Select a file with <b>Key</b>.</li></ul>
Open Properties	Select a file ► Press <b>Enter</b> ► Press <b>Enter</b> <b>Options</b> ► Select <b>Details</b> ► Press <b>Enter</b>
Edit SD AUDIO Files	Press <b>Enter</b> <b>Options</b> ► Select <b>Edit</b> ► Press <b>Enter</b> ► Select <b>Title or Artist</b> ► Press <b>Enter</b> ► Enter title or name ► Press <b>Enter</b>
Delete SD AUDIO/SD VIDEO Files	Select a file ► Press <b>Enter</b> <b>Options</b> ► Select <b>Delete Track</b> or <b>Delete</b> ► Press <b>Enter</b> ► Choose <b>Yes</b> ► Press <b>Enter</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Source files will be deleted.</li><li>• Delete other files from Data Folder (P.8-6).</li></ul>

# Using Playlists

Playlists store only playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists; start playback by selecting a Playlist.

The following Playlists are saved by default.

All Music/All Videos	All files are saved
Playlist 1 (or プレイリスト 1)	
Playlist 2 (or プレイリスト 2)	No files are saved; add favorite files
Playlist 3 (or プレイリスト 3)	

## Accessing Playlists

### Music Playlists

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Music

- 1 Select **My Music** or **SD AUDIO** and press

Playlists appear.

- For **My Music**, use  to select **Music Folder** or **Ring Songs-Tones**.



My Music

### Video Playlists

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Videos

- 1 Select **My Videos** and press
- 2 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** and press  Playlists appear.

## Starting Playback from a Playlist

Access Playlists (left) and follow these steps.

- 1 Select a Playlist and press
- 2 Select a file and press  Playback starts.

## Editing Playlists

- Access Playlists (P.7-10) and follow these steps.
- Some operations may not be available depending on Playlist.

Add Files	Select <i>All Music</i> or <i>All Videos</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Select a file ➔ Press <b>[F4]</b> <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <i>Add to Playlist</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Select a Playlist ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b>
Change File Order	Select a Playlist ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Select a file ➔ Press <b>[F4]</b> <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <i>Change Order</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Use <b>[↓]</b> to move file ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b>
Delete Files	Select a Playlist ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Select a file ➔ Press <b>[F4]</b> <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <i>Delete</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b>
Add New Playlists	Press <b>[F4]</b> <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <i>Add New Playlist</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Enter name ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b>
Rename Playlists	Select a Playlist ➔ Press <b>[F4]</b> <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <i>Edit List Title</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Enter new name ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b>
Delete Playlists	Select a Playlist ➔ Press <b>[F4]</b> <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <i>Delete Playlist</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b>
Delete All SD AUDIO Files	Select <i>All Music</i> ➔ Press <b>[F4]</b> <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <i>Del. All Tracks</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press <b>[F2]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Source files will be deleted.</li> <li>• Delete other files from Data Folder (P.8-6).</li> </ul>

## Editing Video

HQVGA (240 x 176 dots) or larger video cannot be edited.

Crop	Select Two Points	Save portion between two points as a new file
	Delete Before	Save portion after selected point as a new file
	Delete After	Save portion before selected point as a new file
Edit Subtitle		Add subtitle text to video

- Note** ▶
- Some files may not be edited.
  - Edited video may not play properly if Memory Card is not formatted for 816SH.
  - To save to Memory Card, a maximum of 1.2 MB of free memory is required in addition to the file size.

## Cropping & Editing Video Clips

Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.7-6.

- 1** While playing or paused, press **[F4]** **Options**
- 2** Select *Edit* and press **[F2]**
- 3** Choose *Yes* and press **[F2]**
  - Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.




**4** Select *Crop* and press **5** *Clipping Portions between Two Points***1** Select *Select Two Points* and press 

Video plays.


- Press  to pause/start video.

**2** Press  **Start** at the start point


The start point is specified and playback resumes.



**3** Press  **End** at the end point

The portion is saved and playback starts.

*Cropping Video Clips***1** Select *Delete Before or Delete After* and press 

Video plays.

- To adjust start point, press  to start/pause video.
- The portion before or after the selected point will be deleted.

 To cancel, press .

**2** Press  **Cut** at approximate start point

The remaining portion is saved and playback starts.

**Note** ► Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

**Adding Subtitles**

Set subtitles to appear while playing video. Select timing, add effects, etc.

**Entering Text**


After entry, set timing and time period for subtitles.


- Save up to ten subtitles (48 single-byte alphanumerics each).
- Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.7-6.

**1** While playing or paused, press  **Options****2** Select *Edit* and press **3** Choose *Yes* and press 

- Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.


**4** Select *Edit Subtitle* and press **5** Select *<empty>* and press **6** Enter text and press 

- Press  to pause/play video.

**7** Press  **Start** at the start point

## 8 Press **End** at the end point

Edit Subtitle menu opens.

- If video has ended before pressing  **End**, start over from Step 7.











 To edit text, select **Edit Text**  Press   Edit text  Press 

## 9 Change display settings (right) and add effects (P.7-14)










- To complete without changing display settings or adding effects, proceed to Step 10.

## 10 After completing all the settings, press **OK**

- To add more, repeat Steps 5 - 10.

 To edit saved subtitles, select one  Press   Select **Edit Text**  Press   Edit  Press   Perform from Step 9

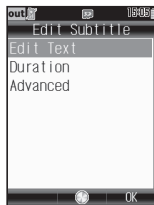
 To delete saved subtitles, select one  Press  **Options**  Select **Delete**  Press   Choose **Yes**  Press 

 To delete all saved subtitles, select one  Press  **Options**  Select **Delete All**  Press   Choose **Yes**  Press 

## 11 Press **Save**

## 12 Select **Overwrite** or **Create New** and press






































- Playback starts. (Subtitles appear only in Normal size.)
- Overwritten files are deleted from Playlists except All Videos.



Edit Subtitle Menu

## Display Settings

Follow these steps in Step 9 on the left. When finished, perform from Step 10 to complete.

<b>Duration</b>	Set timing and time period for subtitles <b>Select <i>Duration</i></b>  Press   Press  <b>Start</b> at the start point  Press  <b>End</b> at the end point
<b>Display Position</b>	Set position for subtitles to appear <b>Select <i>Advanced</i></b>  Press   Select <b>Display Position</b>  Press   Use  to select a position  Press   When finished, press  .
<b>Font Size</b> Default Large (20 x 20)	Change font size of subtitles <b>Select <i>Advanced</i></b>  Press   Select <b>Font Size</b>  Press   Select <b>Large(20x20)</b> or <b>Small(12x12)</b>  Press   When finished, press  .
<b>Background Colour</b> Default Black	Select from seven background colors <b>Select <i>Advanced</i></b>  Press   Select <b>Background Colour</b>  Press   Select a color  Press   When finished, press  .

## Scrolling

**Default:** Direction:  
Stop  
Effect:  
Frame In

Select a direction and visual effect for subtitle scroll

### Scroll Direction

Select **Advanced** → Press → Select **Scrolling** → Press → Select **Direction** → Press → Select **Stop, Left to Right or Right to Left** → Press

■ When finished, press → Press

### Scroll Effects

Select **Advanced** → Press → Select **Scrolling** → Press → Select **Effect** → Press → Select an effect → Press

#### • Effects:

##### ■ Frame In

Subtitle comes in from an end, then disappears in the center

##### ■ Frame Out

Subtitle appears in the center and scrolls out

##### ■ Rolling

Subtitle scrolls from end to end

■ When finished, press → Press

### On-Screen Time

Select **Advanced** → Press → Select **Scrolling** → Press → Select **On-Screen Time** → Press → Enter time → Press

■ When finished, press → Press

## Adding Text Effects

- Up to two effects can be applied per entry.
- Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.7-13. When finished, perform from Step 10 to complete.

## Font Colour

**Default:** White

Change font colors

### Changing All Text Color

Select **Advanced** → Press → Select **Font Colour** → Press → Select **All** → Press → Select a color → Press

■ When finished, press .

### Changing Selected Text Color

Select **Advanced** → Press → Select **Font Colour** → Press → Select **Select Text** → Press → Use to select the first character of text → Press → Use to select the end point → Press → Select a color → Press

■ When finished, press .

## Highlight

**Default:** White

Highlight subtitles

Select **Advanced** → Press → Select **Highlight** → Press → Use to select the first character of text → Press → Use to select the end point → Press → Select a color → Press

■ When finished, press .

## Blink

Set subtitles to flash

Select **Advanced** → Press → Select **Blink** → Press → Use to select the first character of text → Press → Use to select the end point → Press

■ When finished, press .

## Reset

Reset Advanced subtitle settings

Select **Advanced** → Press → Press **Reset** → Choose **Yes** → Press

- Reset does not affect Duration setting.

# 8

## Managing Files (Data Folder)

<b>Data Folder</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>
■ Opening Data Folder .....	8-2
<b>Opening Files</b> .....	<b>8-3</b>
<b>Managing Files &amp; Folders</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>
■ Sorting Files .....	8-5
■ Adding Folders .....	8-5
■ Changing File/Folder Name .....	8-6
■ Deleting Files & Folders .....	8-6
■ Copying/Moving Files .....	8-7
<b>Using Files</b> .....	<b>8-7</b>
■ Wallpaper .....	8-7
■ Saving to Phone Book .....	8-8
■ Ringvideo & Ringtone .....	8-8
■ S! Mail Attachments .....	8-8
■ Printing Images .....	8-9
<b>Editing Still Images</b> .....	<b>8-9</b>
■ Picture Editor/Composite Options .....	8-9
■ Opening Picture Editor/Composite Window .....	8-10
■ Changing Image Size .....	8-10
■ Visual Effects (Retouch) .....	8-11
■ Adding Text & Stamps .....	8-11
■ Face Arrange .....	8-12
■ Other Picture Effects .....	8-13
■ Panorama Images .....	8-13
■ Split Picture .....	8-14

# Data Folder


Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

## Opening Data Folder

**1** Press 

**2** Select **Data Folder** and press 

Data Folder opens.

- To open file list (P.8-3), select a folder and press .



Data Folder

### Memory Status

- To check memory usage status, open Data Folder and follow these steps.

**Select Memory Status** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Phone Memory or Memory Card** ➔ Press 

- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.

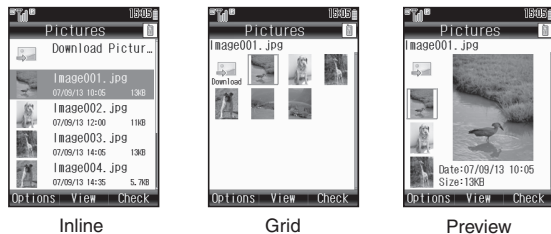
## ■ Preset Folders

	Contents
<b>Pictures*</b>	Still images
<b>DCIM</b>	Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to <b>SD(DCIM)</b> )
<b>My Pictograms*</b>	Downloaded Pictograms
<b>Ring Songs+Tones*</b>	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
<b>S! Appli*</b>	S! Applications (P.16-2)
<b>Music*</b>	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
<b>Videos*</b>	Video images
<b>Books*</b>	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
<b>Custom Screens*</b>	Custom Screens (P.9-9)
<b>Flash®</b>	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
<b>Flash®Ringtones</b>	Downloaded Flash® ringtones
<b>Other Documents</b>	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

\* Access the corresponding Yahoo! Keitai Menu directly.

## Switching File List View

- Not available for S! Appli folder.



- Preview is available for Pictures and DCIM folders.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

**1** Select a folder and press

**2** Press

Each press switches the view.

## Opening Files

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

**1** Select a folder and press

File list appears.

To switch between handset and Memory Card, press **Options** ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ▶ Press

To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press

To open properties, select a file ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Details** ▶ Press

To activate mobile camera, press **Options** ▶ Select **Take Picture** or **Record Video** ▶ Press   
 ■ Available for Pictures, DCIM and Videos folders.



File List  
(Pictures)

**2** Select a file and press

The content plays or appears.

To switch view, press ▶ Select **Switch Display** ▶ Press   
 ▶ Select an option ▶ Press

To change image quality, press ▶ Select **Image Quality** ▶ Press ▶ Select quality ▶ Press

To select whether to scroll images automatically, press ▶ Select **Switch Autscroll** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press

**3** Press to return to file list

- From file list, press to return to Data Folder.

**Note** ▶ When activated via Data Folder, Music Player cannot be controlled via optional Remote/Mic.

## SVG Files

Handset supports Scalable Vector Graphics-Tiny (SVG-T); open files from Other Documents folder to view graphics such as tables or maps.

Key Assignments (may differ by file):

Line Scroll	
Page Scroll	(Up),  (Left),  (Right),  (Down)
Zoom	(Zoom In),  (Zoom Out)
Rotate	(Counterclockwise),  (Clockwise)
Key Action Mode	
Set Default	

- Tip** ▶
- To create SVG files via PC, use PC Document Conversion Utility on Utility Software CD-ROM.
  - For more information on SVG-T, visit [http://j.sst.ne.jp/svg/index\\_pdc.html](http://j.sst.ne.jp/svg/index_pdc.html) from handset (Japanese).

## Selecting Multiple Files

Select multiple files in a folder to move, copy or delete them all at the same time.

- Not available for S! Appli folder.
- Follow these steps after Step 1 in "Opening Files" on P.8-3.

### 1 Select a file and press **Check**

appears.

To uncheck, select a file with  ▶ Press **Uncheck**

### 2 Repeat Step 1 to select more

## Slide Show

All images in Pictures or DCIM folder appear sequentially.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

### 1 Select **Pictures** or **DCIM** and press

- To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it  
▶ Press

### 2 Select a file and press **Options**

### 3 Select **Slide Show** and press

Slide Show starts.

- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press or to advance or reverse frames.

### 4 Press to stop

#### Setting Interval

- Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press **Set** ▶ **Select Speed** ▶ Press ▶  
**Select Fast, Normal, Slow or Manual** ▶ Press

- Speed is **Normal** by default.

#### Repeat Slide Show

- Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press **Set** ▶ **Select Repeat** ▶ Press ▶  
**Choose On or Off** ▶ Press

- For **Off**, all images in the folder appear then file list returns.
- Repeat is **On** by default.

# Managing Files & Folders

## Sorting Files

Sort files by name, date, size, etc.

Not available for S! Appli folder.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

### 1 Select a folder and press

To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it  
▶ Press

### 2 Press Options

### 3 Select *Manage Items* and press

### 4 Select *Sort* and press

### 5 Select a method and press

Tip ▶ To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.

## Adding Folders

- Assign different names to folders within a layer.
- Not available for DCIM or S! Appli folder.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

### 1 Select a folder and press

### 2 Press Options

### 3 Select *Manage Items* and press

### 4 Select *Create Folder* and press

### 5 Enter name and press

#### Hide Folders

■ After Step 1 above, select a folder ▶ Press Options ▶  
Select *Set Secret* ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶  
Press

• Not available when Multi Job is active.

• Only handset folders can be hidden.

■ For temporary access to Secret folders, press Options  
▶ Select *Unlock Temporarily* ▶ Press ▶ Enter  
Handset Code ▶ Press

#### Cancel Secret

■ Activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23) and follow these steps.






After Step 1 above, select a folder ▶ Press Options  
▶ Select *Unset Secret* ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset  
Code ▶ Press



## Changing File/Folder Name

- File extensions do not change.
- Assign different names to files/folders within a layer.
  - Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ,, <, >, |, ?, # and " are not supported.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Renaming files (or the folders) used for ringtone, ringvideo, etc. cancels corresponding setting.
- Not available for DCIM or S! Appli folder.

Main Menu ► Data Folder


- 1 Select a folder and press 
- 2 Select a file or folder and press  Options
- 3 Select *Manage Items* and press 
- 4 Select *Rename* and press 
- 5 Edit name and press 

## Deleting Files & Folders


Delete files and created folders in Data Folder.

- Deleting files (or the folders) used for ringtone, ringvideo, etc. cancels corresponding setting.
- Not available for S! Appli folder.
- To delete S! Applications, see P.16-5 "Delete."


Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press 
- 2 *Deleting Folders*
  - 1 Select a folder and press  Options
 

*Deleting Single Files*

    - 1 Select a file and press  Options
      - Selecting Multiple Files: P.8-4

*Deleting All Created Folders & Files*

    - 1 Select a file and press  Options
    - 2 Select *Manage Items* and press 
- 3 Select *Delete* or *Delete All* and press 
  - For deleting folders or *Delete All*, enter Handset Code ► Press 
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press 


## Copying/Moving Files

Copy or move files to the corresponding folder on Memory Card or to created sub folders within the folder (handset or Memory Card).

- Copy or move files in DCIM folder to Pictures folder (handset or Memory Card).
- Some files may not be copied or moved.
- Moving files used for ringtone, ringvideo, etc. cancels corresponding setting.
- Not available for S! Appli folder.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

### 1 Select a folder and press



To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it  
▶ Press 

### 2 Select a file and press Options

Selecting Multiple Files: P.8-4

### 3 Select *Copy* or *Move* and press

### 4 Select *Phone* or *Memory Card* and press

If the file is used for Wallpaper, etc., choose **Yes** ▶ Press   
To copy/move to created sub folders, select a folder ▶ Press 



### 5 Select *Copy here* or *Move here* and press

- Note** ▶
- If a copy protected file is included in the selected files, only the remaining files are copied.
  - Files copied or moved to Memory Card may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
  - Name of copied or moved file may change when the same name already exists in the folder.

## Using Files

Use Data Folder files as Wallpaper, Phone Book Picture, ringtone and ringvideo, send them via S! Mail or print on a compatible printer.


- Corresponding menu items appear only for compatible files.
- Some files may not be used depending on the size.

**Note** ▶ Some copy protected files ( or ) may not be used.

## Wallpaper




Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

### 1 Select *Pictures*, *DCIM*, *Flash*<sup>®</sup> or *Other Documents* and press

To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it  
▶ Press 

### 2 Select a file and press Options

### 3 Select *Set as Wallpaper* and press

For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option ▶ Press   
For Display size or centered images, use  to zoom in/out or press  to rotate.

### 4 Press

Wallpaper is set.

## Saving to Phone Book

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select **Pictures, Ring Songs·Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones** and press **●**
- 2 Select a file and press **☒ Options**
  - For more, perform from Step 3 in "Saving from Other Functions" on P.4-7.

- Note** ▶
- Setting is canceled when source file usage period expires. (Warning does not appear when saving files with limited usage period to Phone Book.)
  - Renaming, deleting or moving files (or the folder) used for ringtone, ringvideo, etc. cancels corresponding setting.

## Ringvideo & Ringtone

Assign video or sound file as ringvideo or ringtone for Voice Calls.

### Ringvideo

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Videos

- 1 Select a file and press **☒ Options**
- 2 Select **Set as Ring Video** and press **●**

### Ringtone

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select **Ring Songs·Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtones** and press **●**
- 2 Select a file and press **☒ Options**
- 3 Select **Set as Ringtone** and press **●**

## S! Mail Attachments

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press **●**
- 2 Select a file and press **☒ Options**
- 3 Select **Send** and press **●**
- 4 Select **As Message** and press **●**
  - For large JPEG images, select attachment size ▶ Press **●**
- 5 Complete other fields and send **S! Mail** (perform from Step 3 on P.14-4)

## Printing Images

Connect handset to a printer via Bluetooth® and print JPEG/PNG images.

- Use a Bluetooth®-compatible printer.
- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

### 1 Select *Pictures*, *DCIM* or *Other Documents* and press

■ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it  
▶ Press

### 2 Select a still image and press **Options**

### 3 Select *Print* and press

### 4 Select *Via Bluetooth* and press

Device search starts.

### 5 Select a device and press

■ When requested, enter passkey ▶ Press

■ When **Current connection must be disconnected first**,  
**OK?** appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

### 6 Choose *Yes* and press

Offline Mode is set and printing starts.

- When printing completes, printer stops automatically.

■ To cancel, press  **Cancel**.

- Note** ▶
- Some images sent to Basic Imaging Profile-compatible printers may not be printed due to printer limitations.
  - Transmission may fail depending on data size.

## Editing Still Images

### Picture Editor/Composite Options

#### Picture Editor

<b>Resize</b>	Select from preset sizes or crop image for size
<b>Retouch</b>	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
<b>Paste</b>	Add text to images
<b>Stamp</b>	Add stamps to images
<b>Face Arrange</b>	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
<b>Frame</b>	Add Frame to images
<b>Correction</b>	Correct images
<b>Rotate</b>	Rotate images
<b>File Format</b>	Convert file format and change file size

#### Composite

<b>Merge Panorama</b>	Combine two still images into one
<b>Split Picture 240 x 320</b>	Combine up to four reduced images into a W 240 x H 320 or W 120 x H 160 dot image
<b>Split Picture 120 x 160</b>	

## Opening Picture Editor/Composite Window

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ Select a file ▶ Options (Ⓜ) ▶ Edit

### 1 Select **Picture Editor** or **Composite** and press **Ⓜ**

- Select an option for further operations.
- **Picture Editor** and **Composite** appear only for compatible files.
- Edited image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.



Picture Editor Window



Composite Window

### Canceling Effects

- Before saving/adding an effect, select **Undo** ▶ Press **Ⓜ**
  - To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **Redo** ▶ Press **Ⓜ**

### Saving Edited Images

- Press **Ⓜ** **Save** ▶ Select **Save as New** ▶ Press **Ⓜ** ▶ Enter name ▶ Press **Ⓜ** ▶ Select a location ▶ Press **Ⓜ**
  - To overwrite, select **Overwrite** instead of **Save as New** ▶ Press **Ⓜ**

## Changing Image Size

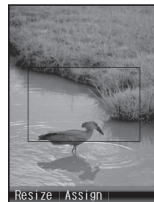
### Resize to Preset Size

Open Picture Editor window (left) and follow these steps.

- 1 Select **Resize** and press **Ⓜ**
- 2 Select a size and press **Ⓜ**

A rectangle appears on the image (except for **Wallpaper** and **Power On/Off**).

Wallpaper	W 240 x H 320 dots
Power On/Off	W 240 x H 320 dots
Incoming Call	W 180 x H 120 dots
Alarm	W 240 x H 104 dots



Incoming Call

### 3 Use **Ⓜ** to specify display area












- Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
- To zoom in/out, press **Ⓜ** **Resize** ▶ Press **Ⓜ** (zoom in) or **Ⓜ** (zoom out)
- To start over from size selection, press **Ⓜ** **Assign**.

### 4 Press **Ⓜ**

- Saving Edited Images: above

## Cropping Images

Open Picture Editor window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.

- 1 Select *Resize* and press** 
- 2 Select *Cut* and press** 
- 3 Use  to move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop and press** 
- 4 Use  to move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop and press** 
  - Use  to specify display area.
    - Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
  - To zoom in/out, press  **Resize** → Press  (zoom in) or  (zoom out)
- 5 Press** 
  - Saving Edited Images: P.8-10

## Visual Effects (Retouch)

- Apply to W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images including Continuous Shoot images.
- Open Picture Editor window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.









- 1 Select *Retouch* and press** 
- 2 Select an effect and press** 
  - To start over, press .
- 3 Press** 
  - Saving Edited Images: P.8-10

**Note** ► Edited images may be too large to save or send via S! Mail.

## Adding Text & Stamps

Open Picture Editor window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.

### 1 Adding Text

- 1 Select *Paste* and press** 
  - To specify colors, press  **Colour** → Select text color → Press  → Select outline color or no outline → Press  → Press  **Done**
- 2 Select *Free Text* and press** 
  - To enter the date, select **Date** → Press  → Skip ahead to Step 2
- 3 Enter text and press** 
  - Enter up to 16 characters.

### Adding Stamps



- 1 Select *Stamp* and press** 
- 2 Select a stamp and press** 
  - To change the stamp, press .
- 2 Use  to move text or stamp to target location and press** 
  - Saving Edited Images: P.8-10

## Face Arrange

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Face Arrange may not fit all images. Adjust position and size as required (below).
- Open Picture Editor window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.

**1 Select Face Arrange and press** 

**2 Select a type and press** 

- To check current positions of targets, press  **Parts**.
- Press  to return.
- To start over, press .

**3 Press** 

- Saving Edited Images: P.8-10

**Note** ► When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

### Adjusting Face Arrange Position

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image. Changes apply to the current image only.


**1 In Step 2 above, press**  **Parts**

**2 Press**  **Modify**


A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

**3 Set the face line**



Use  to move + to the upper left corner



Use  to move + to the lower right corner



Face line is set

- To start over, press .

**4 Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way**




Set eye (right of image)



Set eye (left of image)



Set Mouth

- When finished, all the targets appear.
- To readjust targets, start over from Step 2.
- To restore the original positions, press . (Not available after setting mouth position.)

5 Press

6 Choose **Yes** and press

7 Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted, and Face Arrange menu returns.

- Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

## Other Picture Effects

Open Picture Editor window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.

Frame	<p>Add Frame to JPEG and PNG images</p> <p>Select <b>Frame</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select a frame ➔ Press  ➔ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ To change the frame, press  before assigning it.</li><li>■ Saving Edited Images: P.8-10</li></ul>
Correction	<p>Correct brightness, etc. for W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG and PNG images</p> <p>Select <b>Correction</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select a <b>Correction type</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ To change Correction type, press  before assigning it.</li><li>■ Saving Edited Images: P.8-10</li></ul>
Rotate	<p>Rotate images</p> <p>Select <b>Rotate</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select a type ➔ Press  ➔ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ To start over from type selection, press  before second press of .</li><li>■ Saving Edited Images: P.8-10</li></ul>
File Format	<p>Convert file format and change file size</p> <p>Select <b>File Format</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>File Format or File Size</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select a format/size ➔ Press  ➔ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Saving Edited Images: P.8-10</li><li>• Changing file format/size may affect file size/image quality.</li></ul>

## Panorama Images

- Panorama Image Effects:

Standard	Applicable to all kinds of shots
Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text

- Use JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 and W 120 x H 160 dots/ W 160 x H 120 dots.
- Some portions may be cropped to adjust two images to the same size.
- The result may not be satisfactory if color tones are different between two images.
- Open Composite window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.

1 Select **Merge Panorama** and press

Left image is set.

- **Merge Panorama** is selectable only for compatible files.

2 Select and press

3 Select another image and press

Two images are set.

4 Select **EFFECT** and press



**5 Select an effect and press**

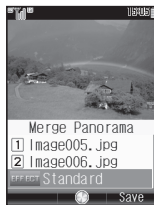
- To check images, select either Press
  - Press to return.
- To change images, select one Press
  - ▶ Press **Change** ▶ Select an image
  - ▶ Press
- To switch the positions, press **Flip**.

**6 Press** **Save****7 Press** **8 Enter name and press** **9 Select a location and press**

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

**Split Picture**

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Images are placed in the upper left, upper right, lower left and lower right in numerical order.
- Open Composite window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.



Merge Panorama Window

**1 Select *SplitPicture 240x320* or *SplitPicture 120x160* and press**

Upper left image is set.

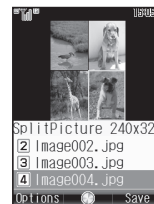
**2 Select** **and press** **3 Select an image and press** 

Split Image

**4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3**

- In Step 2, select or .

- To preview Split Picture, press **Options**
  - ▶ Select **View Composite** ▶ Press
  - Press to return.
- To change images, select one Press
  - ▶ Press **Change** ▶ Select an image
  - ▶ Press
- To delete images, select one
  - Press **Options** ▶ Select **Remove** ▶
  - Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press



Split Picture Preview

**5 Press** **Save****6 Enter name and press** **7 Select a location and press**

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

# 9

## Additional Settings

<b>Customizing Handset Responses</b> .....	<b>9-2</b>
■ Activating a Mode .....	9-2
■ Customizing Normal Mode .....	9-2
■ Customizing Handset Modes .....	9-4
<b>Display Settings</b> .....	<b>9-4</b>
■ Wallpaper .....	9-4
■ System Graphics .....	9-5
■ Font Settings .....	9-5
■ Clock/Calendar .....	9-6
■ Standby Window (Japanese).....	9-6
■ Custom Screens .....	9-9
■ Familiar Usability .....	9-11
■ Language Setting .....	9-12
■ Light Settings.....	9-12
■ Additional Display Settings .....	9-13
<b>Sound Settings</b> .....	<b>9-14</b>
■ Customizing System Sounds .....	9-14
■ Sound Adjuster.....	9-15
■ Additional Sound Setting .....	9-15
<b>Date &amp; Time</b> .....	<b>9-15</b>
<b>Handset Security</b> .....	<b>9-17</b>
■ Changing Handset Code.....	9-17
■ Handset Locks .....	9-17
■ Face Recognition .....	9-19
■ PIN .....	9-22
■ Opening Secret Entries.....	9-23
<b>Reset</b> .....	<b>9-23</b>
<b>Call Settings</b> .....	<b>9-24</b>
■ Limit Call Costs .....	9-24
■ Data Counter.....	9-24
■ Auto Answer .....	9-24
■ International Call.....	9-25
■ Additional Call Settings .....	9-25

# Customizing Handset Responses

Activate Normal, Manner, Drive or Original mode to change multiple handset settings at one time; each mode offers a basket of defaults tailored to a particular usage pattern.




## Activating a Mode

**Normal** is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Mode Settings

### 1 Select a mode and press

Resetting Mode Settings

■ Select a mode ▶ Press  **Reset** ▶ Enter Handset Code  
▶ Press  ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press 

## Customizing Normal Mode

### Ringtone Volume

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Sounds & Alerts

### 1 Select **Volume** and press

### 2 Select an item and press

### 3 Use to adjust level and press

**Note** ▶ Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: P.9-15)

## Ringtone/Ringvideo

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Sounds & Alerts

### 1 Select **Ringtone/videos** and press

### 2 **Voice Call/Video Call/Circle Talk Request**

#### 1 Select **For Voice Call, For Video Call or Circle Talk** and press



#### **Other Incoming Transmissions**






#### 1 Select an item and press

 To set duration, select **Duration** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter time (01 - 99 seconds) ▶ Press 



#### 2 Select **Assign Tone** and press

### 3 Select a folder and press

 To use Custom Screen ringtone/ringvideo, select **Custom Screen** ▶ Press  (Omit the next step.)

 To play tones/files, select one ▶ Press  **Play** or  **Play**  
■ Press  **Stop** or  to stop.

### 4 Select a tone/file and press

 For files with limited usage period, choose **Yes** ▶ Press 

**Tip** ▶

- Some files may not be usable.
- Default ringtone/ringvideo may sound/play in the following cases:
  - Downloading files
  - Streaming
  - Editing still images
  - Removing Memory Card with files set as ringtones/ringvideos
- When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, ringtone/ringvideo may not play correctly.

## Vibration

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Sounds & Alerts

- 1 Select **Vibration** and press ●
- 2 Select an item and press ●
- 3 **Activating/Deactivating**
  - 1 Select **Switch On/Off** and press ●
  - 2 Select **On, Link to Sound** or **Off** and press ●

### Vibration Pattern

- 1 Select **Vibration Pattern** and press ●
  - To check vibration patterns, select one ► Press ☑ **Check**
    - Press ☑ **Stop** to stop.
- 2 Select a pattern and press ●

### Link to Sound

- Select **Link to Sound** to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration/Small Light illumination. If only vibration pattern is embedded, vibration remains off and Small Light flashes to the main melody.

### Precaution

- Disable vibration when charging.

## Small Light Illumination

Set for incoming transmissions (Event Light) or missed transmissions (Status Light; see P.2-7 "Information").

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Sounds & Alerts

### 1 Event Light

- 1 Select **Event Light** and press ●
- 2 Select an item and press ●
- 3 Select **On, Link to Sound** or **Off** and press ●

### Status Light

- 1 Select **Status Light** and press ●
- 2 Select an item and press ●
- 3 Choose **On** or **Off** and press ●

## Any Key Answer

Activate or cancel Any Key Answer (P.2-6).

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Sounds & Alerts

- 1 Select **Any Key Answer** and press ●
- 2 Choose **On** or **Off** and press ●

## Customizing Handset Modes

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (⌂) ► Mode Settings

<b>Volume<sup>1</sup></b>	Set volume level for incoming transmissions Select a mode ► Press [⊞] [Edit] ► Perform from Step 1 in "Ringtone Volume" on P.9-2
<b>Vibration<sup>2</sup></b>	Handset vibrates for incoming transmissions Select a mode ► Press [⊞] [Edit] ► Perform from Step 1 in "Vibration" on P.9-3
<b>Event Light/Status Light</b>	Set Small Light illumination for incoming transmissions Select a mode ► Press [⊞] [Edit] ► Perform from Step 1 in "Small Light Illumination" on P.9-3
<b>Any Key Answer</b>	Activate or cancel Any Key Answer Select a mode ► Press [⊞] [Edit] ► Perform from Step 1 in "Any Key Answer" on P.9-3
<b>Answer Phone<sup>2</sup></b>	Activate or cancel Answer Phone Select a mode ► Press [⊞] [Edit] ► Select Answer Phone ► Press [⊞] ► Choose On or Off ► Press [⊞]

<sup>1</sup>Available for Original mode.

<sup>2</sup>Available for Manner and Original modes.

## Display Settings

### Wallpaper

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (⌂) ► Display ► Wallpaper

#### 1 Preset Pictures

**1** Select *Preset Pictures* and press [⊞]

**2** Select an image and press [⊞]

#### Data Folder Images

**1** Select *Pictures, DCIM, Flash<sup>®</sup>, Other Documents or Custom Screen* and press [⊞]

■ For *DCIM*, select a folder ► Press [⊞]

**2** Select an image and press [⊞]

■ For images with limited usage period, choose **Yes** ► Press [⊞]

■ For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option ► Press [⊞]

**3** Press [⊞]

#### Canceling

**1** Select *Blank* and press [⊞]

**Note** ►

- Some files may not be usable.
- When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Wallpaper may not appear correctly.

**Tip** ► For Display size or centered images, use [⏴] to zoom in/ out or press [⊞] to rotate.

## System Graphics


Use images for Power On/Off, incoming calls and Alarm windows.  
**Preset Animation** and **Pattern 1** are set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⌂) ▶ Display ▶ System Graphics

**1** Select an item and press 


**2** **Preset Animation/Patterns**

**1** Select **Preset Animation** and press 



■ For incoming calls/Alarm, select from **Pattern 1** to **Pattern 3** ▶ Press 

### Data Folder Images

**1** Select **Pictures, DCIM, Flash<sup>®</sup>, Other Documents or Custom Screen** and press 

■ For **DCIM**, select a folder ▶ Press 

**2** Select an image and press 

■ If a rectangle appears, use  to specify display area  
▶ Press 

**3** Press 

**Note** ▶ System Graphics may not appear correctly depending on ringtone/ringvideo settings.

## Font Settings

Change font size/weight for menus, text entry, mail messages and the Internet.

Font size is **Standard** and weight is **Normal** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⌂) ▶ Display ▶ Font Settings

**1** Select **Font Size or Font Weight** and press 

■ For **Font Size**, select an item ▶ Press 

**2** Select a size or weight and press 

**Tip** ▶

- Font weight may not change when font size is **Tiny**, and some windows may not support Font Settings.
- Activating Large Font Menu (P.1-23) cancels Font Settings.

## Clock/Calendar

**Clock (M)** is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ Display ▶ Standby Display ▶ Clock/Calendar

### 1 Select a type and press

#### Calendar Contents

- Current date is highlighted and holidays appear in red.
- Scheduled dates are underlined.

**Note** ▶ Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of August 2007. (Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day are gazetted on February 1 of the previous year, and thus may differ from dates scheduled on handset.)

**Tip** ▶ When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Clock or Calendar may not appear correctly.

## Standby Window (Japanese)

Open Standby Window in Shortcut, Headline, Communication or Calendar mode to access shortcut icons, view Live Monitor news, and more.

Subscription and member or content registration required to use Live Monitor (P.15-14) or Hot Status (P.18-3).

### 1 Press

- Standby Window opens in Shortcut mode by default.

### 2 To toggle modes, press Switch

### 3 Use to select an item and press

**Tip** ▶ For more about icons/indicators and information, see P.15-14 "Live Monitor Basics" or P.18-3 "Hot Status."

## Window Description

### Shortcut Mode (Shortcut Panel)

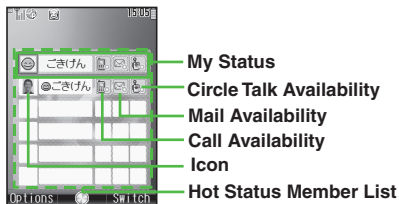


Above is an example in **Template 1** view. (**Template 7** is set by default.)

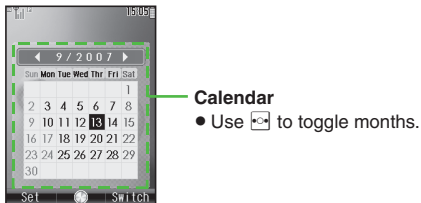
### Headline Mode (News Panel)



## Communication Mode (Member Panel)



## Calendar Mode (Calendar Panel)



## Display Options

**Switch by Key** is set by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ Standby Display ▶ Standby Window ▶ Display Window

**1** Select an option and press

## Mode Selection

Panels for all modes are set to appear by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ Standby Display ▶ Standby Window ▶ Display Panel

**1** Select a panel to hide and press  **Uncheck**

To show hidden panels, select one and press  **Check**.

**2** Press



## Customizing Standby Window

### Shortcut Mode

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Shortcut mode (P.9-6).

Change Templates	Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Change Templates</i> → Press  → Select a template → Press
Add News Content	Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Add News Content</i> → Press  → Select a list → Press  → Select an item → Press • Follow onscreen instructions.
News Speed	Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>News Display</i> → Press  → Select <i>News Speed</i> → Press  → Select speed → Press
Target News	Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>News Display</i> → Press  → Select <i>Target News</i> → Press  → Select an option → Press



The following options are available in *Template 1* view, etc.

Assign Shortcut	Select an icon → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Assign Shortcut</i> → Press  → Use  to select a menu item → Press  → Select a function, folder or menu → Press • Shortcuts are overwritten if already assigned. • Press <b>Assign</b> to assign some menu items.
Assign Bookmark	Select an icon → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Assign Bookmark</i> → Press  → Use  to select a Bookmark → Press  → Select an icon → Press  → Choose Yes → Press

Move Shortcuts/Bookmarks	Select an icon → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Move</i> → Press  → Select an icon → Press <b>Up</b> or <b>Down</b> → Press
Delete Shortcuts/Bookmarks	Select an icon → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Delete</i> → Press  → Choose Yes → Press
Assign Member	Select an icon or a blank entry → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Assign Member</i> → Press  → Select <i>Status Member List</i> or <i>Phone Book</i> → Press  → Select a member or an entry → Press • Save members to Hot Status member list or save Phone Book entries beforehand.
Delete Member Icons	Select an icon → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Delete</i> → Press  → Choose Yes → Press
My Status Settings	Select an icon → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>My Status Settings</i> → Press  → Choose <i>On (show)</i> or <i>Off</i> → Press
Move Members	Select an icon → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Move</i> → Press  → Select a member to move → Press <b>Up</b> or <b>Down</b> → Press
Change Member Icons	Select an icon → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Change Icon</i> → Press  → Select an icon → Press



















## ■ **Headline Mode**

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Headline mode (P.9-6).

<b>Add News Content</b>	Press  <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Add News Content</b> ➔ Press  • Follow onscreen instructions.
-------------------------	---

## ■ **Communication Mode**

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Communication mode (P.9-7).

<b>Assign Member</b>	Select a row ➔ Press  <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Assign Member</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Select Status Member List or Phone Book</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Select a member or an entry</b> ➔ Press  • Save members to Hot Status member list or save Phone Book entries beforehand.
<b>Delete Members</b>	Select a member ➔ Press  <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Delete</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Choose Yes</b> ➔ Press 
<b>My Status Settings</b>	Select an icon ➔ Press  <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select My Status Settings</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Choose On (show) or Off</b> ➔ Press 
<b>Move Members</b>	Select a member ➔ Press  <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Move</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Select a member</b> ➔ Press  <b>Up</b> or  <b>Down</b> ➔ Press 
<b>Change Member Icons</b>	Select a member ➔ Press  <b>Options</b> ➔ <b>Select Change Icon</b> ➔ Press  ➔ <b>Select an icon</b> ➔ Press 

## Custom Screens

Download and install applications that load single-themed handset Wallpaper, menu windows, indicators, ringtones and more, all at the same time.

In addition to preloaded Custom Screens, use Custom Screens downloaded via the Internet.

### Downloading Custom Screens

- Custom Screens can also be downloaded via **カスタモ** (<http://www.custamo.com/>) using a PC.
- Read information (Custom Screen Key price, expiry date, etc.) on Custom Screen download page.

**Main Menu** ▶ **Data Folder** ➔ **Custom Screens**

### 1 Select Download Custom Screens and press

Handset connects to the Internet and **カスタモ** appears.

- To read introduction to **カスタモ** first, select **カスタモご紹介**  
➔ Press  ➔ Press  ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ Press 

### 2 Download a Custom Screen

- On PCs, download Custom Screens to the following Memory Card directory. Do not change file name, extension, etc.
  - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Custom Screens



## Purchasing Custom Screen Keys




To use fee-based Custom Screens, download Custom Screen Keys (Content Keys) to handset.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder



### 1 Select *Custom Screens* and press

- Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators:

Key Found		Key Not Found	
-----------	---	---------------	---


-  appears for the current Custom Screen.
- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 
  - Options ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ▶ Press .

### 2 Select a Custom Screen for which to download the Key and press Options

- Select one with .
- To access Custom Screen source sites, select **Web Access**
  - ▶ Press .

### 3 Select *Activate* and press

Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.


- When 100 Custom Screen Keys are already downloaded, delete Keys before downloading new ones.
- To cancel, press  **Cancel**.

### 4 Read through terms of service and download Custom Screen Key following onscreen instructions

### 5 After download, choose **Yes** and press

Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

## Custom Screen Setup

- Pressing  does not cancel setup.
- Custom Screen setup may take some time.

## Preset Custom Screens

Custom Screen is unset by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings () ▶ Custom Screens ▶ Preset Screens

### 1 Select *Pattern 1* or *Pattern 2* and press

## Custom Screens in Data Folder

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

### 1 Select Custom Screens and press

- Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators: P.9-10
- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press **Options** ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ▶ Press
- To delete Custom Screens, select one ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press
  - When the corresponding Custom Screen Key has been downloaded, choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press

### 2 Select a Custom Screen and press

- Custom Screens with cannot be set.

### 3 Press

### 4 Press

Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

- Note** ▶
- Some Custom Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.
  - Custom Screen setup may fail when battery is low or depending on content.

**Tip** ▶ Once installed, Custom Screen remains active even after Memory Card is removed or replaced with another.

## Familiar Usability

Download and install applications that load user interface themes based on your previous handsets. Familiar Usability does not completely remake handset.

### Downloading Familiar Usability

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Custom Screens

#### 1 Select Download Familiar Usability and press

Handset connects to the Internet and Familiar Usability download site appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions.

### Familiar Usability Setup

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Custom Screens

#### 1 Select a Familiar Usability application and press

#### 2 Press

#### Canceling Familiar Usability

- Press ▶ Press (メニュー) ▶ Select おなじみ操作解除 ▶ Press ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press

#### Canceling Familiar Usability Temporarily

- Press ▶ Press (メニュー) ▶ Select 通常メニュー ▶ Press

- Note** ▶
- Activating Familiar Usability cancels Custom Screen and restores default Wallpaper, System Graphics, tones, etc. (Simple Menu needs to be canceled to activate Familiar Usability.)
  - Familiar Usability does not support Font Settings (P.9-5) or Language Setting (below).

## Language Setting

Switch handset interface between Japanese and English.

- For **Automatic**, interface language switches according to language information on USIM Card.
- **Automatic** is set by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ 言語選択

**1** Select **Automatic, English** or **日本語** and press **●**

## Light Settings

### Backlight

Select Display and Keypad Backlight illumination time or Display Brightness

**Default** Time Out: 15 seconds, Brightness: Level 2

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ Backlight

### Backlight Illumination Time

Select **Time Out** ▶ Press **●** ▶ Select time ▶ Press **●**

■ To disable Backlight, choose **Off** in Time Out list ▶ Press **●**

### Display Brightness

Select **Brightness** ▶ Press **●** ▶ Use **☺** to adjust level ▶ Press **●**

**Note** ▶ Reduce Time Out time/Brightness level to extend Battery Time.

**Tip** ▶ Keypad light Brightness is fixed.

**Display Saving** Select a period of inactivity after which Display turns off

**Default** 1 minute

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ Display Saving

Select a period ▶ Press **●**

**Note** ▶ Shorten period of inactivity to extend Battery Time.

**CLS Disp. Time** Set Display Backlight and Display to turn off after a period of inactivity with Slider closed

**Default** 10 seconds

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ CLS Disp. Time

Select **10 sec.** or **Follow the Settings** ▶ Press **●**

- For **10 sec.**, Backlight turns off after five seconds then Display shuts down after another five seconds.

## Additional Display Settings

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display

<p><b>Show Indicators</b>  <small>Default: Status</small>          Area: On          Softkey          Area: Off</p>	<p>Show or hide indicators/Softkeys in Standby  <b>Select Standby Display</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select Show Indicators</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select Status Area or Softkey Area</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose On or Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p><b>Show Operator Name</b>  <small>Default: Off</small></p>	<p>Show or hide the name of your service provider in Standby  <b>Select Standby Display</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select Show Operator Name</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose On or Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p><b>Greeting Message</b>  <small>Default: Off</small></p>	<p>Create a short text message to appear on Display each time handset power is activated  <b>Select Greeting Message</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select Edit Message</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Enter a message</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select Switch On/Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose On</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>  <span style="color: green;">■</span> To cancel, select <b>Greeting Message</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select Switch On/Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>

<p><b>Caller Display</b>  <small>Default: On</small></p>	<p>Show or hide caller's number or name when Slider is closed  <b>Select Caller Display</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose On or Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p><b>Dial Number</b>  <small>Default: Pattern 1</small></p>	<p>Change font of numbers entered in Standby  <b>Select Dial Number</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select a pattern</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>

# Sound Settings

To change ringtone volumes, ringtone/ringvideo or vibration patterns, see **P.9-2** "Customizing Handset Responses."

## Customizing System Sounds

Default Settings:

	Tone/Sound	Duration
<b>Keypad Tones</b>	Touch Tone	-
<b>Circle Talk</b>	Xylophone	-
<b>Warning Tone</b>	Sound Effect 11	0.5 seconds
<b>Power On Sound</b>	Off	5 seconds
<b>Power Off Sound</b>	Off	5 seconds
<b>Handset Open</b>	Sound Effect 14	2 seconds
<b>Handset Close</b>	Sound Effect 15	2 seconds
<b>Charge Full</b>	Off	2 seconds

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⌂) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ System Sounds

### 1 Keypad Tones

**1 Select Keypad Tones and press** [OK]

To disable tone, choose **Off** ▶ Press [OK]

### Circle Talk Tone

**1 Select Circle Talk and press** [OK]

## Other System Sounds

**1 Select an item and press** [OK]

To set duration, select **Duration** ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select/enter time ▶ Press [OK]

■ Tone/sound does not play longer than the source regardless of Duration setting. (Tone/sound does not play repeatedly.)

**2 Select Tone or Sound and press** [OK]

To disable tone, choose **Off** ▶ Press [OK]

**3 Select Preset Sounds or Ring Songs/Tones and press** [OK]

To play tones/files, select one ▶ Press [OK] **Play** or [V] **Play**

■ Press [OK] **Stop** or [V] **Stop** to stop.

**2 Select a tone/file and press** [OK]

For files with limited usage period, choose **Yes** ▶ Press [OK]

**Volume** Set System Sound volume level Default Level 3

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (⌂) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ Volume ▶ General Volume

**Use** [V] **to adjust level** ▶ Press [OK]

• For Circle Talk tone, setting in "Ringtone Volume" on **P.9-2** applies.

**Note** ▶ • Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: **P.9-15**)  
• Some sounds always play at Level 2 or lower.

## Sound Adjuster

Adjusts ringer volume, etc. automatically to protect hearing.

<b>Sound Adjuster On</b>	Sounds set to Level 2 - 5 gradually increase to that level from Level 1 (but at shorter intervals than when using Increasing Volume)
<b>Sound Adjuster Off</b>	Handset vibrates for one second, then sounds at set volume level

- Handset responses may differ from above patterns.
- Sound Adjuster is **On** by default.

**Main Menu** ► Settings ► Phone Settings (P.13) ► Sounds & Alerts ► Sound Adjuster

### 1 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

- Tip** ► Sounds play at Level 1 or lower in the following cases:
- During calls, while calling/sending
  - During and within three seconds after Answer Phone message/Caller Voice playback
  - Within three seconds after calls

## Additional Sound Setting

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ► Settings ► Phone Settings (P.13)

<b>Ringer Output</b> Default Earphone/ Speaker	Set ringer source when using Headphones, etc. <b>Select Ringer Output</b> ► Press <input type="radio"/> ► <b>Select Earphone or Earphone/Speaker</b> ► Press <input type="radio"/>
--	---

## Date & Time

See indicated pages for these items.

<b>World Clock</b>	P.12-13	<b>Alarm</b>	P.12-10
--------------------	---------	--------------	---------

**Set Date/Time** Set the date and time; the day of the week is set automatically

**Main Menu** ► Settings ► Phone Settings (P.13) ► Date & Time ► Set Date/Time

**Enter the year** ► **Enter the month** ► **Enter the day** ►

**Enter the time** ► Press

- When Time Format is **12 Hour**, enter the time then use  to select am or pm ► Press

- Note** ►
- Entry order varies by Date Format (P.9-16). Use the letters below the entry fields as a guide.
  - When removing the battery for replacement, etc., Clock settings remain. However, should the handset go without power for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.



- Tip** ▶
- To correct numbers, use **[←]** to move cursor and re-enter digits.
  - Choose a Clock type or use Calendar for Standby (P.9-6).

**Format** Change date, time or Calendar format

**Default** Time Format: 24 Hour  
Date Format: Y/M/D  
Calendar Format: Sunday-Saturday

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Date & Time

Select **Time Format**, **Date Format** or **Calendar Format**  
▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select an option ▶ Press **[OK]**

**Time Correction** Correct Clock instantly or select when to correct automatically

**Default** On

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Date & Time ▶ Time Correction

### Correcting Instantly

Select **Manual** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **[OK]**

### Activating/Canceling Auto Correction

Select **Auto Corr. Setting** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press **[OK]**

### Selecting Auto Correction Timing

Select **Auto Corr. Setting** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Choose **On**  
▶ Press **[☰]** **Details** ▶ Select an item ▶ Press **[OK]** to check or uncheck ▶ Press **[✔]** **Save**

**Note** ▶ Clock may be a few seconds ahead or behind even after correction.

**Set Time Zone/Daylight Saving** Change Time Zone or activate Daylight Saving

**Default** Time Zone: Tokyo, Daylight Saving: Off

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Date & Time

### Time Zone

Select **Set Time Zone** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Use **[←]** to select a Time Zone ▶ Press **[OK]**

- If your zone is not preset, press **[☰]** **Custom** ▶ Enter city name (up to 16 characters) ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Use **[←]** to select + or - ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Enter time difference ▶ Press **[OK]**

### Daylight Saving

Select **Daylight Saving** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Choose **On** ▶ Press **[OK]**

- To cancel, select **Daylight Saving** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Choose **Off** ▶ Press **[OK]**

- Activate Daylight Saving to advance handset local time by one hour.

# Handset Security

## Changing Handset Code

9999 is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Chng Handset Code

- 1 Enter current Handset Code and press
- 2 Enter new Handset Code and press
- 3 Re-enter new Handset Code and press

## Handset Locks

Password Lock Restrict access to handset functions

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Password Lock

### Activating Lock when Slider is Closed

Select **Auto(Link to Slider)** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

### Activating Lock when Display Turns Off

Select **Auto** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

### One Time Lock

Select **Once** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

- Password Lock is canceled once handset is unlocked.

### Activating Lock when Handset is Turned On

Select **At Power On** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

### Canceling

Choose **Off** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

## Unlocking Handset

### Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

- Password Lock remains active even if handset power is deactivated, then reactivated.

## When Password Lock is Active

- In Standby, press for 2+ seconds to deactivate handset power, - to enter Handset Code or to edit Handset Code entry.
- During a call, press to end the call, press to show Options, to toggle Loudspeaker on/off or switch Video Call images, to mute/unmute Microphone, to switch between callers in Call Waiting, - to enter Handset Code or to edit Handset Code entry.
- When a call arrives, press to show Options. Answer calls by pressing , or keys for Any Key Answer (P.2-6), or place callers on hold by pressing . Press to forward incoming calls (when **No Answer** is set for Diverts).

**Note** ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Password Lock is active. See P.2-20.

### Link to Slider (Keypad Lock)

Close Slider to activate Keypad Lock

Default Link to Slider

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (P.4) ▶ Locks ▶ Keypad Lock

Select **Link to Slider or Manual** ▶ Press

### IP Service Setting

Enable or disable Hot Status and Circle Talk

Default On

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (P.4) ▶ Locks ▶ IP Service Setting

- Choose **On** (enable) or **Off** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

### Phone Book Lock

Restrict access to Phone Book information

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (P.4) ▶ Locks ▶ Phone Book Lock

Choose **On** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

- To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press
- For temporary access to Phone Book, press  in Standby ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

**Note** ▶ When Phone Book Lock is active, the following Phone Book operations are disabled:

- Searching, saving, editing and dialing, including Speed Dial (P.4-14).

### History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records

Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (P.4) ▶ Locks ▶ History Lock

Select a record type ▶ Press  to check or uncheck ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

- For temporary access to Call Log, press  or  in Standby ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press
- For temporary access to sent/received mail records, after Step 3 on P.14-4, select **All History** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

## Face Recognition

Activate to automatically lock handset when it is turned on, when Slider is closed, or whenever Display is refreshed after Display Saving time, etc. Match live face image with saved one to unlock.

### Precautions

When capturing/scanning face, remember these points:

- **Make sure your face is clearly visible; facial features may be obscured by hair, colored glasses, masks, etc.**
- **Face should be lit evenly and brightly (avoid backlight and strong light).**















- Note** ►
- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank cannot be held liable for misuse or any damages associated with the use of Face Recognition.
  - Handset Code is required to activate/cancel Face Recognition. Changing the code (P.9-17) helps enhance security.

## Saving User Information

Save a name and portrait as well as a question and an answer to the question. In case recognition fails, enter the answer to unlock handset.

- Save up to five users (with up to five portraits each).
- If no question or answer is saved, enter Handset Code to unlock handset.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (P.1) ► Locks ► Face Recognition ► User Registration

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press** 
- 2 Select from *User 1* to *User 5* and press** 
  -  To edit user information, select a user ► Press 
  -  To delete users, select one ► Press  **Delete** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press 
- 3 Select *User Name:* and press** 
- 4 Enter name and press** 
- 5 Select *Register Riddle:* and press** 
- 6 Enter a question and press** 
- 7 Select *Register Answer:* and press** 
- 8 Enter the answer and press** 
- 9 Capture and save portrait (P.9-20)**
- 10 Press**  **Save** to save



## ■ Saving Portraits




Save up to five portraits per user. Change location, face angle, accessory, brightness, etc. for each shot.

Follow these steps after Step 8 on **P.9-19**.

### 1 Select *Face Image*: and press

### 2 Select from *Image 1 to Image 5* and press **Capture**

 To overwrite saved portrait, choose **Yes** → Press 

 To delete portraits, select one → Press  **Delete** → Choose **Yes** → Press 

▪ Deleting all portraits cancels Face Recognition.

### 3 Frame your face on Display and press



- Stay still until shooting is completed.
- If **Cannot Register**. **Please change the shooting condition**. appears, start over from Step 2.

### 4 Press **Yes**

Portrait is saved.

### 5 Choose **Yes** and press

Face Recognition is activated.

- To save more, repeat Steps 2 - 4.
- To save user information, press  then  **Save**.

## Precautions for Portrait Capture

- Look straight into lens and frame whole face with no expression; adjust face size (may not be saved if too small). Stay still until shooting is completed.
- Do not wear a mask when capturing portraits, even for use with **Low(Mask)** (P.9-21 "Security Level").

- Tip** ▶
- Saving multiple portraits increases recognition accuracy. However, security will be compromised.
  - A person's portraits can be saved to multiple users; this may increase recognition accuracy.

## ■ Activating & Canceling

- Save a user beforehand.
- Face Recognition is **Off** by default.

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (📞) ▶ Locks ▶ Face Recognition ▶ Switch On/Off

### 1 Choose *On* or *Off* and press

### 2 Enter Handset Code and press











## Scanning Face

Clean dust/smudges from lens cover of Internal Camera with a soft cloth before use.


### 1 Face the Display

- To show operational tips, select **Panda** in Conductor Setting (P.9-22).
- Handset is unlocked when your face matches saved portrait.
- When Face Recognition fails, **Under Pwd Key Lock**. appears activating Password Lock.

#### Unlocking Handset after Face Recognition Fails

- When saved question appears, press  ➔ Enter the answer ➔ Press 
  - To retry to answer, press  ➔ Enter the answer ➔ Press 
  - To use Handset Code instead of retrying to answer, press  ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press 
- If no question or answer is saved, press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press 
  - To retry Face Recognition, press  **Recog**.

#### Opening Contact Information

- Press  while handset is locked to open saved contact information (P.9-22 "Report").

## Face Recognition Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ➔ Settings ➔ Phone Settings (☰) ➔ Locks ➔ Face Recognition

#### Link to Slider

Default Off

Set to lock handset when Slider is closed with Face Recognition active

Select **Link to Slider** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press 

Select accuracy level

Select **Security Level** ➔ Press  ➔ Select a level ➔ Press 

• Levels:

#### ■ High

Unsaved faces are least likely recognized by mistake; your face may be hard to recognize

#### ■ Normal

Standard recognition accuracy

#### ■ Low

Your face is most recognizable; unsaved faces are most likely recognized by mistake

#### ■ Low(Mask)

Accuracy is equal to that of **Low**; however, handset recognizes faces with masks

#### Security Level

Default Normal

<p><b>Conductor Setting</b> Default: Off</p>	<p>Show or hide operational tips during recognition</p> <p>Select <b>Conductor Setting</b> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select an option ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Off</b> <i>Under Face Recognition. Please wait...</i> appears</li> <li>■ <b>Preview</b> Internal Camera Viewfinder appears as a guide</li> <li>■ <b>Panda</b> Panda graphic appears with operational tips</li> <li>■ <b>Custom Screen</b> Custom Screen (P.9-9) graphic-based guidance appears</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p><b>Report</b> Default: Unregistered</p>	<p>Save contact information to open when Face Recognition fails</p> <p>Select <b>Report</b> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter contact information ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter up to 128 characters.</li> </ul>

## PIN

For more information on PIN, see P.1-3 "USIM PINs."

### PIN Entry

Select whether to require PIN every time handset is turned on (with USIM Card inserted)

Default: Off

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ➔ Phone Settings (☰) ➔ Locks ➔ PIN Entry ➔ Switch On/Off

Choose **On or Off** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter PIN1 ➔ Press

- Activate PIN Entry to require PIN1 entry each time handset (USIM Card inserted) is turned on.

**Tip** ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible when PIN Entry is active. See P.2-20.

### Change PIN

Change PIN1 or PIN2

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ➔ Phone Settings (☰) ➔ Locks

## PIN1

Select **PIN Entry** ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Change PIN** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter current PIN1 ➔ Press  ➔ Enter new PIN1 ➔ Press  ➔ Re-enter new PIN1 ➔ Press

## PIN2

Select **Change PIN2** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter current PIN2 ➔ Press  ➔ Enter new PIN2 ➔ Press  ➔ Re-enter new PIN2 ➔ Press

**Tip** ▶ Activate PIN Entry first.

## Opening Secret Entries

### Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to open Secret entries

Default Off

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Show Secret Data

**Choose On** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Enter Handset Code** ▶ **Press**

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ **Press**

**Note** ▶ Do not save confidential information in Phone Book/schedule entries. Handset Code and thus Secret entries may be compromised.

### When Show Secret Data is Off

■ Phone Book Names/Picture images do not appear for calls/mail from numbers/addresses in Secret entries. Personal ringtones/ringvideos are disabled. Names for numbers in Secret entries do not appear in Call Log or list of received messages.

## Reset

A confirmation appears before entering Handset Code when an S! Application is paused, etc. End the function to proceed.

### Reset Settings

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Master Reset ▶ Reset Settings

**Enter Handset Code** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press**

• Phone Book entries, etc. are unaffected.

**Note** ▶ Some default settings may not be restored.

### Reset All

Clear all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Master Reset ▶ Reset All

**Enter Handset Code** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press**

**Note** ▶

- Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Handset Code returns to the default setting. Reset All deletes downloaded S! Applications.
- **カスタモゴ紹介** in Data Folder (Custom Screens) and S! Applications are restored.



# Call Settings

See indicated pages for these items.

Call Time & Cost	P.2-13, P.2-14	Show My Number	P.13-8
Answer Phone	P.2-8, P.2-9	Missed Call Notification	P.13-5
Vicemail/Divert	P.13-4, P.13-3	Call Barring	P.13-6
Call Waiting	P.13-5		

## Limit Call Costs

### Max Cost

Set a limit of total call charges  
When the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked

**Main Menu** ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Call Time & Cost ► Call Costs

Select **Max Cost** ► Press  ► Press  **Set** ►  
Select **Set** ► Press  ► Enter PIN2 ► Press  ►  
Enter the amount ► Press

- To cancel Max Cost, select **Max Cost** ► Press  ► Press  **Set** ► Select **Unset** ► Press  ► Enter PIN2 ► Press
- To change Max Cost, select **Max Cost** ► Press  ► Press  **Edit** ► Enter PIN2 ► Press  ► Enter the amount ► Press
- To check the remaining amount, select **Residual Credit** ► Press

**Note** ► Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when the limit is reached. See P.2-20.

## Data Counter

Check estimated volume of the most recent or all packet transmissions (sent, received and total). Charges do not appear.

**Main Menu** ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Call Time & Cost ► Data Counter

- 1 Select **Last Data** or **All Data** and press
- 2 Press  to return

**Clear Counter** Reset Data Counter

**Main Menu** ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Call Time & Cost ► Data Counter

Select **Clear Counter** ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

## Auto Answer

Select whether to set handset to answer Voice Calls automatically when using Headphones or handsfree devices. Auto Answer is inactive by default.

**Main Menu** ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Auto Answer

- 1 Enter **Handset Code** and press 
  - To adjust ring time, select **Answer Time** ► Press  ► Enter time ► Press
- 2 Select **Switch On/Off** and press
- 3 Choose **On** (answer automatically) or **Off** and press

- Tip ▶**
- When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone (even in Manner mode).
  - Handsfree device Auto Answer tone varies by device.
  - To avoid unintentional activation, cancel Auto Answer after use.

## International Call

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ▶ *Int'l Calling*

<b>Int'l Prefix</b> Default: 0046010	Save frequently used international prefix Select <i>Int'l Prefix</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Enter <b>Handset Code</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Enter a prefix ▶ Press
<b>Change Country Codes</b>	Change Country Codes Select <i>Country Codes</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Select a country ▶ Press  ▶ Select <i>Change</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Enter country name ▶ Press  ▶ Enter country code ▶ Press
<b>Add Country Codes</b>	Add Country Codes Select <i>Country Codes</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <empty> ▶ Press  ▶ Enter country name ▶ Press  ▶ Enter country code ▶ Press
<b>Delete Country Codes</b>	Delete Country Codes Select <i>Country Codes</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Select a country ▶ Press  ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press

<b>Auto Add Code</b> Default: Off Country Code: 81 (Japan)	Add a preset country code automatically when placing calls <b>Activating/Deactivating</b> Select <i>Auto Add Code</i> ▶ Press  ▶ <i>Switch On/Off</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press
	<b>Set Country Code</b> Select <i>Auto Add Code</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <i>Country Code</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Select a country ▶ Press
	<p> To enter a country code, select <i>Enter Code</i> in Country Code list ▶ Press  ▶ Enter country code ▶ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (except emergency call numbers) unless + is included.</li> </ul>

## Additional Call Settings

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Settings*

<b>Earpiece Volume</b> Default: Level 3	Setting applies when placing/answering calls In <i>Phone Settings</i> , select <i>Earpiece Volume</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Use  to adjust level ▶ Press
<b>Open To Answer</b> Default: Off	Activate or cancel Slider auto call answer Use  to select <i>Call/Video Call</i> ▶ Select <i>Slider Settings</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <i>Open To Answer</i> ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press

<p><b>Close To</b>  <small>Default:</small> Continue Call</p>	<p>Activate or cancel Slider auto end call</p> <p>Use  to select <i>Call/Video Call</i> ➔ Select <i>Slider Settings</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <i>Close To</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <i>Continue Call or End Call</i> ➔ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Continue Call:</b> talk even if Slider is closed</li> <li>• <b>End Call:</b> close Slider to end calls; line stays open if Headphones or Answer Phone is in use or another line is on hold, etc.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Minute Minder</b>  <small>Default:</small> Off</p>	<p>Handset beeps once each minute during calls</p> <p>Use  to select <i>Call/Video Call</i> ➔ Select <i>Minute Minder</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <i>On (handset beeps)</i> or <i>Off</i> ➔ Press </p>
<p><b>Display Call Cost</b>  <small>Default:</small> Off</p>	<p>Show or hide Call Cost after each call</p> <p>Use  to select <i>Call/Video Call</i> ➔ Select <i>Disp. Time/Call</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <i>Display Call Cost</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ➔ Press </p>
<p><b>Call Time Counter</b>  <small>Default:</small> On</p>	<p>Show or hide elapsed Call Time during a call</p> <p>Use  to select <i>Call/Video Call</i> ➔ Select <i>Disp. Time/Call</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <i>Call Time Counter</i> ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ➔ Press </p>

# 10

## Connectivity

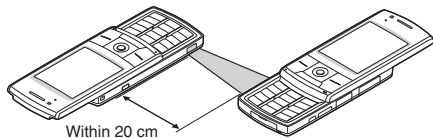
<b>Infrared</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
■ Getting Started.....	10-2
■ Sending Files via Infrared.....	10-4
■ Receiving Files via Infrared.....	10-4
<b>Bluetooth®</b> .....	<b>10-6</b>
■ Getting Started.....	10-6
■ Activating Bluetooth®.....	10-7
■ Connecting to Bluetooth® Devices.....	10-8
■ Transferring Files via Bluetooth®.....	10-9
■ Bluetooth® Settings.....	10-10
<b>Network Settings</b> .....	<b>10-10</b>
<b>Location Info</b> .....	<b>10-11</b>
<b>USB Charge (Japanese)</b> .....	<b>10-12</b>
■ Enabling & Disabling.....	10-12

# Infrared

## Getting Started


Wirelessly transfer files between 816SH and compatible devices (PCs, mobiles, etc.). "Files" includes Bookmarks, Tasks, Notepad, Phone Book and Calendar entries, and Messaging and Data Folder files. 816SH complies with IrMC 1.1, however, some files may not be transferable.

## Precautions



- Align Infrared Ports within 20 centimeters with no obstructions between handsets.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Dust/oil may impair file transfers; clean Infrared Ports with a soft cloth beforehand.
- Transfers are disabled while using the Internet or Media Player, while editing mail or files, etc.
- Transfers in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment may fail.

## When Transfer Fails

- **Device not found. Reconnect?** appears. Take the precautions on the left then choose **Yes** and press  to try again.

## Transfer Options

<b>One File Transfer</b>	Send single files to compatible devices. Files are saved to corresponding functions.
<b>All File Transfer</b>	Transfer all files by function
<b>Receive Folder</b>	Receive a folder and its contents. (Handset does not support sending folders.)

## Authorisation Code

- Four-digit code required for infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match.

**Note** ► Some files may not be saved in whole or part.

**Tip** ► Transfer most Memory Card Data Folder files one at a time. Received JPEG images in DCIM folder are saved in Pictures folder.

## Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	One File Transfer truncates Category, Tone/Video, Vibration & Secret. If <b>Delete All &amp; Save</b> is set then All File Transfer overwrites My Details except handset phone number. Picture may be lost; transfer image then reset it as Picture.
Calendar	Available	Available <sup>1</sup>	One File Transfer resets Alarm Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable start date/time (0:00 AM on January 1, 2031 or later) cannot be saved.
Tasks	Available	Available <sup>1</sup>	One File Transfer resets Alarm Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable due date/time (0:00 AM on January 1, 2031 or later) are saved as <b>No limit</b> .
Notepad	Available	Available	
Bookmarks	Available	Available	Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Received Msg.	N/A <sup>2</sup>	Available <sup>3</sup>	
Sent Messages	N/A <sup>2</sup>	Available	
Drafts	N/A <sup>2</sup>	Available <sup>4</sup>	
Templates	Available	Available <sup>5</sup>	Copy protected files are not transferable.
Data Folder	Available	Available <sup>5</sup>	Copy protected files are not transferable. Received JPEG images in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

<sup>1</sup>In All File Transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from **Appointments/Tasks**.

<sup>2</sup>Received files are saved to Other Documents folder as unknown files and cannot be used as messages.

<sup>3</sup>All File Transfers may save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 816SH) when spam filter is not active/available or when sender is saved in the phone book; S! Mail Notices are saved as normal messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

<sup>4</sup>In All File Transfers, SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 816SH), or only the first entered recipient remains.







<sup>5</sup>Receive folders one at a time into handset Data Folder.

- Note** ▶
- Handset holds up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
  - Messages may not be received depending on the size.
  - Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
  - Handset holds up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
  - Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail on handset depending on the sender SoftBank handset.
  - Overwriting Messaging folders deletes auto sort keys.

## Sending Files via Infrared

### One File Transfer


Send one file from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Notepad, Bookmarks, Templates or Data Folder (P.10-3 "Transferable Files").




- 1 Select a file and press**  **Options**
- 2 Select *Send* and press** 
  - To send Phone Book entries, select **Send Entry** ▶ Press 
  - To send My Details, select **Send My Card** ▶ Press 
- 3 Select *Via Infrared* and press** 
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press** 

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, file list returns.


## All File Transfer

**Main Menu** ▶ *Connectivity* ▶ *Infrared* ▶ *Send All*

- 1 Choose *Yes* and press** 

Offline Mode is set.
- 2 Enter Handset Code and press** 
- 3 Select an item and press** 
- 4 Enter Authorisation Code (P.10-2) and press** 

Transfer starts. When finished, Send All menu returns.


  - For Phone Book, choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press 

## Receiving Files via Infrared

### Basic Operation

- Handset must be in Standby to receive files; this function is disabled even in Standby if Password Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.
- Connection requests are received even with Keypad Lock active; cancel it to proceed.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Connectivity* ▶ *Infrared* ▶ *Switch On/Off*

- 1 Choose *On(3 min.)* and press** 

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.

  - When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears.
  - If Slider is closed and Keypad Lock active, open it to proceed.

## 2 Choose Yes and press

Offline Mode is set.

- For more, see "Subsequent Operations" on the right.

 Press  **Cancel** to cancel.

 Press  to end.



### Subsequent Operations

#### One File Transfer

Transfer starts automatically and confirmation appears.

#### 1 Choose Yes and press

 To cancel transfer, choose **No** ➔ Press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 

 When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 

#### All File Transfer

*Enter same No., or Authorisation code, as target device.*

appears.

#### 1 Enter the same Authorisation Code (P.10-2) as sender's and press

#### 2 Adding Files

##### 1 Select As New Items and press

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

##### Overwriting Existing Files

##### 1 Select Delete All & Save and press

##### 2 Choose Yes and press

##### 3 Enter Handset Code and press

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.



- When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

#### Receiving Folders

Transfer starts automatically and confirmation appears.

- Handset receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or the same folder name exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- If the same folder name exists, received files are saved there. (Another folder will not be created.)

#### 1 Choose Yes and press

 To cancel transfer, choose **No** ➔ Press 



# Bluetooth®

## Getting Started

Wirelessly transfer files between 816SH within ten meters and compatible devices (PCs, mobiles, handsfree devices, etc.). "Files" includes Bookmarks, Tasks, Notepad, Phone Book and Calendar entries, and Messaging and Data Folder files.

Handset Bluetooth® Specifications:

<b>Communication System</b>	Bluetooth® specification Ver 2.0
<b>Bluetooth® Profiles Supported</b>	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-up Networking Profile Object Push Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile Service Discovery Application Profile Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
<b>Output</b>	Bluetooth® Power Class 2

### Major Bluetooth® Devices

<b>PC/Mobile Phone</b>	Transfer Phone Book entries, tasks etc.
<b>Handsfree Device</b>	Talk on the phone without holding handset
<b>Wireless Headphones</b>	Enjoy music and audio wirelessly

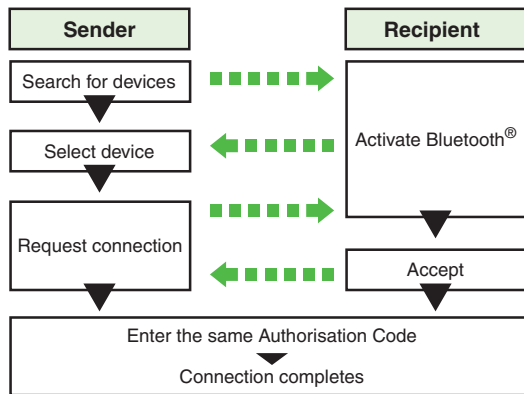
**Note** ► **Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.**

- Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
- Depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices, connection or data transfers may fail, or operational procedures, display content and actual operations may differ from those described in this manual.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations depending on the status of connected devices or signal conditions.
- For details about headset/handsfree devices, see the device manuals.

### Precautions

- Bluetooth® transfers are disabled during calls, while receiving calls, using the Internet or Media Player, editing mail, etc.
- Bring handsets to within ten meters. Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate is affected by distance between handsets, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.
- Bluetooth® operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending on the status of other devices used in the spectrum, Bluetooth® connection may slow down/terminate, or the range may decrease.

## Bluetooth® Connection



### Authorisation Code

- 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth® connections. Pairing possible when codes match.

## Activating Bluetooth®

Activate Bluetooth® to use Bluetooth® functions. Bluetooth® is inactive by default.

Main Menu ► Connectivity ► Bluetooth

### 1 Select **Switch On/Off** and press

- To open Bluetooth®-related handset properties, select **My Device Details** ► Press

### 2 Choose **On** and press

- ⓧ appears.
- To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press
- When **Current connection must be disconnected first, OK?** appears, choose **Yes** ► Press

**Note** ► Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from other devices or to receive files; these functions are disabled even in Standby if Password Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.

## Connecting to Bluetooth® Devices

### Device Search & Pairing

Search for Bluetooth® devices for pairing.

- Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.
- Search for up to 16 devices at a time.
- Device search is disabled if 32 devices are already registered.
- Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

Main Menu ► Connectivity ► Bluetooth

#### 1 Select Search for Devices and press

Found devices are listed after search. (The previous search result appears, if any.)

- Device names appear with corresponding indicators ( , etc.).
- Press **Cancel** to cancel.

#### 2 Select a device and press **Pairing**

- When **Current connection must be disconnected first, OK?** appears, choose **Yes** ► Press

#### 3 Enter the same Authorisation Code (P.10-7) for handset and the other device and press

- When pairing is complete, **Pairing is successful.** appears.
- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorisation Code.
  - Complete code entry within 30 seconds.

#### 4 Press

## Connecting to Paired Devices

Main Menu ► Connectivity ► Bluetooth

#### 1 Select Paired Devices and press

List of all paired devices appears.

- Use to open list of handsfree or audio devices only.
- To rename paired devices, select one ► Press **Options** ► Select **Change Name** ► Press ► Enter name (up to 16 characters) ► Press
- To delete paired devices, select one ► Press **Options** ► Select **Delete** ► Press ► Choose **Yes** ► Press
  - When **Current connection must be disconnected first, OK?** appears, choose **Yes** ► Press
- To use Bluetooth® for handsfree conversations or audio playback only, select a handsfree or audio device ► Press **Options** ► Select **Handsfree Connection** or **Audio Connection** ► Press

#### 2 Select a device and press

- The device is connected and  (checked) appears.
- When **Current connection must be disconnected first, OK?** appears, choose **Yes** ► Press
  - To disconnect, select a device ► Press



### Auto Wireless Connection for Media Player

- When Media Player audio output is set to wireless headphones and multiple sets of wireless headphones are available, follow these steps to connect handset to a specific set automatically.
  - After Step 1 above, use to select **Audio** ► Select a device ► Press **Options** ► Select **Set to Prior Connect** ► Press

- Tip ►
- Devices marked with  reconnect to handset when placing or receiving calls.
  - indicates that the device is not selected.

## Accepting Connection Requests

Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices.



- 1 Connection request confirmation appears**
  - If Slider is closed and Keypad Lock active, open it to proceed.
- 2 Choose Yes and press** 
- 3 Enter the same Authorisation Code (P.10-7) as sender's and press** 

## Avoiding Connection Requests

Set Visibility to **Hide My Phone** to cloak handset.

Visibility is set to **Show My Phone** by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Connectivity* ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *My Device Settings*  
▶ *Visibility*

- 1 Select Hide My Phone and press** 
  - To make handset visible, select **Show My Phone** ▶ Press 

## When Using Handsfree Devices

- Handle call operations on the device in use.
- Place calls from handsfree devices while handset is in Standby.

### Switching Sound Output














- While talking on the phone, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Transfer Audio** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **To Phone or To Bluetooth** ▶ Press 

## Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

- Enter Authorisation Code when required.
- For more information, see descriptions for Infrared (P.10-2 - 10-5).

### Sending

<b>One File Transfer</b>	Open file list and select a file ▶ Press  <b>Options</b> ▶ Select <b>Send, Send Entry or Send My Card</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>Via Bluetooth</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select a device ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press 
<b>All File Transfer</b>	Press  ▶ Select <b>Connectivity</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>Bluetooth</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>Send All</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select a device ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press  ▶ Select an item ▶ Press 

### Receiving

Activate Bluetooth® (P.10-7) then perform corresponding steps in "Subsequent Operations" on P.10-5.

## Bluetooth® Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Connectivity ▶ Bluetooth ▶ My Device Settings

<b>Device Name</b> Default: 816SH	Specify a Bluetooth® name for handset <b>Select Device Name ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter name ▶ Press [OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter up to 16 characters. (Pictograms are not available.)</li> </ul>
<b>Bluetooth Timeout</b> Default: No Timeout	Set idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled <b>Select Bluetooth Timeout ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select time ▶ Press [OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To cancel, select <b>No Timeout ▶ Press [OK]</b></li> </ul>
<b>Sound Output</b> Default: Phone/ Earphone	Select whether to redirect audio output to wireless Headphones <b>Select [On] Sound Output ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Phone/Earphone or Bluetooth Device ▶ Press [OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Bluetooth Device</b> is set automatically when connection is made from wireless Headphones.</li> </ul>
<b>Handsfree Setting</b> Default: Handsfree Mode	Select whether to talk handsfree when placing calls from handset while connected to a handsfree device <b>Select Handsfree Setting ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Handsfree Mode or Private Mode ▶ Press [OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When placing calls from handsfree devices, only handsfree conversation is available regardless of setting.</li> </ul>

## Network Settings

- Follow these steps first.
- See P.2-15 for information on Select Service.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (☰)

<b>Select Network</b> Default: Automatic	Select a Network to connect <b>Select Select Network ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Manual ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press [OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change Network automatically, select <b>Automatic ▶ Press [OK]</b></li> <li>Use default setting unless connecting to a specific Network.</li> </ul>
<b>Set Preferred</b>	Set priority of Networks to be selected when <b>Automatic</b> is set for Select Network <b>Inserting Network</b> <b>Select Select Network ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Set Preferred ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select a place to insert ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Insert ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press [OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Network is inserted above the selected entry.</li> </ul> <b>Adding Network to the End</b> <b>Select Select Network ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Set Preferred ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Add to End ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press [OK]</b> <b>Deleting Network</b> <b>Select Select Network ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Set Preferred ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select Delete ▶ Press [OK]</b>

Add, Edit & Delete	Add, edit or delete Networks
	<p><b>Adding Network</b></p> <p>Select <b>Select Network</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Add New Network</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Add</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Enter country code ➔ Press  ➔ Enter a Network code ➔ Press  ➔ Enter name ➔ Press  ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Select NW Type</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select a Network type ➔ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Add up to five Networks.</li> <li>• After selecting <b>Add New Network</b> and pressing , Network list appears if Network has already been added. In this case, press  again and perform above steps.</li> <li>• Use up to three digits for country code and Network code, and up to 25 single-byte alphanumeric for name.</li> </ul> <p><b>Editing Network</b></p> <p>Select <b>Select Network</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Add New Network</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select a Network ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Change</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Edit settings</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Edit in the same manner as in "Adding Network" above.</li> </ul> <p><b>Deleting Network</b></p> <p>Select <b>Select Network</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Add New Network</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select a Network ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Delete</b> ➔ Press </p>
	<p><b>Network Info</b></p> <p>Check Network Information</p> <p>Select <b>Network Info</b> ➔ Press </p>
Retrieve NW Info	<p>Retrieve Network Information manually</p> <p>Select <b>Retrieve NW Info</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <b>Yes</b> ➔ Press </p>

## Location Info

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Network Settings** (📶) ➔ **Location Info**

<b>URL Setting</b>	<p>Set URL of map information provider</p> <p>Select <b>URL Setting</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select URL ➔ Press </p> <p> To view complete URLs, select one ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Display</b> ➔ Press </p>
<b>Datum On/Off</b> Default: On	<p>Select whether to send Location Information automatically upon request</p> <p>Select <b>Datum On/Off</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <b>On (send) or Off</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press </p>
<b>Location Property</b> Default: Always Confirm	<p>Set Location Information confirmation parameters</p> <p>Select <b>Location Property</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Always Confirm, Send or Do not Send</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press </p>

## USB Charge (Japanese)

Connect handset to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

- Install Utility Software CD-ROM (Japanese) beforehand.
- Both PC and handset power must be on for USB charging.

### Enabling & Disabling

USB Charge is enabled by default.

Main Menu ► Connectivity ► USB Charge

**1** Select **Enable (charge) or Disable** and press

- Note** ►
- Charging may slow or stall due to connection.
  - USB Charge is slower/less efficient than AC Charger.

# 11

## Memory Card

<b>About Memory Card</b> .....	11-2
■ Inserting & Removing .....	11-2
■ Format Card.....	11-3
■ Using SD Local Contents.....	11-3
■ Backup & Restore .....	11-4
<b>Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)</b> .....	11-6
■ Selecting Images & Prints.....	11-7
■ Print Settings .....	11-7
<b>Mass Storage</b> .....	11-8



## About Memory Card

816SH is compatible with microSD™ Memory Card.

- Format a new Memory Card for use with handset (**P.11-3**).
- To learn how to save a particular file to Memory Card, refer to that section of the manual.
- To reduce malfunction risk use recommended Memory Cards only. See Memory Card compatibility information:
  - **From Handset (Japanese)**  
Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site <http://j.sst.ne.jp/>
  - **From PC (Japanese)**  
[http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd\\_support.html](http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html)

**Note** ▶

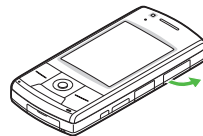
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- microSD™ Memory Card has no write protect switch. Files may be accidentally erased or overwritten.

**Tip** ▶ To check Memory Card memory status, open Data Folder and select **Memory Card** in Memory Status (**P.8-2**).

## Inserting & Removing

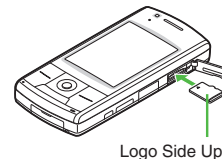
Turn handset power off.

### 1 Open cover



### 2 Inserting

- 1 With logo side up, insert card until it clicks



### Removing

- 1 Gently push in card

- With a light push, card pops out.

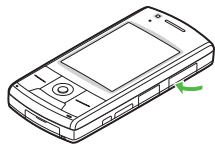



- 2 Remove card

- Gently, pull card straight out.



### 3 Close cover




- Note** ▶
- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset; damage may result.
  - When  appears, Memory Card may not be connected properly; reinsert the card.
  - Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot; may damage handset/card.
  - Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result and files/data may be damaged/lost.

**Tip** ▶ Insert a Memory Card and turn handset power on. Memory Card load times vary by card size and the amount of information saved.

### Format Card

When using a new microSD™ Memory Card, format it on handset for use with handset before trying to save files, etc.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Connectivity* ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *Format Card*

**1 Choose Yes and press** 

Offline Mode is set.

**2 Enter Handset Code and press** 

**3 Choose Yes and press** 

 To cancel, choose **No** ▶ Press 

- Note** ▶
- Before formatting a Memory Card, make sure there is no important information saved on the card. Format Card deletes all files from Memory Card.
  - Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting.
  - An improperly formatted Memory Card may not function as it should with 816SH.

### Using SD Local Contents

Open HTML files on Memory Card to access Internet sites. Available only when HTML files are saved on Memory Card.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Connectivity* ▶ *Memory Card* ▶ *SD Local Contents*

**1 Select a title and press** 

**Tip** ▶ HTML files for SD Local Contents are saved in PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Local Contents folder when viewed on PCs.

## Backup & Restore

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset in case of accidental loss/alteration of data.

- The following folders/entries can be transferred at once:
  - Received Msg.
  - Drafts
  - Templates
  - Sent Messages
  - Phone Book
  - Mail Groups
  - Calendar
  - Tasks
  - Notepad
  - Bookmarks
  - User Dictionary
  - My Pictograms
  - Content Keys
- All contents are copied to Memory Card as a single file. (File name is the date of transfer.)
  - Templates and My Pictograms are not copied as a single file.
- Select an item to back up or transfer all at once.

**Tip** ► Copy handset entries as backups, share information between microSD™ Memory Card-compatible handsets, or transfer entries to a newly purchased handset.

## Precautions

### Backup & Restore

- Not available if battery is low or handset is in use.
- Transmissions are blocked during Backup or Restore.

### Backup

- Some items may not be transferable. Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
- When handset or Memory Card memory is low, entries may not transfer correctly.
- To access backed up content (excluding Templates and My Pictograms) restore it to handset.

### Restore

Delete corresponding data on handset first.

### Folders/Entries

#### Phone Book

- Phone Book entry Picture settings may be lost depending on image; copy images to Memory Card separately and copy them to handset after Phone Book is restored.

#### Messaging folders

- S! Mail Notices are restored as normal messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- Restoring Messaging folders deletes auto sort keys.

### • Calendar/Tasks

- Handset holds up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.

### • Bookmarks

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are backed up. When restored, Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

### • Content Keys

- Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.
- While Keys are on Memory Card, files are inaccessible.

### ■ Compatibility with Other SoftBank Handsets

#### • Importing data backed up on other SoftBank handsets

- Messages may not transfer depending on the size.
- Handset holds up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. (Unsent Messages are not transferable.) If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
- Sky Mail may transfer as S! Mail depending on the SoftBank handset used for backup.

### • Moving backed up data to other SoftBank handsets

- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved or only the first entered recipient remains if transferred from Drafts.

## Handset to Memory Card

Main Menu

▶ Connectivity ▶ Memory Card ▶ Backup/Restore  
▶ Backup

**1** Enter Handset Code and press

**2** Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set.

**3** Select an item and press

For **Select All**, **Phone Book** or **Content Keys** confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press

To cancel, press  **Cancel**.

Encode

Select whether to encode data to be backed up

■ Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.  
Default: Off

Main Menu

▶ Connectivity ▶ Memory Card ▶ Backup/Restore  
▶ Encode

Select **Phone Book**, **Messages** or **Calendar/Tasks** ▶  
Press  ▶ Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press

## Memory Card to Handset

Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Content Keys).

Main Menu ▶ Connectivity ▶ Memory Card ▶ Backup/Restore  
▶ Restore

### 1 Enter Handset Code and press

### 2 Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set.

### 3 Select an item and press

- Some items may not be selected.

### 4 Select a file and press

- If there is more than one file, check the date of transfer to select.

**Example: 070901XX indicates the file was transferred on September 1, 2007. (XX: 00 - 99 or aa - zz)**

- For **Select All**, repeat Step 4 for each item. (To skip an item, press ,.)

To delete files on Memory Card, select one ▶ Press  **Delete**  
▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

### 5 Choose **Yes** and press

To cancel, press  **Cancel**.

For **Select All**, confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press

**Tip** ▶ For Tasks, due dates that cannot be set on handset are overwritten as **No limit**.

## Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

**Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)** is a standard specification for requesting prints from digital cameras. Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

- DPOF does not support images obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc. (These images cannot be saved to DCIM folder.)
- If Memory Card capacity becomes insufficient while in use, a warning message appears. Delete files beforehand.
- For printing procedures, see the printer manual.









**Note** ▶

- DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.
- Some settings may not be supported depending on the printer or printing services.
- Process may take a while if print settings are made for many images.
- If image files are deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, print settings change. Perform Reset Settings (P.11-7) and start over with settings.

## Selecting Images & Prints

### Main Menu

► *Connectivity* ► *Memory Card* ► *DPOF* ►  
*Number of Copies* ► *For Each Picture*













- 1 Select a folder and press**   
Thumbnails appear.
- 2 Use**  **to select an image and press**  **Count**  
 To open images, select one ► Press   
▪ Press  to return.
- 3 Enter a number of copies to print (00 - 99) and press**   
 To return, press  ► Press   
 To cancel, enter **00** ► Press 
- 4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 for other images**
- 5 Press**  **Done**

## Print Settings

Follow these steps first.

### Main Menu

► *Connectivity* ► *Memory Card* ► *DPOF*

<b>For All Pictures</b> <small>Default: 0 Copy each</small>	Apply a number to all DCF images to print the same number of copies <b>Select <i>Number of Copies</i> ► Press  ► Select <i>For All Pictures</i> ► Press  ► Enter a number (01 - 99) ► Press </b>
<b>Add Date</b> <small>Default: Off</small>	Add dates to prints <b>Select <i>Settings</i> ► Press  ► Select <i>Add Date</i> ► Press  ► Choose <i>On or Off</i> ► Press </b>
<b>Index Print</b> <small>Default: Off</small>	Create Index Print (a print with thumbnails) <b>Select <i>Settings</i> ► Press  ► Select <i>Index Print</i> ► Press  ► Choose <i>On (require) or Off</i> ► Press </b>
<b>Check Settings</b>	View current print settings <b>Select <i>Check Settings</i> ► Press </b>
<b>Reset Settings</b>	Reset DPOF settings <b>Select <i>Reset Settings</i> ► Press  ► Choose <i>Yes</i> ► Press </b>

# Mass Storage

Activate Mass Storage and connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset.

- Activating Mass Storage activates Offline Mode.
- Mass Storage is not available when battery is low, when an S! Application is paused or while Music Player is active.
- If handset is connected to a PC via USB Cable, disconnect it first.

Main Menu ► Connectivity

## 1 Select **Mass Storage** and press

*Calling not available during operation, OK?* appears.

## 2 Choose **Yes** and press

## 3 Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable

## 4 To exit, press **Cancel**

## 5 Choose **Yes** and press

- Safely remove handset (recognized as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

# 12

## Tools

<b>Calendar</b> .....	<b>12-2</b>	<b>Countdown Timer</b> .....	<b>12-18</b>
■ Opening Calendar .....	12-2	<b>Hour Minder</b> .....	<b>12-19</b>
■ Saving Entries .....	12-4	<b>Expenses Memo</b> .....	<b>12-21</b>
■ Opening Entries .....	12-6	■ Entering Expenses .....	12-21
■ Editing/Deleting Entries .....	12-7	■ Checking Entries .....	12-21
<b>Tasks</b> .....	<b>12-8</b>	■ Editing/Deleting Entries .....	12-21
■ Saving Entries .....	12-8	<b>Scan Barcode</b> .....	<b>12-22</b>
■ Opening Entries .....	12-9	■ Scanning Printed Barcodes .....	12-22
■ Editing/Deleting Entries .....	12-9	■ Scanning during Text Entry .....	12-23
<b>Alarm</b> .....	<b>12-10</b>	■ Using Scan Results .....	12-23
■ Setting Alarm .....	12-10	<b>Create QR Code</b> .....	<b>12-25</b>
■ Canceling & Reactivating Alarm .....	12-12	■ Creating QR Codes .....	12-25
■ Deleting Alarm .....	12-13	<b>Text Scanner</b> .....	<b>12-26</b>
<b>World Clock</b> .....	<b>12-13</b>	■ Scanning Text .....	12-26
<b>Calculator</b> .....	<b>12-14</b>	■ Scanning during Text Entry .....	12-27
<b>Voice Recorder</b> .....	<b>12-15</b>	<b>Scan Card</b> .....	<b>12-28</b>
■ Precautions .....	12-15	■ Saving Scan Results to Phone Book .....	12-28
■ Recording .....	12-15	<b>Phone Help</b> .....	<b>12-29</b>
■ Playback .....	12-16		
■ Recording Setting .....	12-16		
<b>Document Viewer</b> .....	<b>12-16</b>		
<b>Stopwatch</b> .....	<b>12-17</b>		



# Calendar




## Opening Calendar

- Open Calendar in Month View, 2Month View or Week View.
- Calendar appears in Month View by default.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (←→)

### 1 Select *Calendar* and press











Calendar of the current month opens.

- Press  **Switch** to toggle view.
- Press  to open Help (Key Assignments).
  - Press  to return.



Calendar Window  
(Month View)

## Key Assignments

Key	Month/2Month View	Week View
	Open the previous month <sup>1</sup>	Open the previous week
	Open the next month <sup>1</sup>	Open the next week
	Stamp <sup>2</sup>	-
	Set Colour (By Date)	
	Go to (Today)	
	Find (By Subject)	
	Go to (Enter Date)	
	Find (By Category)	
	Select the previous/next week	Select the previous/next time block
	Select date	

<sup>1</sup>In 2Month View, view changes by two months.

<sup>2</sup>Available in Month View.

### Default View

- To select initial view, open Calendar and follow these steps.
  - Press  **Options** ► **Select *Calendar Settings*** ►
  - Press  ► **Select *Default View*** ► Press  ►
  - **Select a type** ► Press 

## Customizing Calendar

**Set Colour** Set Calendar date color

**Default:** Sunday (and holiday): Red, Saturday: Blue, Others: Black

**Main Menu** ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (←→) ▶ Calendar

### By Days of the Week

Press **Options** ▶ Select **Calendar Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Set Colour** ▶ Press ▶ Select **By Week** ▶ Press ▶ Select a day ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

### By Date

Select a day ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Calendar Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Set Colour** ▶ Press ▶ Select **By Date** ▶ Press ▶ Select a color ▶ Press

- To use the color set for the day of the week, select **No Setting** ▶ Press
- To reset, press **Options** ▶ Select **Calendar Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Set Colour** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Reset Colour** ▶ Press ▶ Select an option ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

**Set Holiday**

Remove/restore preset holidays or save additional holidays

**Main Menu** ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (←→) ▶ Calendar ▶ Options (⊞) ▶ Calendar Settings ▶ Set Holiday

### Removing/Restoring Holidays

Use to select **Set My Holidays** or **Set Public Holidays** ▶ Select a holiday ▶ Press to check or uncheck

- To check or uncheck all, press **All** / **All**.
- Alternatively, press **Options** to select **Check All** or **Uncheck All**.

### Saving Additional Holidays

Use to select **Set My Holidays** ▶ Select **<empty>** ▶ Press ▶ Enter name ▶ Press ▶ Enter date ▶ Press ▶ Select frequency ▶ Press ▶ Press **Save**

### Editing Additional Holidays

Use to select **Set My Holidays** ▶ Select a holiday ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Edit** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Name:** ▶ Press ▶ Enter name ▶ Press ▶ Select **Date:** ▶ Press ▶ Enter date ▶ Press ▶ Select frequency ▶ Press ▶ Press **Save**

- Tip** ▶
- Preset holidays cannot be deleted or edited.
  - Save up to ten additional holidays.

**Stamp**

Create new entry quickly by entering a stamp

■ Available in Month View.

**Main Menu** ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (←→) ▶ Calendar

Select a date ▶ Press ▶ Select a stamp ▶ Press

## Saving Entries

Organize daily, weekly, monthly and yearly schedule.  
Save up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks (P.12-8).

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (T+) ▶ Calendar

### 1 Enter subject

- 1 Select a day and press
- 2 Select <Add New Entry> and press
- 3 Enter subject and press

- Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.

### 2 Enter start/end date/time

- 1 Enter start date/time and press 
  - For all-day entries, press  Check  Press  →  
Skip ahead to Step 4
  - Alarm is not available for all-day entries.
- 2 Select *End:* and press
- 3 Enter end date/time and press

### 3 Set Alarm

- 1 Select *Alarm:* and press
- 2 Select *Alarm Time:* and press
- 3 Select from *At Start Time* to *1 hour before* and press 
  - For custom Alarm Time, select *Other* → Press  →  
Enter date/time → Press
  - To set tone/video and duration, see P.12-5.
- 4 Press  OK

### 4 Enter details

- 1 Select *Description:* and press
- 2 Enter task details (up to 128 characters) and press 
  - For other items, see "Other Schedule Entry Items" below and "Calendar Options" on P.12-5.



New Entry Window

### 5 Press Save

#### ■ Other Schedule Entry Items

Category	Select <i>Category:</i> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select a Category → Press <input type="radio"/>
Location	Select <i>Location:</i> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Enter location (up to 16 characters) → Press <input type="radio"/>

Tip ▶  (Alarm set) or  (Alarm unset) appears on scheduled day. (Indicator disappears after scheduled time.)

## Calendar Options

Follow these steps after Step 4 on **P.12-4**. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

<p><b>Secret</b> Default: Off</p>	<p>Restrict access to entries</p> <p>Select <b>Secret</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Choose <b>On</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To cancel, select <b>Secret</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Choose <b>Off</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/></li> <li>Activate Show Secret Data (<b>P.9-23</b>) to open/edit Secret entries.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Assign Tone/Video</b> Default: Alert 1</p>	<p>Set Alarm Time tone/video</p> <p><b>Preset Sounds</b></p> <p>Select <b>Alarm</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <b>Assign Tone/Video</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <b>Preset Sounds</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a tone → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>OK</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> To play tones, select one and press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Play</b>.  <input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Stop</b> to stop.</p> <p><b>Data Folder Files</b></p> <p>Select <b>Alarm</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <b>Assign Tone/Video</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <b>Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a file → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>OK</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> To play files, select one and press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Play</b>.  <input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Stop</b> to stop.</p>
<p><b>Duration</b> Default: 10 seconds</p>	<p>Set how long Alarm operates</p> <p>Select <b>Alarm</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <b>Duration</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select time → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>OK</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> For custom Duration, select <b>Other</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter time → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>OK</b></p>

<p><b>Repeat</b> Default: Once Only</p>	<p>Assign schedule type (once only, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly) for each event</p> <p><b>Once Only Schedule</b></p> <p>Select <b>Repeat</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <b>Once Only</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><b>Repetitive Schedule</b></p> <p>Select <b>Repeat</b>: → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select from <b>Every Day to Every Year</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times) → Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start date and time are reflected in the items. For <b>Month</b>, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.</li> </ul>
---	--

## At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

- Alarm may not activate as set depending on other handset settings.
- While Alarm is activated, press  to open the entry.

## Stopping Alarm

Press  **Stop**,  or  **Stop**.

- Alternatively, press a Side Key.

- Tip** ▶
- Alarm Time will not be announced during a call or while recording video. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Alarm.
  - Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after the call ends.

## Alarm Volume, Vibration & Manner

### Alarm Settings

Select Alarm Volume, Vibration and Manner settings

Default Alarm Volume: Level 3, Vibration: Off, For Manner Mode: Do not Ring

### Main Menu

Tools → Tools 1 (←→) → Calendar → Options (☺)  
→ Alarm Settings

### Alarm Volume

Select **Alarm Volume**: → Press → Use to adjust level → Press

### Vibration

Select **Vibration**: → Press → Select **On, Link to Sound or Off** → Press

### For Manner Mode

Select **For Manner Mode**: → Press → Select **Ring or Do not Ring** → Press

■ For **Ring**, choose **Yes** → Press

## Opening Entries

Main Menu ▶ Tools → Tools 1 (←→) → Calendar

### 1 Select a date and press

- To search entries by subject, press **Options** → Select **Find** → Press → Select **By Subject** → Press → Enter search text → Press
- To search entries by Category, press **Options** → Select **Find** → Press → Select **By Category** → Press → Select a Category → Press
- To specify date, press **Options** → Select **Go to** → Press → Select **Enter Date** → Press → Enter date → Press
- To open current date, press **Options** → Select **Go to** → Press → Select **Today** → Press

### 2 Select an entry and press

### 3 Press to return

#### Memory Status

■ After Step 1 above, press **Options** → Select **Memory Status** → Press

#### Unlock Temporarily

■ For temporary access to Secret entries, open Calendar and follow these steps.  
Press **Options** → Select **Unlock Temporarily** → Press → Enter Handset Code → Press

## Editing/Deleting Entries

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (T1) ▶ Calendar

Edit	<p>Edit entries</p> <p>Select a date ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press [Options] ▶ Select <i>Edit</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select an item ▶ Press [OK] ▶ (Edit in the same manner as saving entries) ▶ Press [Y] ▶ Save</p>
This Appointment/ All This Day	<p>Delete one entry or all entries of the day</p> <p><b>One Entry</b></p> <p>Select a date ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press [Options] ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>This Appointment</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]</p> <p><b>All Entries of the Day</b></p> <p>Select a date ▶ Press [Options] ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>All This Day</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]</p>
All This Week/ Up to Last Week	<p>In Week View, delete all entries in the week or up to the end of the previous week</p> <p><b>Week</b></p> <p>Select a week ▶ Press [Options] ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>All This Week</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]</p> <p><b>Up to the End of Previous Week</b></p> <p>Select a week ▶ Press [Options] ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>Up to Last Week</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]</p>

All This Month/ Up to Last Month	<p>In Month View, delete all entries in the month or up to the end of the previous month</p> <p><b>Month</b></p> <p>Select a month ▶ Press [Options] ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>All This Month</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]</p> <p><b>Up to the End of Previous Month</b></p> <p>Select a month ▶ Press [Options] ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>Up to Last Month</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]</p>
All This 2Months	<p>Delete all entries in two months on Display</p> <p>Select a month ▶ Press [Options] ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>All This 2Months</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]</p>
All Appointments	<p>Delete all entries</p> <p>Press [Options] ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>All Appointments</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]</p>

### Deleting Repetitive Entries

■ A confirmation appears except for *All Appointments*. To delete, follow these steps.

Choose Yes ▶ Press [OK]

- To retain repetitive entries, choose *No* ▶ Press [OK]

# Tasks

Save event with deadlines.

- Check completed tasks (P.12-9).
- Save up to 300 entries between Tasks and Calendar (P.12-4).

## Saving Entries

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (⇧) ► Tasks

### 1 Enter subject

1 Select <Add New Entry> and press

2 Enter subject and press

- Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.

### 2 Enter due date/time and press

- To set no limit, press Check ► Press ► Skip ahead to Step 4

### 3 Set Alarm

1 Select *Alarm:* and press

2 Select *Alarm Time:* and press

3 Select from *At Due Time to 1 hour before* and press

- For custom Alarm Time, select *Other* ► Press ► Enter date/time ► Press

4 Press

### 4 Set priority

1 Select *Priority:* and press

2 Select *Normal, High or Low* and press

### 5 Enter details

1 Select *Description:* and press

2 Enter task details (up to 128 characters) and press

- For other items, see "Task Options" below.



New Entry Window

### 6 Press

#### ■ Task Options

Set these options after Step 5 above. For procedures, see P.12-5.

Assign Tone/Video	Set Alarm Time tone/video
Duration	Set how long Alarm operates
Secret	Restrict access to entries

#### ■ At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

- For details, see P.12-5.
- To set Alarm Settings, follow these steps then perform corresponding steps in "Alarm Settings" on P.12-6.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (⇧) ► Tasks ► Options (⊞) ► Alarm Settings

## Opening Entries

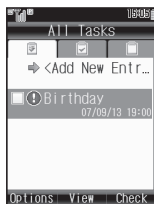
Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (⇧)

### 1 Select Tasks and press

- Use to open completed or uncompleted task list.

To search entries by subject, press   
**Options** ▶ Select **Find** ▶ Press ▶  
Select **By Subject** ▶ Press ▶ Enter  
search text ▶ Press

To search by due date, press   
**Options**  
▶ Select **Find** ▶ Press ▶ Select **By  
Due Date** ▶ Press ▶ Enter due date  
▶ Press



### 2 Select an entry and press

### 3 Press to return

#### Marking Completed Tasks

- After Step 1 above, select an unchecked entry () ▶  
Press **Check**
  - To cancel checks, select a checked entry () ▶  
Press **Uncheck**

#### Unlock Temporarily

- For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps.  
After Step 1 above, press **Options** ▶ Select **Unlock  
Temporarily** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

#### Memory Status

- After Step 1 above, press **Options** ▶ Select **Memory  
Status** ▶ Press

## Editing/Deleting Entries

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (⇧) ▶ Tasks

<b>Edit</b>	Edit entries Select an entry ▶ Press <b>Options</b> ▶ Select <b>Edit</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select an item ▶ Press  ▶ (Edit in the same manner as saving entries) ▶ Press <b>Save</b>
<b>Delete</b>	Delete one entry Select an entry ▶ Press <b>Options</b> ▶ Select <b>Delete</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>This Task</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Choose Yes</b> ▶ Press
<b>All Comp. Tasks</b>	Delete all completed tasks Press <b>Options</b> ▶ Select <b>Delete</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>All Comp. Tasks</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Choose Yes</b> ▶ Press
<b>All Tasks</b>	Delete all tasks Press <b>Options</b> ▶ Select <b>Delete</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>All Tasks</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Choose Yes</b> ▶ Press



# Alarm

## Setting Alarm

Set Alarm to sound at a specific time each day or on specific days of the week. Save up to 5 Alarm settings.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (T+) ▶ Alarms

**1** Select **-- : --** and press **OK**

**2** Enter time and press **OK**

- Alarm Options: right

**3** Select **Repeat:** and press **OK**

**4** **Daily**

**1** Select **Every Day (All)** and press **OK**

**Specified Day of the Week**

**1** Select **Selected Days** and press **OK**

- To select all, press **Options** ▶ Select **Check All** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Skip ahead to Step **4**

**2** Select a day of the week and press **OK**

The day is set and  appears.

- To cancel, highlight the selected day and press **OK**.

**3** Repeat Step **2** to select more

**4** Press **Yr** **OK** when finished

**One Time Alarm**

**1** Select **Once** and press **OK**



Alarm Settings

**5** Press **Yr** **Save**

Alarm is set.

- For more settings, start over from Step 1.

**6** Press **0** to exit

Handset returns to Standby and **Ⓜ** appears.

## Alarm Options

Follow these steps after Step 2 on the left. After each setting, Alarm settings window returns. Complete other settings.

<b>Subject</b> Default Alarm 1 - Alarm 5	Save entry name <b>Select Subject:</b> ▶ Press <b>OK</b> ▶ Enter name (up to nine characters) ▶ Press <b>OK</b> • Delete default names ( <b>Alarm 1 - Alarm 5</b> ) first.
<b>Assign Tone/Video</b> Default Alert 1	Set Alarm Time tone/video <b>Preset Sounds</b> <b>Select Assign Tone/Video:</b> ▶ Press <b>OK</b> ▶ <b>Select Preset Sounds</b> ▶ Press <b>OK</b> ▶ Select a tone ▶ Press <b>OK</b> ■ To play tones, select one and press <b>Play</b> . ■ Press <b>Stop</b> to stop. <b>Data Folder Files</b> <b>Select Assign Tone/Video:</b> ▶ Press <b>OK</b> ▶ <b>Select Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones</b> ▶ Press <b>OK</b> ▶ Select a file ▶ Press <b>OK</b> ■ To play files, select one and press <b>Play</b> . ■ Press <b>Stop</b> to stop.

<b>Custom Screen*</b>	<p>Set Alarm Time Custom Screen tone/video</p> <p>Select <b>Assign Tone/Video</b>: ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔</p> <p>Select <b>Custom Screen</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <p>■ To play files, select Custom Screen and press <input type="button" value="Play"/>.</p> <p>■ Press <input type="button" value="Stop"/> to stop.</p>
<b>Snooze</b> Default Off	<p>Set Alarm to activate at set intervals after initial Alarm Time</p> <p>Select <b>Snooze</b>: ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select an interval ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <p>■ For custom intervals, select <b>Other</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Enter interval ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p>
<b>Alarm Volume</b> Default Level 5	<p>Set volume from seven levels</p> <p>Select <b>Alarm Volume</b>: ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Use <input type="button" value="+"/> ➔ to adjust level ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p>
<b>Vibration</b> Default Off	<p>Set handset to vibrate at Alarm Time</p> <p>Select <b>Vibration</b>: ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>On</b>, <b>Link to Sound</b> or <b>Off</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <p>• Link to Sound: P.9-3</p>
<b>Duration</b> Default 10 seconds	<p>Set how long Alarm operates</p> <p>Select <b>Duration</b>: ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select duration ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <p>■ For custom Duration, select <b>Other</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Enter time ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p>

\*Selectable when Custom Screen (P.9-9) containing music files is active.

## Alarm Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ➔ Alarms

<b>For Manner Mode</b> Default Do not Ring	<p>Select Manner mode ringer setting</p> <p>Select <b>Settings</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>For Manner Mode</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>Ring</b> or <b>Do not Ring</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <p>■ For <b>Ring</b>, choose <b>Yes</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p>
<b>Link To World Clk</b> Default Off	<p>Set to activate Alarm based on World Clock (P.12-13) time</p> <p>Select <b>Settings</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>Link To World Clk</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Choose <b>On</b> or <b>Off</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p>

## At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings. Image appears if System Graphics (P.9-5) is set. However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.

### Stopping Alarm

Press **Stop**, or .

- Alternatively, press a Side Key.
- Alarm activates only when handset is on at Alarm Time.

### Snooze

- When Snooze is set, Alarm repeats at the set interval.
  - Accept incoming calls. End the call to reactivate Snooze.
  - If other Alarm Time arrives while Snoozing, the other Alarm is activated only after Snooze is canceled.
- To cancel Snooze, follow these steps while Alarm is activated or Snoozing.
 

Press **Stop**, or ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ **Press**

  - Snooze is canceled automatically 60 minutes after initial Alarm Time.

**Note** ➤ Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: P.9-15)

**Tip** ➤ Alarm Time will not be announced during a call or while recording video. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Alarm.

## Canceling & Reactivating Alarm

**Main Menu** ➤ **Tools** ➤ **Tools 1** () ➤ **Alarms**

**1** Select an entry and press **Options**

### 2 Canceling

**1** Select **Switch Off** and press

- disappears.
- Reactivate Alarm to use the same settings.

### Reactivating

**1** Select **Switch On** and press

- To change settings, select an entry ➔ **Press** ➔ **Edit settings**
  - For details, see procedure for saving entries.

## Deleting Alarm

Follow these steps first.

<b>Main Menu</b> ▶ <i>Tools</i> ▶ <i>Tools 1</i> (T-1) ▶ <i>Alarms</i>	
<b>Reset Alarm</b>	Delete Alarm settings one by one <b>Select an entry</b> ▶ Press <b>Options</b> ▶ <b>Select Reset Alarm</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Choose Yes</b> ▶ Press
<b>Clear All</b>	Delete all Alarm settings Press <b>Options</b> ▶ <b>Select Clear All</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Choose Yes</b> ▶ Press

## World Clock

Display local date/time (P.9-15) and the date/time of another area in the world.

- To set World Clock to appear in Standby, see P.9-6 "Clock/Calendar."
- Time Zone is set to **Tokyo** by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 1* (T-1)

### 1 Select **World Clock** and press

World Clock appears.

### 2 Press

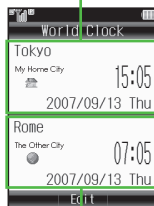
### 3 Select **Set Time Zone** and press

### 4 Use to specify an area and press

- To add Time Zone, press **Custom** ▶ Enter city name (up to 16 characters) ▶ Press ▶ Use to select + or - ▶ Press ▶ Enter time difference ▶ Press

### 5 Press to exit

Local Time Zone



World Time Zone

## Daylight Saving

- Activate Daylight Saving to advance the selected area's time by one hour. Follow these steps after Step 2.

**Select Daylight Saving** ▶ Press ▶ **Choose On or Off** ▶ Press


# Calculator

Use Calculator for basic arithmetic (up to 12 digits) and percentage calculation, or currency conversion (Money Converter).













Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰)

## 1 Select **Calculator** and press


Calculator opens.

- Alternatively, enter digits in Standby and press  to open Calculator.
- Use Keypad to enter digits, and the keys in the table below for calculation.

To copy the result, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Copy** ▶ Press 

<b>+</b> (Add)		<b>CM</b> (Clear Memory)	
<b>-</b> (Subtract)		<b>RM</b> (Recall Memory)	
<b>x</b> (Multiply)		<b>M+</b> (Add Memory)	 <sup>1</sup>
<b>÷</b> (Divide)		<b>.</b> (Decimal)	
<b>=</b> (Equal)		<b>+/-</b> (Switch)	
<b>C-CE</b> (Clear)		<b>%</b> (Percent)	 <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>While **0** appears, press to return to Tools 1 menu.

<sup>2</sup>Press  **Options** and select %.

## 2 Press to exit

### Money Converter

■ To change exchange rate, open Calculator and follow these steps.

Press  **Options** ▶ **Select Money Converter** ▶


Press  ▶ **Select Exchange Rate** ▶ Press  ▶

**Select Domestic or Foreign** ▶ Press  ▶ **Enter**

**rate** ▶ Press 

- Exchange rate is **1** for both conversions by default.

■ To convert foreign currencies, follow these steps.

**Enter amount of money and press**  **Options** ▶

**Select Money Converter** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select To**

**Domestic or To Foreign** ▶ Press 

- Conversion is based on the preset exchange rate.

**Tip** ▶

- Entered numbers, results and numbers saved in Memory are not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
- Clear Memory before starting Memory calculations.
- Numbers saved in Memory remain even if Calculator is closed, but are cleared when handset power is turned off.

# Voice Recorder

Use Microphone to record short voice memos and save files on handset or Memory Card; record and save longer recordings on Memory Card.

- Modes:

	Recording Time	Storage Media
<b>For Message</b>	Up to approx. three minutes (attachable to S! Mail)	Handset or Memory Card <sup>1</sup>
<b>Extended Voice</b>	Up to 99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds	Memory Card <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Specify storage media before recording, or set handset to ask each time; when set to ask, always record with Memory Card inserted.

<sup>2</sup>Insert Memory Card to record in Extended Voice mode.

- **For Message** is set by default.

## Precautions

- When battery is low, Voice Recorder does not activate. If battery runs low while recording in Extended Voice mode, **Battery low. Please connect to charger!** appears and Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Conversations during calls cannot be recorded.
- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.
- Avoid shocks to handset; may cause noise or skipping.
- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

## Recording

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 2 (←)

### 1 Select **Voice Recorder** and press







- To switch mode, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Record Time** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **For Message** or **Extended Voice** ▶ Press 
- To switch storage media, see P.12-16.

### 2 Press


Recording starts.

### 3 **For Message**

#### 1 Press to stop

- Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached.
- To play the recording, select **Playback** ▶ Press 
- Press  to pause.
- Press  to return.
- To start over without saving, press  ▶ Repeat from Step 2
- To send via S! Mail, select **Save and Send** ▶ Press  ▶ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4.)
- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press 

#### 2 Select **Save** and press

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press 

### **Extended Voice**

#### 1 Press to stop

Tip ▶ Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Voice Recorder stops/closes.

## Playback

Play sounds from Speaker, or use Headphones.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 2 (⏮) ► Voice Recorder

**1** Press  **Options**

**2** Select **Ring Songs/Tones** and press 

To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  **Options**



► Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ►

Press 

To delete files, see P.8-6.

**3** Select a file and press 

Playback starts.


Press  (up) or  (down) to adjust volume.

- Tip** ►
- Playback stops for incoming calls or Alarm.
  - A notification appears for incoming mail without interrupting playback.

## Recording Setting

Save  
Recording To

Select storage media for **For Message**

 Phone Memory

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 2 (⏮) ► Voice Recorder

Press  **Options** ► Select **Save Recording To** ► Press 

► Select **Phone Memory**, **Memory Card** or **Ask Each Time**

► Press 

- Set to **Ask Each Time** to select media after every recording.

## Document Viewer

Open PC documents on handset.

• Supported File Formats:

- PDF (.pdf)
- Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)
- Microsoft® Word (.doc)
- Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

• Open documents of up to 10 MB each. (Some documents may not open depending on content.)

• Some files may take time to open or may not appear correctly.

• On PCs, save documents to this Memory Card directory:

- PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Other Documents

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 2 (⏮) ► Document Viewer

**1** Select a file and press 

- Tip** ► Download files of up to 300 KB via Yahoo! Keitai or up to 500 KB via PC Site Browser.

## Key Assignments

	Zoom to view the whole page
	Rotate page 90 degrees counterclockwise (Press again to return.)
	Scroll up/down
	Scroll left/right
	View upper left portion of page
	View document in full screen
	View upper right portion of page
	Zoom out
	View page center
	Zoom in
	View lower left portion of page
	Jump to specified page (Enter page number → Press )
	View lower right portion of page
	See key assignments
	Open the next page
	Open the previous page
	Zoom to fit width
 (Long Press)	Magnify portions of document with Loupe <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To zoom in/out with Loupe, press  <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Zoom In</b> or <b>Zoom Out</b> → Press </li> </ul>

## Stopwatch

Record elapsed time for up to 24 hours (23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds) in 0.1-second increments.

- Save times (including the last four lap times) to handset Notepad (**P.3-10**).
- Stopwatch is disabled when battery is low. Stopwatch ends when battery runs low.

**Main Menu** ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 2 (T)** ▶ **Stopwatch**

### 1 Press

Stopwatch starts.

To record Lap times, press **LAP**.

### 2 Press to stop

Press to resume.

To save the records to Notepad, press **Options** → Select **Save to Notepad** → Press

To clear the records, press **Options** → Select **Reset** → Press

### 3 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

- Tip** ▶
- Records are deleted when Stopwatch is canceled. Save records to Notepad.
  - Stopwatch setting is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
  - Alarm is disabled while Stopwatch window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.



# Countdown Timer

Set Countdown Timer up to 60 minutes in 1-second increments. Tone sounds when set time elapses.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 2* (T) ▶ *Countdown Timer*

## 1 Enter time (00:01 - 60:00) and press

To change time, press **Edit** ▶ Enter time ▶ Press

## 2 Press

Countdown starts.

## 3 Press to stop countdown

Press to resume.

To reset, stop countdown and press **Reset**.

## 4 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

## When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds at General Volume setting (**P.9-14** "Volume").

- In Manner mode, Manner settings take priority.
- When the set timer time has elapsed during a call, tone sounds after is pressed to end the call.

### Stopping Tone Instantly

Press **Stop** or a Side Key.

- Tone stops automatically after 60 seconds.

**Note** ▶ Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: **P.9-15**)

**Tip** ▶

- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
- Alarm is disabled while Countdown Timer window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

# Hour Minder

Activate the hourly time signal; select active hours.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 2* (⌂) ▶ *Hour Minder*

- 1 Select Switch On/Off and press**
- 2 Choose On and press**
- 3 Select Select Time and press**
- 4 Select an hour and press**  **Check / Uncheck**
  - All hours are selected by default.
  - To check or uncheck all, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Check All** or **Uncheck All** ▶ Press
- 5 Press**  **OK**
- 6 Press**  **Save**
- 7 Press**  **to exit**

Handset returns to Standby and appears.

## Hour Minder Options

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 2* (⌂) ▶ *Hour Minder* ▶ *Advanced*

<b>Assign Tone/ Video</b> Default Sound Effect 19	Set Hour Minder Time tone/video <b>Preset Sounds</b> Select <b>Assign Tone/Video</b> : ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <b>Preset Sounds</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select a tone</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ■ To play tones, select one and press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Play</b> . ■ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Stop</b> to stop. <b>Data Folder Files</b> Select <b>Assign Tone/Video</b> : ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <b>Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select a file</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ■ To play files, select one and press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Play</b> . ■ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Stop</b> to stop.
<b>Custom Screen*</b>	Set Hour Minder Time Custom Screen tone/video Select <b>Assign Tone/Video</b> : ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <b>Custom Screen</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ■ To play files, select Custom Screen and press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Play</b> . ■ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Stop</b> to stop.

\*Selectable when Custom Screen (P.9-9) containing music files is active.

<b>Volume</b> Default: Level 3	Set volume from seven levels Select <b>Volume</b> : ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Use <input type="button" value="+"/> to adjust level ➔ Press <input type="radio"/>
<b>Vibration</b> Default: Off	Set handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time Select <b>Vibration</b> : ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>On</b> , <b>Link to Sound</b> or <b>Off</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> • Link to Sound: <b>P.9-3</b>
<b>Duration</b> Default: 10 seconds	Set how long Hour Minder operates <b>Select Duration</b> : ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ <b>Select duration</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> <input type="checkbox"/> For custom Duration, select <b>Other</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Enter time ➔ Press <input type="radio"/>
<b>For Manner Mode</b> Default: Do not Ring	Select Manner mode ringer setting <b>Select For Manner Mode</b> : ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ <b>Select Ring or Do not Ring</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> <input type="checkbox"/> For <b>Ring</b> , choose <b>Yes</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/>
<b>Link To World Clk</b> Default: Off	Set to activate Hour Minder based on World Clock ( <b>P.12-13</b> ) time <b>Select Link To World Clk</b> : ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ <b>Choose On or Off</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/>

## At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.

### Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press  or a Side Key.
  - Tone stops automatically after set duration (left).

- Note** ➤
- Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: **P.9-15**)
  - Hour Minder is disabled when:
    - Handset is out of Standby
    - Alarm is scheduled at the same time

# Expenses Memo

Use Expenses Memo to add expenses, such as travel expenses. Enter up to 30 entries (up to 29,999,999.70 yen in total, 999,999.99 yen per entry).

## Entering Expenses

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (≡) ▶ Expenses Memo ▶ Add New Expense

1 Enter amount and press

2 Select a Category and press

- To enter custom Category name, select **Other** ▶ Press ▶ Enter name ▶ Press

In Standby

Enter amount ▶ Press ▶ Press ▶ Select a Category ▶ Press

Edit Category Rename Categories

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (≡) ▶ Expenses Memo ▶ Edit Category

Select a Category ▶ Press ▶ Edit ▶ Press

- Enter up to 14 characters.

## Checking Entries

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (≡) ▶ Expenses Memo

1 Select **Totals** and press

Entry list appears.

- Use to scroll entries.

2 Press to return

Totals	
1/07/09/13 12:00	
Dining	1980
2/07/09/13 15:05	
Miscell...	5040
Total	7020
Options Change	

## Editing/Deleting Entries


Follow these steps after Step 1 above.

Change Category	Select an entry ▶ Press  ▶ Select a Category ▶ Press
Change Amount	Select an entry ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>Change Amount</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Edit ▶ Press
Delete Item	Select an entry ▶ Press  ▶ Select <b>Delete Item</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press
Delete All	Press  ▶ Select <b>Delete All</b> ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press  ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press

# Scan Barcode

Use mobile camera to scan printed barcodes (UPC/JAN or QR Codes) or read barcode images saved in Data Folder.

- In Continuous mode, scan up to 50 UPC (JAN) or 16 QR Codes at one time. In some cases, continuous scans may be disrupted depending on the codes.
- Zoom is not available.

- Note** ▶
- Scan may fail if:
    - The barcode is dirty or unclear
    - The barcode is scanned under inadequate light
    - Multiple barcodes are captured at one time
  - Barcode/Scan menu will not open if music is playing; when **Stop music?** appears, choose **Yes** and press  to proceed.

- Tip** ▶
- Adjust Anti-flicker setting to reduce Display flicker.
  - A UPC (Universal Product Code) or JAN (Japanese Article Number) is a series of varying width vertical lines (bars) and spaces. Bars and spaces together are elements, combinations of which represent different numbers. Handset cannot read other one-dimensional barcodes (ITF Code, Code39, Codabar/NW-7, etc.).
  - A QR (Quick Response) Code is a matrix symbology consisting of an array of nominally square cells, which allows omni-directional reading of up to 4,296 alphanumerics and byte data, as well as kanji and kana.

## Scanning Printed Barcodes

Main Menu

▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (≡) ▶ Barcode/Scan ▶ Scan Barcode

### 1 Frame barcode in the center of Display

- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode.
- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).





Focus Adjustment Bar


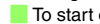


### 2 Press

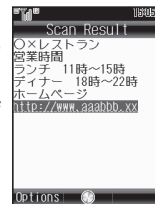
Mobile camera scans the barcode.

- If recognition takes time, move handset slowly and adjust the distance from barcode.

 Press  **Cancel** to stop scan ▶ Start over from Step 1

### 3 Barcode recognition tone sounds and scan results appear

-  Using Scan Results: **P.12-23**
-  To start over, press  ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press  ▶ Repeat from Step 1



## Scan Operations

<b>Focus</b>	Press <b>3</b> to toggle mode
<b>Focus Lock</b>	Press <b>⏏</b>
<b>Exposure</b>	Use <b>☰</b> to adjust brightness
<b>Anti-flicker</b>	Press <b>☰ Options</b> → Select <b>Anti-flicker</b> → Press <b>●</b> → Select <b>Mode1: 50Hz</b> or <b>Mode2: 60Hz</b> → Press <b>●</b>
<b>Help</b>	Press <b>0</b> (Press <b>●</b> to return.)

### Continuous Mode

- After scanning, **Scan completed. Scan new?** appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

### Split Data

- After scanning, **Split data. Scan next QR code?** appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
  - Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.
  - The scanning status appears on the first line of Display. For example, **1/4** indicates that 1 of 4 codes has been scanned.

## Scanning during Text Entry

### Scan Code

Scan barcodes during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **☰ Options** → Select **Scan** → Press **●** → Select **Scan Code** → Press **●** → Frame barcode in the center of Display → Press **●** → Press **●**

- To use a part of text, press **☰ Cut** → Select the first character of text → Press **●** → Select the end point → Press **●**

**Note** → Scanning during text entry is not available during calls or when an S! Application is active.

## Using Scan Results

<b>Place Calls<sup>1</sup></b>	Select a number starting with <b>TEL:</b> <sup>2</sup> → Press <b>●</b> → The number appears → Press <b>☎</b>
<b>Send Mail<sup>3</sup></b>	Select a mail address including <b>@</b> → Press <b>●</b> → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 6 on P.14-4.)
<b>Quote &amp; Send Mail</b>	Press <b>☰ Options</b> → Select <b>Send Message</b> → Press <b>●</b> → Press <b>●</b> → Select <b>S! Mail</b> or <b>SMS</b> <sup>4</sup> → Press <b>●</b> → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.)
<b>Save to Phone Book<sup>1,3</sup></b>	Select a number starting with <b>TEL:</b> <sup>2</sup> or mail address including <b>@</b> → Press <b>☰ Options</b> → Select <b>Save to Ph.Book</b> → Press <b>●</b> → Perform Step 4 on P.4-7
<b>Access Internet Sites<sup>5</sup></b>	Select a URL starting with <b>http://</b> or <b>rtsp://</b> → Press <b>●</b>
<b>Save to Data Folder (Images &amp; Melodies)</b>	Select an image or melody file → Press <b>☰ Options</b> → Select <b>To Data Folder</b> → Press <b>●</b>
<b>Saving</b>	Press <b>☰ Options</b> → Select <b>Save</b> → Press <b>●</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Save up to 10 items. To open saved items, see P.12-24 "Scanned Results."</li> </ul>

<sup>1</sup> Available when text is in **TEL:\*** format.

<sup>2</sup> Text strings of 10 to 32 digits starting with 0 are recognized as phone numbers.

<sup>3</sup> Available when text is in **\*@\*** format.

<sup>4</sup> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if text exceeds the SMS character limit.

<sup>5</sup> Available when text is in **http://\*** or **rtsp://\*** format.

\* represents one or more alphanumeric.

<b>Use for System Graphics</b>	Select an image → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>As System</b> → Press  → Select an item → Press  → Press
<b>Copy Text</b>	<b>Text</b> Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Copy</b> → Press  → Select the first character of text → Press  → Select the end point → Press
	<b>URL<sup>1</sup></b> Select a URL starting with <b>http://</b> or <b>rtsp://</b> → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Copy URL</b> → Press
	<b>Mail Address<sup>2</sup></b> Select a mail address including @ → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Copy Address</b> → Press
	<b>Phone Number<sup>3</sup></b> Select a number starting with <b>TEL:<sup>4</sup></b> → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Copy Telephone</b> → Press
<b>Wallpaper</b>	Select an image → Press <b>Options</b> → Perform from Step 3 in "Wallpaper" on <b>P.8-7</b>
<b>Open Images or Play Melodies</b>	Select an image or melody file → Press
<b>Open Properties</b>	Select an image or melody file → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Details</b> → Press

<sup>1</sup> Available when text is in **http://\*** or **rtsp://\*** format.

<sup>2</sup> Available when text is in **\*@\*** format.

<sup>3</sup> Available when text is in **TEL:\*** format.

<sup>4</sup> Text strings of 10 to 32 digits starting with 0 are recognized as phone numbers.

\* represents one or more alphanumeric.

#### MEMORY: or MAILTO:

- When **MEMORY:** or **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book Entry Details or SMS/S! Mail messages. However, text after an invalid character is not underlined and is not copied.

**Open Barcode** Read saved barcode images in Data Folder

**Main Menu** ▶ **Tools** → **Tools 3** (↔) → **Barcode/Scan** → **Open Barcode**

**Select a barcode image** → Press

■ Split Data: **P.12-23**

- When scanning fails, press → Select next barcode image manually → Press

**Note** ▶ Some barcodes may be invalid.

**Scanned Results** Open files saved in Scanned Results

**Main Menu** ▶ **Tools** → **Tools 3** (↔) → **Barcode/Scan** → **Scanned Results**

**Select a file** → Press

■ To open properties, select a file → Press **Options** → Select **Details** → Press

■ Press to return.

■ To rename files, select one → Press **Options** → Select **Rename** → Press → Enter name → Press

■ To delete files, select one → Press **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

- Opened results cannot be re-saved.
- Some files may not open.

# Create QR Code

Create QR Codes from entered text, Phone Book, Pictures, Ring Songs-Tones, Notepad or Other Documents.

- Save up to the equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji per QR Code.
- Large items are divided into maximum of 16 QR Codes.
- Created QR Codes are saved to Data Folder (Pictures). To open them, see **P.8-3**.

## Creating QR Codes

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ **Tools 3** (☰) ▶ Barcode/Scan ▶ Create QR Code

- 1 Select Phone Book, Text Input or Data Folder and press**
- 2 Select an entry, enter text or select a file and press**   
Created QR Code appears.
- 3 Press**   
QR Code is saved.

### Switching Storage Media

- While created QR Code appears, press  **Options** ▶  
Select **Save To** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **Phone or Memory Card** ▶ Press

### Attaching to S! Mail

- While created QR Code appears, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Send As** ▶ Press  ▶ Perform from **Step 3 on P.14-4**

**Tip** ▶ QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.



# Text Scanner

Use mobile camera to scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or roman letters).

- Scan up to 256 characters continuously.
- Scan up to 60 single-byte characters within 3 lines. Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Some symbols may not be read.
- Zoom is not available.

**Note** ▶

- Barcode/Scan menu will not open if music is playing; when **Stop music?** appears, choose **Yes** and press  to proceed.
- Text Scanner will not activate if an S! Application is active.

**Tip** ▶

- Text mode is set to **Auto** each time Text Scanner is activated. Change the mode if text is distorted in **Auto** (such as white text in black background).
- Adjust Anti-flicker setting to reduce Display flicker.

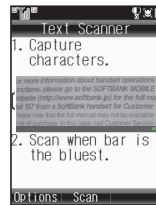
## Scanning Text

Main Menu

▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (☰) ▶ Barcode/Scan ▶ Scan Text

### 1 Frame text on Display

- Adjust to frame text in [ ]. Letters at the ends may be distorted.
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from text.
- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

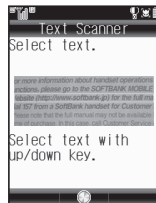


Focus Adjustment Bar

### 2 Press

Text Scanner reads the text.

- ▶ Press  to stop scan ▶ Start over from Step 1



### 3 Use to select a line and press

- Text Scanner reads one line per scan.

## 4 Scan results appear

Handset automatically detects text type; if incorrect, change mode.

- If text exceeds limit, results appear with overage truncated.
- To change mode, press **Options** ➔ Select **Change Mode**  
➔ Press ➔ Select a type ➔ Press (Scan results and alternatives list change accordingly.)
- To edit, press **Options** ➔ Select **Select/Edit** ➔ Press   
➔ Use to select the character to edit ➔ Use to select an alternative from the list or enter the correction directly from Keypad ➔ Press
- To start over, press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press ➔ Repeat from Step 1

## 5 Press

- Using Scan Results: P.12-23

### ■ Scan Operations

Focus	Press  to toggle mode
Focus Lock	Press
Reversed Text	Press <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <b>Reversed Text</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Auto</b> , <b>Normal</b> or <b>Reversed</b> ➔ Press
Exposure	Use  to adjust brightness
Anti-flicker	Press <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <b>Anti-flicker</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select <b>Mode1: 50Hz</b> or <b>Mode2: 60Hz</b> ➔ Press
Help	Press (Press  to return.)

### Scanning More Text

- After Step 5, press **Options** ➔ Select **Continue Part** or **Scan More** ➔ Press
  - Select **Continue Part** to enter additional text; select **Scan More** to enter text after a line break.
  - **Continue Part** and **Scan More** are disabled once 256 characters have been scanned.

### Scanning during Text Entry

#### Text Scanner

Scan text during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

- In a text entry window, press **Options** ➔ Select **Scan**  
➔ Press ➔ Select **Text Scanner** ➔ Press ➔  
**Frame text in the center of Display** ➔ Press ➔  
**Select a line** ➔ Press ➔ Press

# Scan Card

Use mobile camera to scan Japanese business cards; save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.  
Zoom is not available.

- Note** ▶
- Scan fails if the business card is:
    - Printed in light-colored text on a dark background
    - Handwritten, or printed in casual/decorative fonts
    - Decorated with a background pattern
    - Printed in non-Japanese text
    - Designed with both vertical and horizontal text
  - Scan may fail if the business card is:
    - Printed in light-colored text on a light background
    - Printed in italics or extremely small fonts
    - Decorated with a logo or logo-like text
    - Printed on a glossy paper or other material
    - Dirty or folded
  - Barcode/Scan menu will not open if music is playing; when **Stop music?** appears, choose **Yes** and press  to proceed.
  - Scan Name Card is not available if an S! Application is active.

**Tip** ▶ Adjust Anti-flicker setting to reduce Display flicker.

## Saving Scan Results to Phone Book

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (ト) ▶ Barcode/Scan ▶ Scan Card

### 1 Frame card on Display and press

- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from card.



### 2 Press

Scanner reads the card.

- Press  to stop scan ▶ Start over from Step 1

### 3 Scan results appear

Handset automatically classifies and save results to corresponding Phone Book entry items.

- Quote & Send Mail: **P.12-23**, Copy Text: **P.12-24**

### 4 Press

- If text exceeds Phone Book entry item character limit, confirmation appears.

### 5 Press

## Scan Operations

<b>Focus</b>	Press <b>3</b> to toggle mode
<b>Focus Lock</b>	Press <b>FN</b>
<b>Exposure</b>	Use <b>+</b> to adjust brightness
<b>Anti-flicker</b>	Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Anti-flicker</b> → Press <b>●</b> → Select <b>Mode1: 50Hz</b> or <b>Mode2: 60Hz</b> → Press <b>●</b>
<b>Help</b>	Press <b>0</b> (Press <b>●</b> to return.)

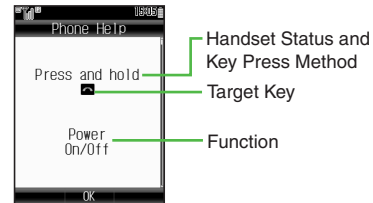
## Phone Help

Learn when/how to use Keypad functions/shortcuts.  
Most Phone Help functions are inaccessible from menu items.

**Main Menu** ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 3** (☰)

### 1 Select **Phone Help** and press **●**

Phone Help window opens.



### 2 Press **0** to toggle guides

- Alternatively, press **#** or **\***.

### 3 Press **●** to return

# 13

## Optional Services

<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>13-2</b>
■ Checking Service Status .....	13-2
<b>Call Forwarding</b> .....	<b>13-3</b>
<b>Voicemail</b> .....	<b>13-4</b>
■ Missed Call Notification .....	13-5
<b>Call Waiting</b> .....	<b>13-5</b>
<b>Conference Call</b> .....	<b>13-6</b>
<b>Call Barring</b> .....	<b>13-6</b>
■ Restricting Outgoing Calls .....	13-7
■ Restricting Incoming Calls .....	13-7
■ Changing Network Password .....	13-7
■ Rejecting a Call .....	13-8
<b>Caller ID</b> .....	<b>13-8</b>

# Overview

- When **out** appears, access services from a touch-tone landline.
- For more about optional services, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

<b>Call Forwarding</b>	When you know you won't be able to receive calls made to handset, automatically divert incoming calls to another phone number (P.13-3)
<b>Voicemail</b>	Set handset to forward all or all unanswered calls to Voicemail Center. Access caller messages from handset in service area or from a touch-tone phone anywhere (P.13-4). <b>■ Missed Call Notification</b> Records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.
<b>Call Waiting*</b>	Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls when the line is already engaged. After the tone, place the current call on hold and answer the second, or alternate between calls (P.13-5).
<b>Conference Call*</b>	Open a second line while the first is engaged. Switch back and forth between two lines or talk on both simultaneously. Add other parties to an existing conversation and talk on up to five lines simultaneously (P.13-6).
<b>Call Barring</b>	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions (P.13-6)
<b>Caller ID</b>	Show or hide your own number when placing calls (P.13-8)

\*An additional contract is required.

## Checking Service Status

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎)

<b>Call Forwarding</b>	Select <b>Voicemail/Divert</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Status</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>
<b>Voicemail</b>	<input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="radio"/> to return.
<b>Call Waiting</b>	Select <b>Call Waiting</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Status</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="radio"/> to return.
<b>Call Barring</b>	Select <b>Call Barring</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Outgoing Calls or Incoming Calls</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>
	▶ Select restriction ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Status</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="radio"/> to return.
<b>Caller ID</b>	Select <b>Show My Number</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Select <b>Status</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="radio"/> to return.

# Call Forwarding

Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

**Note** ▶ **Phone Numbers Beginning with the Following Numbers Cannot be Saved:**

- **1** (Public Service Numbers: 110, 119, 118, etc.)
- **00** (International call numbers: 001, 0041, etc.)
- **0120** (Toll-free numbers)
- **0990** (Fee-based services: Dial Q2, etc.)

**Tip** ▶ Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Call Forwarding together with Answer Phone (P.2-8).

## Call Forwarding

Initiate Call Forwarding

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ▶ Voicemail/Divert ▶ Diverts

## Direct Entry

Select a call type ▶ Press  ▶ Select *Always or No Answer* ▶ Press  ▶ Select *Enter Number* ▶ Press  ▶ Enter a phone number ▶ Press

■ For *No Answer*, select ring time ▶ Press

- Include area code for landline numbers.

## Phone Book

Select a call type ▶ Press  ▶ Select *Always or No Answer* ▶ Press  ▶ Select *Phone Book* ▶ Press  ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press  ▶ Press

■ For *No Answer*, select ring time ▶ Press

■ For entries with multiple numbers, select an entry ▶ Press  ▶ Select a number ▶ Press  ▶ Press

## Call Forwarding Records

Select a call type ▶ Press  ▶ Select *Always or No Answer* ▶ Press  ▶ Select a record ▶ Press  ▶ Press

■ For *No Answer*, select ring time ▶ Press

## Cancel All

Cancel Call Forwarding

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ▶ Voicemail/Divert

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press  ▶ Choose *Yes* ▶ Press

- Cancel All also cancels Voicemail.

# Voicemail

- Calls are diverted to Voicemail Center via Call Forwarding function; Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.
- For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- Activate Missed Call Notification (P.13-5) for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range.

**Tip** ▶ Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Voicemail together with Answer Phone (P.2-8).

**Voicemail** Initiate Voicemail

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Voicemail/Divert  
▶ Voicemail ▶ Activate

**Select Always or No Answer** ▶ Press

■ For **No Answer**, select ring time ▶ Press

**Cancel All** Cancel Voicemail

**Main Menu** ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Voicemail/Divert

**Select Cancel All** ▶ Press  ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press


- Cancel All also cancels Call Forwarding.

**Call Voicemail** Check Voicemail messages

**Main Menu** ▶ Phone

**Select Call Voicemail** ▶ Press

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

**Tip** ▶  appears when new messages are recorded, and disappears after they are checked from handset.



## Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

Activate/  
Cancel

Activate or cancel Missed Call Notification

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎)

Select **out** **Missed Calls** ► Press  ► Press

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations after handset connects to the Network.

### Retrieving Missed Call Notification Records

- Missed Call Notification records are stored at Voicemail Center. When handset is turned on or comes into range, Information window (P.2-7) appears with Missed Call records.
  - Information window may take some time to open.

## Call Waiting

An additional contract is required.

Call Waiting  
On/Off

Activate or cancel Call Waiting

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Call Waiting

Choose **On or Off** ► Press

Incoming Calls Place Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2

When a tone sounds during a call, press

- Press  to switch between two lines.
- Handset does not ring or vibrate for incoming calls while a line is engaged. A tone sounds from Earpiece.

### While Someone is on Hold

- Press  to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.
- When Line 1 ends while Line 2 is on hold, short beeps sound.  
To re-engage the party on hold:  
Press  **Options** ► Select **Retrieve** ► Press

### When Voicemail or Call Forwarding is Active

- Unanswered calls are transferred to Voicemail Center or the forwarding number.
  - When active service is set to **Always** Call Waiting is disabled.

## Conference Call

An additional contract is required.

### Dial New Number

Open another line during a call

Enter a phone number during a call ➔ Press

- Line 1 is placed on hold.
- Press to select a number from Phone Book or press to select from Call Log.

### Swap Calls

Switch between two open lines

During a call, press

- The line switches. The other line is placed on hold.
- While Someone is on Hold: **P.13-5**

### Conference Call

Use up to five lines simultaneously

Press **Options** while switching between two lines ➔

Select **Multi Party** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Conference All** ➔ Press

- To switch to private conference during Conference Call, select a number/name ➔ Press ➔ Select **Private** ➔ Press
  - The other lines are placed on hold.
- To switch back to Conference Call during private conference or after opening a new line, press **Options** ➔ Select **Multi Party** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Conference All** ➔ Press

### While Multiple Lines are Open

- To disconnect all lines, press , or close Slider with Close To (**P.9-26**) set to **End Call**.
- When some lines end, other lines remain connected.

## Call Barring

### Outgoing Calls & Incoming Calls

Restrict incoming/outgoing calls or SMS messages.

Following restrictions are available:

Outgoing Calls	All Outgoing Calls	Restrict all non-emergency calls
	Bar Int'l Call <sup>1</sup>	Restrict all international calls
	Local & Home Only <sup>2</sup>	Restrict all international calls except to Japan
Incoming Calls	All Incoming Calls	Reject all calls
	Bar if Abroad	Reject calls when outside Japan

<sup>1</sup>Example: While in the UK, place domestic calls only.

<sup>2</sup>Example: While in the UK, place calls domestically or to Japan.

### Rejected Numbers

Restrict incoming calls by number/Caller ID availability.

<b>Black List</b>	Reject calls from designated numbers
<b>Unknown</b>	Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book
<b>Withheld</b>	Reject calls without Caller ID
<b>Payphone</b>	Reject calls from public phones
<b>Unavailable</b>	Reject calls with undisplayable Caller ID

## Restricting Outgoing Calls

### Set/Cancel Restriction

Set or cancel restriction of outgoing calls

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Outgoing Calls

### Each Restriction

Select restriction ▶ Press  ▶ Choose *On (set)* or *Off* ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press

### Canceling All Restrictions

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press

### Note ▶

If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.19-37).

### Tip ▶

- Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when outgoing calls are restricted. See P.2-20.
- If call is attempted when Call Barring is active, *Call barred*. appears. It may take longer to appear in some areas; check Call Barring settings if calls cannot be placed.

## Restricting Incoming Calls

### Set/Cancel Restriction

Set or cancel restriction of incoming calls

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Incoming Calls

### Each Restriction

Select restriction ▶ Press  ▶ Choose *On (set)* or *Off* ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press

### Canceling All Restrictions

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press

## Changing Network Password

### Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Change NW Password

- 1 Enter current Network Password and press
- 2 Enter new Network Password and press
- 3 Re-enter new Network Password and press

## Rejecting a Call

### Restricting by Number

Designate numbers to reject then set Switch On/Off to **On**.

Set Reject  
Number

Designate phone numbers to reject

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶  
Rejected Numbers ▶ Black List ▶ Set Reject Number

### Adding Numbers

Select **<empty>** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter a number ▶  
Press

- To select from Phone Book, select **<empty>** ▶ Press  Options  
▶ Select **Ph.Book List** ▶ Press  ▶ Select an entry ▶  
Press

- For entries with multiple numbers, select one ▶ Press
- To select from Call Log, select **<empty>** ▶ Press  Options  
▶ Select **From Call Log** ▶ Press  ▶ Use  to select a  
type ▶ Select a record ▶ Press

### Editing Numbers

Select an entry ▶ Press  ▶ Edit the number ▶  
Press

### Deleting Numbers

Select an entry ▶ Press  Options ▶ Select **Delete** ▶  
Press  ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Switch On/Off

Reject calls from designated numbers

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶  
Rejected Numbers ▶ Black List ▶ Switch On/Off

Choose **On (reject)** or **Off** ▶ Press

## Restricting by Caller ID Availability

Unknown

Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone  
Book

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶  
Rejected Numbers ▶ Unknown

Choose **On (reject)** or **Off** ▶ Press

Rejected

Numbers

Reject calls without Caller ID, calls from public  
phones or calls with undisplayable Caller ID

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶  
Rejected Numbers

Select **Withheld, Payphone or Unavailable** ▶ Press   
▶ Choose **On (reject)** or **Off** ▶ Press

## Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when placing calls.

Show My

Number

Send or block Caller ID

Default On

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Show My Number

Choose **On (send)** or **Off** ▶ Press

<b>Basics</b> .....	<b>14-2</b>		
■ Message Types .....	14-2	■ Forwarding Messages .....	14-24
■ Customizing Handset Address .....	14-2	■ Protecting Messages .....	14-24
<b>Sending Text Messages</b> .....	<b>14-3</b>	■ Deleting Messages .....	14-25
■ Character Entry Limits .....	14-3	■ Canceling Sent Messages .....	14-25
■ Mail Composition Overview .....	14-3	■ Sending from Drafts .....	14-26
■ Sending S! Mail .....	14-4	■ Sending from Sent/Unsent Messages .....	14-26
■ Sending SMS Mail .....	14-11	■ Linked Info .....	14-26
■ Messaging Settings .....	14-11	■ Saving Attachments to Data Folder .....	14-27
■ Setting Send Reservation .....	14-13	■ Using Attachments .....	14-28
■ Speed Mail .....	14-13	<b>My Folders</b> .....	<b>14-28</b>
■ Auto Resend .....	14-14	■ Adding/Deleting My Folders .....	14-28
■ Signature .....	14-14	■ Setting Auto Sort Keys .....	14-29
<b>Incoming Text Messages</b> .....	<b>14-15</b>	■ Moving Messages Manually .....	14-29
■ Opening New Messages .....	14-15	■ Secret Folder .....	14-30
■ Window Description .....	14-17	<b>Chat Folder</b> .....	<b>14-30</b>
■ Changing Message List View .....	14-18	■ Saving Members .....	14-30
■ Server Mail .....	14-18	■ Opening Chat Folders .....	14-31
<b>Using Messages</b> .....	<b>14-20</b>	<b>Settings</b> .....	<b>14-32</b>
■ Messaging Folders .....	14-20	■ General Settings .....	14-32
■ Checking Messages .....	14-21	■ S! Mail Settings .....	14-33
■ Replying to Messages .....	14-23	■ SMS Settings .....	14-34

# Basics

## Message Types

Use SMS and S! Mail for messaging.

### SMS

Exchange short text messages of up to 160 alphanumeric with SoftBank handsets.

### S! Mail

Exchange text messages of up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible SoftBank handsets, other mobiles and PCs, etc. Attach image/sound files.

#### Arrange Mail

- Select font color, font size, background color; insert images, background sound, and more (P.14-8).

#### Feeling Mail

- Set emotion to messages; recipient handset responds accordingly (P.14-10, P.14-16).

## Available Entry Items

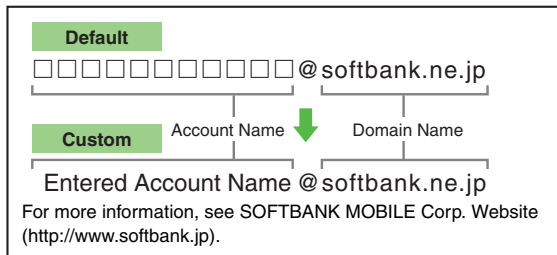
	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

\*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- Tip** ▶
- An additional contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
  - For more about messaging, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

## Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumeric before @ of the default handset mail address.



**Default**

□ □ □ □ □ □ □ @ softbank.ne.jp

**Custom**      Account Name      ↓      Domain Name

Entered Account Name @ softbank.ne.jp

For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

- Handset must connect to the Internet to customize handset address.
- Customizing handset mail address helps reduce spam.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings*

**1** Select **Address Settings** and press

**2** Select **English** and press

- Follow onscreen instructions.

**Tip** ▶ Alternatively, customize handset address via Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu. (Click **設定・申込**, then **English**, then **Messaging Settings**.)

### When Handset Address is Changed

- New handset address confirmation from SoftBank arrives. To update My Details automatically, follow these steps.
  - Select the message** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press**
  - My Details cannot be updated when five mail addresses are already saved.

# Sending Text Messages

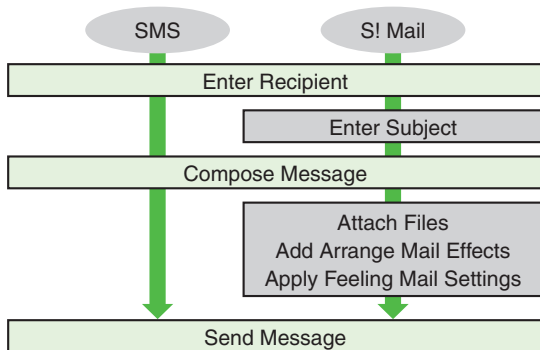
## Character Entry Limits

SMS	Message	160 single-byte alphanumerics*
S! Mail	Subject	512 single-byte alphanumerics
	Message	Approximately 30,000 single-byte alphanumerics

\*When Char-code (P.14-34) is set to **GSM 7bit**.

- S! Mail message text character limit differs by attachment size.
- Approximate mail size appears in Mail Composition window.

## Mail Composition Overview



## Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

## When Recipient Handset is Off or Out-of-Range

- Messages are stored in Server Mail Box, and delivered when recipient handset detects signal.

## Delivery Failure

- Information window opens (ⓘ appears).

**To send unsent messages, select *Sending failure* →**

**Press  → Select a message → Press**

- If failed again, Unsent Messages folder opens. To use unsent messages, see P.14-26 "Sending from Sent/Unsent Messages."
- Activate Auto Resend (P.14-14) to reattempt to send unsent messages automatically up to two times.
- If messages are not sent after three attempts, follow the above steps to send manually.
- Auto Resend may send the same message twice.

## Canceling Outgoing Message

- While ***Sending...*** appears, press  **Cancel**.
- Message is sent even if Slider is closed.

## Sending S! Mail

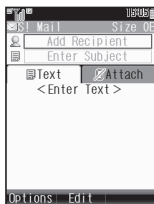
Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book.

**1** Press

**2** Select **Create Message** and press

Mail Composition window opens.

- Shortcut: In Standby, press for 1+ seconds



S! Mail Composition Window

**3** Select recipient field and press

**4** Select **Phone Book** and press

- For other recipient entry methods, see P.14-5.

**5** Select a recipient and press

**6** Select subject field and press

**7** Enter subject and press

**8** Select **Text** and press



Select Recipient Window

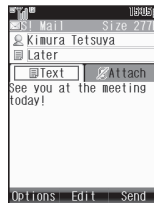
**9** Enter a message

- To enter cross-carrier Pictograms, press **Options** → Select **Pict Setting** → Press → Select a carrier → Press → Select a Pictogram → Press

**10** Press

Mail Composition window returns.

- To edit the message, select **Text** → Press → Edit → Press
- To delete the message, select **Text** → Press **Options** → Select **Remove Text** → Press
- To preview 3D Pictogram (P.14-23), press **Options** → Select **3D Pictogram** → Press
- Mail Composition Options: P.14-6



**11** Press **Send**

- To save without sending, press **Options** → Select **Save to Drafts** → Press
  - Recipient status (To/Cc/Bcc) or the order in which attachments appear may change.
  - Sending from Drafts: P.14-26

**Tip** ► After entering My Pictogram in message text via My Pict History or My Pictograms list, Arrange Mail Composition window (P.14-8) opens automatically.



## ■ Entering/Editing Recipients

Follow these steps after Step 3 on **P.14-4** or on **P.14-11**.

<b>Phone Book</b>	Select a recipient from Phone Book Select <b>Phone Book</b> ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b> ➔ Select a recipient ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Select Group</b>	Send to multiple recipients at one time by selecting a Mail Group (P.4-12) Select <b>Select Group</b> ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b> ➔ Select a Group ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Speed Mail List</b>	Select a recipient from Speed Mail List (P.14-13) Select <b>Speed Mail List</b> ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b> ➔ Select a recipient ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Enter Number</b>	Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number directly Select <b>Enter Number</b> ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b> ➔ Enter a number ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Enter Address</b>	Enter recipient's mail address directly Select <b>Enter Address</b> ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b> ➔ Enter a mail address ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Sent/Received Mail History</b>	Select a recipient from sent/received mail records <b>Sent Mail History</b> Select a sent mail record ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b> <b>Received Mail History</b> Press <b>[F2] Rcvd Msa</b> ➔ Select a received mail record ➔ Press <b>[OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sent/received mail records are names, phone numbers or mail addresses with corresponding indicators.</li><li>■ When History Lock is active, cancel History Lock temporarily (P.9-18).</li></ul>

## Adding Recipients

■ Follow these steps after Step 5 on **P.14-4** or on **P.14-11**.

### Add Recipient

Select recipient field ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Select **Add Recipient** ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Enter recipient (left) ➔ Press **[F2] Confirm**

### Switching Recipient Status (To, Cc and Bcc)

Select recipient field ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Select a recipient ➔ Press **[F2] Options** ➔ Select **Change to To, Change to Cc (carbon copy) or Change to Bcc (blind carbon copy)** ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Press **[F2] Confirm**

- Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.
- When multiple recipients are entered, **[F2]** appears in Mail Composition Window recipient field.

## Editing/Deleting Recipients

■ Follow these steps after Step 5 on **P.14-4** or on **P.14-11**.

### Edit

Select recipient field ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Select a recipient ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Edit ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Press **[F2] Confirm**

### Delete

Select recipient field ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Select a recipient ➔ Press **[F2] Options** ➔ Select **Delete** ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Press **[F2] Confirm**

### Delete All

Select recipient field ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Select a recipient ➔ Press **[F2] Options** ➔ Select **Delete All** ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press **[OK]** ➔ Press **[F2] Confirm**

**Note** ➤ When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject. They may not appear properly on recipient devices.

## Mail Composition Options

<b>Attach</b>	Attach images, sound files, etc. (right)
<b>Arrange</b>	Change font/background color, insert images/background sounds, etc. (P.14-8)
<b>Feeling Settings</b>	Set emotion to messages (P.14-10)
<b>Messaging Settings*</b>	Set priority, set to show a reply request, etc. (P.14-11)
<b>Save as Template</b>	Save and use Arrange Mail templates (P.14-10)
<b>Send Reservation*</b>	Set to send messages at the designated date/time (P.14-13)

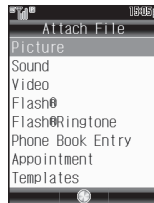
\*Available for both S! Mail and SMS.

## Attaching Files

Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail.

- Attach up to 20 files or 300 KB including message text.
- Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets (file format, services, etc.) before sending files.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on P.14-4; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

- 1** Select  **Attach**
- 2** Select **Attach File** and press 
- 3** Select **Picture** and press 
- 4** Select a folder and press 
- 5** Select a file and press 
  - When a size list appears, select attachment size → Press 



## ■ Attaching Files

Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.14-6.

Image Files	Select <i>Picture</i> → Press  → Select a folder → Press  → Select a file → Press
Sound Files	Select <i>Sound</i> → Press  → Select a folder → Press  → Select a file → Press
Video Files	Select <i>Video</i> → Press  → Select <i>Saved Videos</i> → Press  → Select a file → Press
Flash®/Flash® Ringtone Files	Select <i>Flash®</i> or <i>Flash® Ringtone</i> → Press  → Select a file → Press
Phone Book Entries	Select <i>Phone Book Entry</i> → Press  → Select an entry → Press
Schedule Entries	Select <i>Appointment</i> → Press  → Select a date with schedule → Press  → Select an entry → Press
Templates	Select <i>Templates</i> → Press  → Select a file → Press
Books	Select <i>Books</i> → Press  → Select a file → Press
Custom Screens	Select <i>Custom Screens</i> → Press  → Select a file → Press
Other Files	Select <i>Other Documents</i> → Press  → Select a file → Press

## Capture/Record & Attach

■ Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.14-6.

### Still Images

Select *Picture* → Press → Select *Take Picture* → Press → Press to shoot → Press

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location → Press

### Video

Select *Video* → Press → Select *Record Video* → Press → Press to start recording → Press to stop → Select *Accept* → Press → Select storage media → Press

### Sounds

Select *Sound* → Press → Select *Record Voice* → Press → Press to start recording → Press to stop → Select *Accept* → Press → Select storage media → Press

## Set Auto Play File

■ Show a comment and open/play an attached file automatically before message text is opened on recipient handsets.

Select an attached file → Press **Options** → Select *Set Auto Play File* → Press → Select *Switch On/Off* → Press → Choose *On* → Press → Select *Enter Message* → Press → Enter text → Press

- To cancel, select an attached file → Press **Options** → Select *Set Auto Play File* → Press → Select *Switch On/Off* → Press → Choose *Off* → Press → Choose *Yes* → Press

- Apply to one file per message.
- Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers (not available for Arrange Mail).
- May not be available for some files.

## Creating Arrange Mail

Select font color, font size, background color; insert images, background sound, and more.

- Insert one sound or Flash® file, or up to 40 images/My Pictograms (with one sound or Flash® file) per Arrange Mail.
- Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.14-4; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

**1** Press **Options**

**2** Select **Arrange** (long) and press

Arrange Mail Composition window opens.

- Shortcut: Press for 1+ seconds

**3** Apply Arrange, then press in text entry window

- Press to toggle between text entry window and Arrange Mail Composition window.



Applied Effects

Arrange Menu









































- Use to select an item.






























Arrange Mail  
Composition Window

**Tip** ▶ Inserting multiple My Pictograms/images may inhibit file attachment.

## Arrange Menu Items & Operations

Font Colour: Font Size:	<p>Change font color/size</p> <p><b>Select <i>Font Colour:</i> or <i>Font Size:</i> → Press </b></p> <p>→ <b>Select a color or size → Press </b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Settings apply to newly entered text.</li> <li>■ To change color/size of all entered text, press  To change color/size of a part of entered text, press  → Select the start point → Press  → Select the end point → Press  → Select <b>Font Colour:</b> or <b>Font Size:</b> → Press  → Select a color or size → Press </li> </ul>
Insert Picture	<p>Insert images saved in Data Folder (Pictures or DCIM) or capture and insert images</p> <p><b>Select <i>Insert Picture</i> → Press  → Select a folder → Press  → Select a file → Press </b></p> <p>→ <b>Use  to select target location → Press </b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select target location when text/file is already entered.</li> <li>■ To capture and insert an image, select <b>Insert <i>Picture</i> → Press  → Select <i>Take Picture</i> → Press  → Press  to shoot → Press  → Use  to select target location → Press </b></li> </ul>
Insert My Pictogram	<p>Insert My Pictograms</p> <p><b>Select <i>Insert My Pictogram</i> → Press  → Press  <b>MyPict</b> → Select a file → Press </b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Alternatively, in text entry window, press  until History appears → Press  → Press  <b>MyPict</b> → Select a file → Press </li> </ul>

Insert	Insert BGM Sound	<p>Insert background sound</p> <p><b>Select <i>Insert</i> → Press  → Select <i>Insert BGM Sound</i> → Press  → Select a folder → Press  → Select a file → Press </b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some files may not be usable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To record and insert sound, select <b><i>Insert</i> → Press  → Select <i>Insert BGM Sound</i> → Press  → Select <i>Record Voice</i> → Press  → Press  to start recording → Press  to stop → Select <b><i>Accept</i> → Press  → Select storage media → Press </b></b></li> <li>To delete inserted sound, select <b><i>Insert</i> → Press  → Select <i>Delete BGM Sound</i> → Press  → Choose <b><i>Yes</i> → Press </b></b></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	Insert Flash	<p>Insert Flash<sup>®</sup> file</p> <p><b>Select <i>Insert</i> → Press  → Select <i>Insert Flash</i> → Press  → Select a file → Press </b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To preview inserted Flash<sup>®</sup>, press  <b>Input</b> → Press  <b>Options</b> → Select <b><i>Preview</i> → Press </b></li> <li>To delete inserted file, press  <b>Input</b> → Move cursor before the Flash<sup>®</sup> file icon → Press  <b>DELETE</b></li> </ul>
	Insert Line	<p>Insert horizontal line</p> <p><b>Select <i>Insert</i> → Press  → Select <i>Insert Line</i> → Press </b></p>
Effect	Blink	<p>Flash text</p> <p><b>Select <i>Effect</i> → Press  → Select <i>Blink</i> → Press  → Select <i>Blink On</i> → Press  → Enter text</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To flash entered text, press  <b>Select Area</b> → Select the start point → Press  → Select the end point → Press  → Select <b><i>Effect</i> → Press  → Select <i>Blink</i> → Press  → Press  → Select <b><i>Blink On</i> → Press </b></b></li> <li>To cancel, press  <b>Select Area</b> → Select the start point → Press  → Select the end point → Press  → Select <b><i>Effect</i> → Press  → Select <i>Blink</i> → Press  → Select <b><i>Blink Off</i> → Press </b></b></li> </ul>

Effect	Scrolling	<p>Scroll text horizontally</p> <p><b>Select <i>Effect</i> → Press  → Select <i>Scrolling</i> → Press  → Select scroll direction → Press  → Enter text</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To scroll entered text, press  <b>Select Area</b> → Select the start point → Press  → Select the end point → Press  → Select <b><i>Effect</i> → Press  → Select <i>Scrolling</i> → Press  → Select scroll direction → Press </b></li> <li>To cancel, press  <b>Select Area</b> → Select the start point → Press  → Select the end point → Press  → Select <b><i>Effect</i> → Press  → Select <i>Scrolling</i> → Press  → Select <b><i>Scroll Off</i> → Press </b></b></li> </ul>
	Alignment	<p>Align text left, right or center</p> <p><b>Select <i>Effect</i> → Press  → Select <i>Alignment</i> → Press  → Select an option → Press  → Enter text</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To align entered text, press  <b>Select Area</b> → Select the start point → Press  → Select the end point → Press  → Select <b><i>Effect</i> → Press  → Select <i>Alignment</i> → Press  → Select an option → Press </b></li> </ul>
Background Colour:	<p>Change background color</p> <p><b>Select <i>Background Colour</i>: → Press  → Select a color → Press </b></p>	
Cancel	<p>Cancel all Arrange Mail settings and return to normal S! Mail</p> <p><b>Select <i>Cancel</i> → Press  → Choose <i>Yes</i> → Press </b></p>	
Undo	<p>Cancel last action</p> <p><b>Select <i>Undo</i> → Press </b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Background sound insertion/deletion cannot be undone.</li> </ul>	

**Preview**

**In text entry window, press  **Options** → Select ***Preview* → Press ****

## ■ Saving as Templates

Save created Arrange Mail as templates.

- Entered recipients, subject, attachments and Messaging Settings are deleted.
- Follow these steps in S! Mail Composition window of created Arrange Mail.

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select **Save as Template** and press
- 3 Enter name and press
- 4 Select **Save here** and press

## ■ Creating Arrange Mail from Templates

Create Arrange Mail from custom or preloaded templates.

**Main Menu** ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Templates**

- 1 Select a template and press
  - S! Mail Composition window opens with text/graphic inserted.
  - To check templates, select one and press **Options** ▶ Select **Preview** ▶ Press
- 2 Complete and send message (perform from Step 3 on P.14-4)

### Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window

- Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.14-4.
- Press **Options** ▶ Select **Launch Template** ▶ Press
  - ▶ Select a template ▶ Press

### Changing Template Name Display

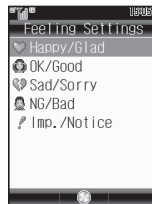
- Press ▶ Select **Templates** ▶ Press ▶ Press **Options**
  - ▶ Select **Item Displayed** ▶ Press ▶ Select **File Name or Title** ▶ Press

## ■ Creating Feeling Mail

Set emotion to messages; recipient handset responds accordingly.

- Send Feeling Mail to compatible SoftBank handsets only.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on P.14-4; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select **Feeling Settings** and press
- 3 Select a category and press
- 4 Select a Pictogram and press



**Tip** ▶ For details on handset response to Feeling Mail, see P.14-16.

## Sending SMS Mail

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book.

**1 Press** 

**2 Select *Create New SMS* and press** 

Mail Composition window opens.

**3 Select recipient field and press** 

**4 Select *Phone Book* and press** 

For other recipient entry methods, see P.14-5.

**5 Select a recipient and press** 

**6 Select message text field and press** 

**7 Enter a message**

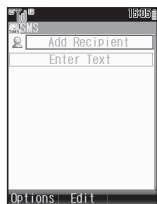
• To enter cross-carrier Pictograms, see Step 9 on P.14-4.

**8 Press** 

Mail Composition window returns.

Mail Composition Options: P.14-6

**9 Press**  **Send**




SMS Mail Composition Window













### When Message Text Exceeds SMS Character Limit

■ A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps.

**Choose Yes**  $\rightarrow$  **Press** 

## Messaging Settings

- Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
- **Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz** as well as **Set Auto Play File (P.14-7)** cannot be applied at the same time; select one per message.
- Only **Delivery Report** and **Expiry Time** are available for SMS.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on P.14-4 (for S! Mail) or Step 8 on the left (for SMS); press  to return to Mail Composition window then complete and send message.

<b>Delivery Report<sup>1</sup></b> Default Off	Set to receive Delivery Report when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers <b>Press</b>  <b>Options</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Press</b>  $\rightarrow$ <b>Select Delivery Report</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Press</b>  $\rightarrow$ <b>Choose On or Off</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Press</b> 
<b>Priority<sup>1</sup></b> Default Normal	Set message priority <b>Press</b>  <b>Options</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Press</b>  $\rightarrow$ <b>Select Priority</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Press</b>  $\rightarrow$ <b>Select priority</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Press</b>  • Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.
<b>Remote Fwd. Action<sup>2</sup></b> Default Not Delete	Select whether to delete Server Mail after forwarding it <b>Press</b>  <b>Options</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Press</b>  $\rightarrow$ <b>Select Remote Fwd. Action</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Press</b>  $\rightarrow$ <b>Select Not Delete or Del. After Forward</b> $\rightarrow$ <b>Press</b> 

<sup>1</sup>Setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.

<sup>2</sup>Available when forwarding Server Mail (Remote Forward).

<b>Set Auto Delete</b> <sup>3</sup> Default Off	Set the message to be deleted from recipient handsets once read Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> → Press  → <b>Select Set Auto Delete</b> → Press  → <b>Choose On or Off</b> → Press
<b>Reply Request</b> <sup>3</sup> Default Off	Set to show a reply request Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> → Press  → <b>Select Reply Request</b> → Press  → <b>Choose On or Off</b> → Press
<b>Forward NG</b> <sup>3</sup> Default Off	Set to show a do not forward request Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> → Press  → <b>Select Forward NG</b> → Press  → <b>Choose On or Off</b> → Press
<b>Delete NG</b> <sup>3</sup> Default Off	Set to show a do not delete request Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> → Press  → <b>Select Delete NG</b> → Press  → <b>Choose On or Off</b> → Press
<b>Expiry Time</b> <sup>4</sup> Default Maximum	Set Message Center sent message storage limit Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> → Press  → <b>Select Expiry Time</b> → Press  → <b>Select a limit</b> → Press • Messages are deleted if not received by the specified Expiry Time.

	Set up a question; recipients need to answer it correctly to open the message <b>Preset Quiz</b> Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> → Press  → <b>Select Quiz</b> → Press  → <b>Select Switch On/Off</b> → Press  → <b>Choose On</b> → Press  → <b>Select a question</b> → Press ■ To set multiple-choice options, select <b>Selection</b> → Press  → Select a number → Press  → Enter/edit option → Press ■ To set the answer, select it → Press <b>Answer</b> → Press <b>Done</b> → Press <b>Done</b> → Press ■ To require entry of an exact answer, select <b>Match Characters</b> → Press  → Enter the answer → Press  → Press <b>Done</b> → Press • <b>Selection</b> or <b>Match Characters</b> is not selectable for questions with preset options or answer. <b>Custom Quiz</b> Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> → Press  → <b>Select Quiz</b> → Press  → <b>Select Switch On/Off</b> → Press  → <b>Choose On</b> → Press  → <b>Select &lt;Create Original&gt;</b> → Press  → Enter a question → Press  → <b>Select answer type</b> → Press  → <b>Set options/answer</b> → Press <b>Done</b> → Press <b>Editing Assigned Quiz</b> Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> → Press  → <b>Select Quiz</b> → Press  → <b>Select Edit Question</b> → Press  → <b>Edit question/answer</b> → Press <b>Done</b> → Press
<b>Quiz</b> <sup>3</sup> Default Off	

<sup>3</sup>Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

<sup>4</sup>Available only for SMS.



<b>Reply To Settings</b> Default Off	Designate a different mail address for receiving replies <b>Press</b> [Options] ➔ <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Select Reply To Settings</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Select Switch On/Off</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Choose On</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Select or enter address (P.14-5)</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [CLEAR SCREEN]
	■ To cancel, press [Options] ➔ <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Select Reply To Settings</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Select Switch On/Off</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Choose Off</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Press</b> [CLEAR SCREEN]
	■ To edit address, press [Options] ➔ <b>Select Messaging Settings</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Select Reply To Settings</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Select Edit Address</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Edit address</b> ➔ <b>Press</b> [ ] ➔ <b>Press</b> [CLEAR SCREEN]

## Setting Send Reservation

Send messages at the designated date/time in the future.

- Messages are saved to Unsent Messages folder.
- Save up to ten Send Reservation messages.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on P.14-4 (for S! Mail) or Step 8 on P.14-11 (for SMS).

**1** Press [Options]

**2** Select **Send Reservation** and press [ ]

**3** Select **Date & Time** and press [ ]

- To send messages ten seconds after signal returns, select **Within the Network** ➔ **Press** [ ] ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ **Press** [ ]
  - Send Reservation is not available while roaming.

**4** Enter date/time and press [ ]

- Specify date/time within a week of the current date/time.

**5** Choose **Yes** and press [ ]

**Tip** ► Result appears in Information window.

## Speed Mail

### Speed Mail List

Save up to ten frequently used numbers/addresses here to use Speed Mail.

**Main Menu** ► **Messaging** ► **Settings** ► **Speed Mail List**

**1** Select **<empty>** and press [ ]

- To change entries, select one ➔ **Press** [ ] ➔ **Edit number/address** ➔ **Press** [ ] ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ **Press** [ ]
- To delete entries, select one ➔ **Press** [Options] ➔ **Select Delete or Clear All** ➔ **Press** [ ] ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ **Press** [ ]

**2** **Phone Book**

**1** Select **Phone Book** and press [ ]

**2** Select an entry and press [ ]

- For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use [ ] to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ➔ **Press** [ ]

**Direct Entry**

**1** Select **Enter Number** or **Enter Address** and press [ ]

**2** Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number or mail address and press [ ]

### Adding to Speed Mail List while Creating Message

- Follow these steps after Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.  
**Select Speed Mail List** ➔ **Press** [ ] ➔ **Select <empty>**  
 ➔ **Press** [ ] ➔ **Choose Yes** ➔ **Press** [ ] ➔ **Perform Step 2 above**

## Sending Speed Mail

**1** In Standby, press **Speed Mail List** entry number with **Keypad** (0 <sup>PR</sup> <sub>A</sub> - 9 <sup>S</sup> <sub>WXYZ</sub>) and press **Mail**

When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** ➤ Press **OK**

**2** Complete and send message (P.14-4, P.14-11)

## Auto Resend

Activate Auto Resend to send unsent messages (failed due to out-of-range, etc.) automatically when signal returns.

- Resend is attempted up to two times for each message.
- Messages are sent in the same order they were created.
- Auto Resend is not available while roaming.
- Auto Resend is **On** by default.

**Main Menu** ➤ *Messaging* ➤ *Settings* ➤ *General Settings* ➤ *Auto Resend*

**1** Choose **On** and press **OK**

- To cancel, choose **Off** ➤ Press **OK**
  - Remaining failed messages will not be sent automatically.

**Tip** ➤ Result appears in Information window.

## Signature

### Saving a Signature

**Main Menu** ➤ *Messaging* ➤ *Settings* ➤ *General Settings* ➤ *Signature Settings* ➤ *Edit*

**1** Enter a signature and press **OK**

- Enter up to 256 single-byte alphanumeric.

### Auto Insert to Message Text

- Save signature first.
- Available only for S! Mail.

**Main Menu** ➤ *Messaging* ➤ *Settings* ➤ *General Settings* ➤ *Signature Settings* ➤ *Auto Insert*

**1** Choose **On** and press **OK**

- To cancel, choose **Off** ➤ Press **OK**

### Manual Insert

- Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.14-4 or Step 7 on P.14-11.
  - Press **Options** ➤ **Select Advanced** ➤ Press **OK** ➤ **Select Signature** ➤ Press **OK**

# Incoming Text Messages

## Opening New Messages

### 1 Delivery Notice appears and Information window opens (Message icon appears) for new mail

- If closed, open Slider while Delivery Notice appears; message list appears.



### 2 Select Message and press

Message list appears.

- Alternatively, while Delivery Notice appears, press .

### 3 Select a message and press

Message window opens.

- When a message is opened for the first time, message text appears in 3D animation (P.14-23 "3D Pictogram"). After animation stops, select whether to enable or disable 3D Pictogram (right).
- To retrieve complete S! Mail messages, see P.14-19.
- Using Messages: P.14-20



**Note** ▶ Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust for incoming mail to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: P.9-15)

- Tip** ▶
- When no Delivery Notice or Information window appears, open from Received Msg. folder (P.14-21 "Checking Messages").
  - Handset does not respond to messages with Low Priority.

### When a Message is Opened for the First Time

- 3D Pictogram plays, then a confirmation to enable or disable 3D Pictogram appears. Follow these steps to set.

Select an option ▶ Press

### New Mail Out of Standby

- A double beep sounds and a notice such as **New Message from "XX" (name/number)** appears.
  - To open message list, press  for 1+ seconds.
  - May not be available in some windows.
  - To change/hide notice or mute double beep, see P.14-32 "Message Notice."
- Information window opens when handset returns to Standby.

### Messages with Reply Request

- When closing a message containing Reply Request, a confirmation appears.
  - To reply, choose **Yes** ▶ Press
  - Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

### Messages with Quiz

- A question appears when opening a message locked with Quiz.  
**To open, press  ➔ Enter or select the answer ➔ Press** 
  - Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.
  - Subject and message text do not appear in message list.

### Auto Play

- If **Set Auto Play File** is set to an attached file, a comment appears and the file opens/plays automatically upon opening the message.
  - Some files may not open/play.

### Delivery Report

- When messages are sent with Delivery Report (P.14-11, P.14-32) **On**, handset receives a Delivery Report from Server Mail Box. To open Delivery Report, follow these steps in Information window (P.14-15).  
**Select *Delivery Report* ➔ Press  ➔ Select a message with unconfirmed Delivery Report ➔ Press  ➔ Press  Report**
  - When Report list appears, press  to open first report ➔ Press  ➔ Select next report ➔ Press
  - Alternatively, open sent message;  appears for delivered messages,  for unknown and  for failed messages.

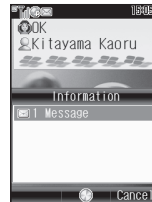
### Retrieving New Mail Manually

- Press  ➔ Select **Retrieve New Msg.** ➔ Press

### Receiving Feeling Mail

Ringtone and Vibration respond according to emotion set by sender and Information window opens.

- Ringtone and Vibration settings in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
  - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
  - The message was filtered as spam
  - The message was sorted to a Secret folder
  - Caller Display (P.9-13) is set to **Off**
- Default Ringtone Settings:



Happy/Glad	Sound Effect 6
OK/Good	Sound Effect 7
Sad/Sorry	Sound Effect 8
NG/Bad	Sound Effect 9
Important/Notice	Sound Effect 10

## Customizing Handset Response

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ Messaging ▶ Settings ▶ General Settings ▶ Link to Feeling

<b>Idle Screen Info.</b> Default: On	Show or hide subject, sender and graphics above Information window for received Feeling Mail <b>Select Idle Screen Info.</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose On or Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Light</b> Default: On	Set Small Light illumination for incoming Feeling Mail <b>Select Light</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose On or Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> • Event Light (For New Message) setting (P.9-3) takes priority.
<b>Vibration Pattern</b> Default: Link to Sound	Set handset vibration for incoming Feeling Mail <b>Select Vibration Pattern</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select a pattern</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Ringtone</b> Default: On 5 seconds	Select sound/video for incoming Feeling Mail; set duration <b>Select Ringtone</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select Switch On/Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose On or Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <span style="color: green;">■</span> To change tone/video, select <b>Assign Tone</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select an item ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a folder ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a tone or file ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <span style="color: green;">■</span> To change duration, select <b>Duration</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter time ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

## Window Description

### Messaging Folder Contents

#### Message Type/Status

##### • Message Status:

	Unread		Read
	Sent		Failed
	Replied		Forwarded
	S! Mail Notice		Unread Delivery Report
	Send Reservation set		

SMS appears below SMS messages (SMS).

##### • Message Settings:

	Attachments		Protected
	Priority (High)		Priority (Low)
	SMS Mail on USIM Card		

#### Sender or Recipient

• Number, address or name appears.

#### Message Text



#### Tip ▶

• Follow these steps to sort messages.

Press **Options** ▶ **Select View Settings** ▶

Press  ▶ **Select Sort** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select an option** ▶ Press

• Press in message list to toggle list view.

## Message Contents



- Message Number
- Sender or Recipient
  - Number, address or name appears.
- Subject (S! Mail only)
- Received or Sent Date & Time
- Message Text

- Tip ▶**
- To activate Display Backlight, press **0** **DP** **A** - **9** **SD**.
  - Press **#** **SD** to open previous message (older one), or press **X** **SD** to open next one (newer one).

## Changing Message List View

- To toggle view in message list, see **P.14-17**.
- Message List View is **Sender+Preview** by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **General Settings** ▶ **Message List View**

- 1** Select an option and press **●**

## Server Mail

If handset is out-of-range or Message DL (Japan)/Message DL (Abroad) (**P.14-33**) is not set to **Always Download**, messages may be stored in Server Mail Box. Check/retrieve complete messages via Mail List or S! Mail Notice, or from Server Mail Box directly.

By default, Message DL (Japan) is set to **Always Download** and Message DL (Abroad) is set to **Always Defer**. To change the settings, see **P.14-33**.

### S! Mail Notice

Server Mail Box sends initial portion of stored message text. **SD** appears for S! Mail Notices in received message list.

### Retrieving Complete S! Mail Messages

- 1** In received message list, select an S! Mail Notice and press **●**
- 2** Press **X** **SD** **More**
  - After download, complete message appears.
  - Messages larger than 300 KB may be partially deleted.
  - To cancel download, press **X** **SD** **Cancel**.

## Retrieving Mail List

Retrieve a list of messages stored in Server Mail Box (Server Mail).

**Main Menu** ► *Messaging* ► *Server Mail Box*

### 1 Select Mail List and press

To refresh retrieved Mail List, press  **Options** ► Select **Retrieve Mail List** ► Press 















### 2 Choose Yes and press

After retrieval, Mail List appears.

To cancel retrieval, press  **Cancel**.

Using Mail List: right

## Using Mail List

<b>Get</b>	Retrieve complete S! Mail messages <b>Select a message</b> ► Press  • Retrieved messages are deleted from Mail List and saved to Received Msg. folder.
<b>Retrieve All</b>	Retrieve all Server Mail Press  <b>Options</b> ► <b>Select Retrieve All</b> ► Press 
<b>Remote Forward</b>	Forward Server Mail <b>Select a message</b> ► Press  <b>Options</b> ► <b>Select Remote Forward</b> ► Press  ► Perform from Step 6 in "Forwarding Messages" on P.14-24
<b>Delete</b>	Delete Server Mail <b>Select a message</b> ► Press  <b>Options</b> ► <b>Select Delete</b> ► Press  ► <b>Choose Yes</b> ► Press 
<b>Delete All</b>	Delete all Server Mail Press  <b>Options</b> ► <b>Select Delete All</b> ► Press  ► <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ► Press  ► <b>Choose Yes</b> ► Press 
<b>Message Details</b>	Open Server Mail properties <b>Select a message</b> ► Press  <b>Options</b> ► <b>Select Message Details</b> ► Press 

## ■ S! Mail Notice Options

<b>Forward</b>	Forward S! Mail Notice text or Server Mail Select an S! Mail Notice → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Forward</b> → Press  → Select <b>Notifi.</b> <b>Forward</b> or <b>Remote Forward</b> → Press  → Perform from Step 6 in "Forwarding Messages" on P.14-24
<b>Delete</b>	Delete S! Mail Notice or Server Mail, or both Select an S! Mail Notice → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Delete</b> → Press  → Select an option → Press  → Choose <b>Yes</b> → Press

**Tip** ▶ Some messages cannot be forwarded or deleted.

## ■ Server Mail Box Operations

Follow these steps first.

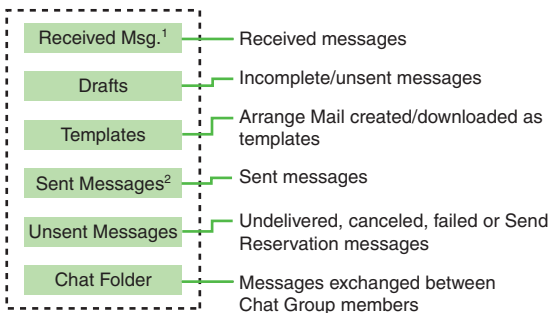
**Main Menu** ▶ *Messaging* → *Server Mail Box*

<b>Retrieve All Mails</b>	Retrieve all Server Mail Select <b>Retrieve All Mails</b> → Press
<b>Delete All Mails</b>	Delete all Server Mail Select <b>Delete All Mails</b> → Press  → Enter Handset Code → Press  → Select <b>Except</b> <b>New Msg. or Delete All</b> → Press
<b>Mailbox Volume</b>	Check Server Mail message count and volume Select <b>Mailbox Volume</b> → Press

# Using Messages

## Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



<sup>1</sup> **Received Folder** and **Folder 1 - Folder 3** appear within. Spam Folder appears as well if Anti Spam Measures (P.14-32) is active.

<sup>2</sup> **Sent Folder** and **Folder 1 - Folder 3** appear within.

### Memory Status

- Press → Select **Memory Status** → Press → Select **Received Msg., Sent Total, Sent Msg., Drafts or Unsent Msg.** → Press
  - Press to return.
- USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.



### Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. To avoid unintentional deletion, cancel Auto Delete (P.14-32) or protect important messages.

## Checking Messages

To open Received Msg. folder while using another function, press [Envelope] for 1+ seconds.

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

### 1 Select Received Msg., Drafts, Sent Messages or Unsent Messages and press [Enter]

Message list appears.

- When folders appear, select one ▶ Press [Enter]
- To open properties (not available for unsent messages), select a message ▶ Press [Envelope] Options ▶ Select **Message Details** ▶ Press [Enter]
  - Press [Down] to scroll down.
  - Press [Enter] to return.

### 2 Select a message and press [Enter]

Message window opens.

- When images are attached, select one and press [Enter] to open it.
- Mail Composition window (P.14-4, P.14-11) opens after opening messages in Drafts.
- Messages with Quiz: P.14-16
- Use [Up/Down] to scroll.
- To jump to the top or bottom of the message, press [Envelope] Options ▶ Select **Scroll Jump** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Select **Jump to Top** or **Jump to Bottom** ▶ Press [Enter]

### Slide Playback

- A slide consists of message text with image/sound or video.  
**After Step 2 on the left, press [Envelope] Options ▶ Select Slide Play ▶ Press [Enter]**
  - Press [Clear Back] to stop.

## Message List Options

Check	Select multiple messages (P.14-22)
View Mail Address <sup>1</sup>	Select multiple messages (P.14-22) Open sender/recipient details Select a message ▶ Press [Envelope] Options ▶ Select <b>View Mail Address</b> ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Select sender or recipient ▶ Press [Enter] <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Open sender/recipient details and press [Envelope] Options to copy number/address, save to Phone Book or set as an auto sort key (P.14-29).</li></ul>
Switch to Read/Unread <sup>2</sup>	Change received message status to read or unread Select a message ▶ Press [Envelope] Options ▶ Select <b>Manage Msg.</b> ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Select <b>Switch to Unread</b> or <b>Switch to Read</b> ▶ Press [Enter]
SIM Sync <sup>1</sup>	Save SMS Messages to USIM Card Select an SMS message ▶ Press [Envelope] Options ▶ Select <b>Manage Msg.</b> ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Select <b>SIM Sync</b> ▶ Press [Enter] <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>SIM Sync</b> appears only for compatible USIM Cards.</li></ul>

<sup>1</sup> Available in Received Msg. and Sent Messages.

<sup>2</sup> Available in Received Msg.

## Message Window Options

Copy <sup>1</sup>	Copy sender/recipient number/address, subject or message text Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Copy</b> → Press → Select an item → Press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <b>Subject</b> or <b>Message Text</b>, use  to select the first character of text → Press  → Use  to select the end point → Press </li> </ul>
	Change font size Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Font Size</b> → Press  → Select a size → Press
Font Size <sup>2</sup> Default Standard	Change encoding when text appears distorted Press <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Char-code</b> → Press  → Select an option → Press
Char-code <sup>3</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> Available in Received Msg. and Sent Messages.

<sup>2</sup> Available in Received Msg., Sent Messages and Unsent Messages.

<sup>3</sup> Available in Received Msg.

## Selecting Multiple Messages

Select multiple messages to protect, delete, change the status of or move all selected items simultaneously.

**Main Menu** ▶ Messaging

### 1 Select a folder and press

When folders appear within, select one → Press

### 2 Select a message and press **Check**

appears.

To uncheck, select a message with → Press **Uncheck**

### 3 Repeat Step 2 as needed

To uncheck all, press **Options** → Select **Unselect All** → Press

## Animation View

When an Animation View Pictogram (P.19-12) is entered as the first character of the subject or included in message text, corresponding animation appears in background of message window. If multiple Animation View Pictograms are entered, the one entered as the first character of subject takes priority. Otherwise, animation for first one in message text appears.

## Animation View Setting

Enable or disable upon opening received messages.

Animation View is enabled by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ Messaging → Settings → General Settings → Animation View

### 1 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

- Note** ▶
- Animations do not appear for Arrange Mail or S! Mail messages with attachments.
  - When Custom Screen (P.9-9) is set, animations may not appear or appear for other Pictograms.

## 3D Pictogram

To animate Pictograms, Emoticons and compatible words such as おはよう, 食事 and 新幹線 included in the first 150 characters of message text, in 3D, follow these steps after opening message window in Step 2 on P.14-21.

**1** Press **Options**

**2** Select **3D Pictogram** and press

Press **Stop** to stop animation.

- Press to pause/resume.
- Stop animation to reply, etc.

## 3D Pictogram Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► General Settings ► 3D Pictogram

<b>Display Effect</b> Default: Unread Only	Enable or disable 3D Pictogram upon opening received messages Select <b>Display Effect</b> ► Press  ► Select an option ► Press
<b>Background Colour</b> Default: Random	Change background color Select <b>Background Colour</b> ► Press  ► Select a color or <b>Random</b> ► Press
<b>Display Speed</b> Default: Standard	Change animation speed Select <b>Display Speed</b> ► Press  ► Select speed ► Press

## Replying to Messages

Main Menu ► Messaging

**1** Select **Received Msg. and press**

- When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.

**2** Select a folder and press

**3** Select a message and press

To reply to sender only without quoting text, press **Reply**

► Skip ahead to Step 7

- Mail Composition window opens.

**4** Press **Options**

**5** Select **Reply** or **Reply All** and press

**6** Select an option and press

**7** Complete and send message (P.14-4, P.14-11)

### Quick Reply

- After Step 3 above, press for 1+ seconds ► Select text ► Press
  - To edit Quick Reply text, see P.14-32 "Quick Reply Set."

- Tip** ►
- Select **Reply All** to send the same message to the sender and up to 19 recipients (To/Cc) of the original message at one time. **Reply All** may not appear for some messages.
  - For **Reply All**, your handset may be included in recipients.
  - Select **SMS (History)** or **S! Mail (History)** to quote the original message text when replying.

## Forwarding Messages

Main Menu ► Messaging






- 1 Select **Received Msg.** and press 
  - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Select a folder and press 
- 3 Select a message and press 
- 4 Press  **Options**
- 5 Select **Forward** and press 
  - For S! Mail messages, S! Mail Composition window opens.
  - To forward SMS messages, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** ► Press 
- 6 Select recipient field and press 

Select Recipient window opens.
- 7 Enter recipients and press 
- To enter a recipient, see P.14-5.
- 8 Press  **Send**
  - Files attached to the original message are automatically attached to forwarded messages.

## Protecting Messages

Protect important messages in Received Msg. or Sent Messages folder from unintentional deletion. Protected messages cannot be deleted.


Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press 
  - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Select a folder and press 
- 3 Select a message and press  **Options**
  - To cancel protection, select a message with .
  - To select multiple messages, perform from Step 2 on P.14-22.
- 4 Select **Lock** and press 
  -  appears for protected messages.
  - To cancel protection, select **Unlock** ► Press 

## Deleting Messages

Main Menu ► Messaging

### 1 Select *Received Msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent Messages* or *Unsent Messages* and press

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press 

### 2 *Deleting Selected Messages*

#### 1 Select a message and press **Options**

■ To select multiple messages, perform from Step 2 on P.14-22.

#### 2 Select *Delete* and press

#### 3 Choose *Yes* and press

• It may take some time to delete messages.


### *Deleting All Messages*

#### 1 Press **Options**

• To delete messages in *Drafts* or *Unsent Messages*, skip ahead to Step 3.

#### 2 Select *Manage Msg.* and press

#### 3 Select *Delete All* and press

■ When folder contains protected messages, select *Delete All* or *Except Locked Msg.* ► Press 

#### 4 Enter Handset Code and press

## Canceling Sent Messages

Send cancellation request to delete sent messages saved in recipient's incoming message folder.

- When selected sent message is addressed to multiple recipients, cancellation request is sent to all the recipients.
- Available for S! Mail messages sent to compatible SoftBank handsets.
- Sent messages may not be deleted if message text is short.

Main Menu ► Messaging

### 1 Select *Sent Messages* and press

• When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.

### 2 Select a folder and press

### 3 Select a message and press **Options**

### 4 Select *Set Sent Cancel* and press

### 5 Choose *Yes* and press

• Handset receives a Delivery Report.









## Sending from Drafts

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select **Drafts** and press 
  - Saved messages appear.
- 2 Select a message and press 
- 3 Edit/send the message (P.14-4, P.14-11)
  - Sent messages are deleted from Drafts.


## Sending from Sent/Unsent Messages

Main Menu ► Messaging









- 1 **Sent Messages**
  - 1 Select **Sent Messages** and press 
    - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
  - 2 Select a folder and press 
  - 3 Select a message and press  **Options**
  - 4 Select **Edit & Send** and press 
- Unsent Messages**
  - 1 Select **Unsent Messages** and press 
  - 2 Select a message and press  **Options**
    - To send without editing, select **Resend** ► Press 
    - (Omit the next steps.)
  - 3 Select **Edit** and press 
- 2 Edit/send the message (P.14-4, P.14-11)

## Linked Info

### Saving to Phone Book

Save a linked phone number/mail address from within message text or sender's/recipient's number/address to Phone Book. In message text, available numbers/addresses are selectable with .

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press 
  - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Select a folder and press 
- 3 Select a message and press 
- 4 **Saving Sender's/Recipient's Address**
  - 1 Press  **Options**
  - 2 Select **Save Address** and press 
  - 3 Select a phone number or mail address and press 
- Saving Linked Info**
  - 1 Select a phone number or mail address and press 
  - 2 Select **Save to Phone Book** or **Save Address** and press 

## 5 Select *As New Entry* and press

Number or address is entered in corresponding Phone Book field. Complete other fields and save (P.4-4).

- To save to an existing Phone Book entry, select **As New Detail** → Press → Select an entry → Press → Press **Save**

## Using Linked Info

Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs (**http://**, **https://** or **rtsp://**) within message text to place calls, send messages or access Internet sites. Available numbers/addresses/URLs are selectable with

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

### 1 Select *Received Msg.*, *Sent Messages* or *Unsent Messages* and press

- When folders appear, select one → Press

### 2 Select a message and press

- For more, perform Step 2 in "Using Linked Info" on P.15-12.

## Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save attached images, sounds, and other files to Data Folder. When memory is full, delete files (P.8-6) beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

### 1 Select *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* and press

- When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.

### 2 Select a folder and press

### 3 Select a message and press

### 4 Select a file and press **Options**

- To open properties, select **File Details** → Press
  - Press to return.

### 5 Select *Save to Data Folder* and press

### 6 Enter name and press

### 7 Select *Save here* and press










Message window returns.

- To save to Memory Card, press **Options** → Select **Change to MemoryCard** → Press → Select **Save here** → Press

## Using Attachments

Assign attached files as Wallpaper, ringtone or ringvideo directly from messages and save to Data Folder.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1** Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press 
  - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2** Select a folder and press 
- 3** Select a message and press 
- 4** Select a file and press  **Options**
- 5** Select *Save as Wallpaper, Set as Ringtone or Set as Ring Video* and press 
- 6** Enter name and press 
- 7** Select *Save here* and press 
  - To assign image as Wallpaper, press .
    - For image smaller or larger than Display, select *Centred, Full Screen* or *Fit Image* ► Press  ► Press 











## My Folders

Organize received/sent messages into My Folders.

### Adding/Deleting My Folders

- Create up to 17 folders in addition to default Folder 1 - 3.
- Empty folder (move or delete messages) before deleting it.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1** Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press 
  - To rename My Folders, select one ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Rename* ► Press  ► Enter name ► Press 
  - To move My Folders, select one ► Press  **Options** ► Select *Relocate Folder* ► Press  ► Select a location ► Press 
- 2** *Adding My Folders*
  - 1** Press  **Options**
  - 2** Select *Create New Folder* and press 
  - 3** Enter name and press 
    - Enter up to 20 characters.
- Deleting My Folders*
  - 1** Select a folder and press  **Options**
  - 2** Select *Delete* and press 
  - 3** Enter Handset Code and press 



## Setting Auto Sort Keys

Set keys (sender/recipient, S! Mail subject or SMS message text string) by folder to sort received/sent messages automatically.

- Specify up to 20 keys for each folder including Spam Folder (P.14-32 "Anti Spam Measures").
- Keys in upper folders have higher priority.
- Settings apply to newly received or sent messages.

Main Menu ► Messaging

**1** Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press

**2** Select a folder (My Folder or Spam Folder) and press **Options**

To select a Secret folder, see P.14-30 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret."

**3** Select *My Folders* and press

**4** Select a blank entry and press

To delete entries, select one ► Press **Options** ► Select *Delete* or *Clear All* ► Press ► Choose *Yes* ► Press ► Press **Confirm**

**5** *Sort by Sender/Recipient*

**1** Select *Address* and press

**2** Enter sender/recipient (P.14-5)

To change entries, select one ► Press **Options** ► Select *Replace* ► Press ► Enter sender/recipient (P.14-5) ► Press **Confirm**

*Sort by Subject (S! Mail) or Text String (SMS)*

**1** Select *Subject* and press

**2** Enter text and press

- Enter up to 40 single-byte alphanumeric.

**6** Press **Confirm**

### Re-sorting Messages

■ After Step 2 on the left, select *Classify* ► Press

- To select a Secret folder, see P.14-30 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret."

## Moving Messages Manually

- Incoming linked messages cannot be moved.
- To move files to a Secret folder, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand (P.14-30).

Main Menu ► Messaging

**1** Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press

**2** Select a folder and press

- To select a Secret folder, see P.14-30 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret."

**3** Select a message

To select multiple messages, perform from Step 2 on P.14-22.

**4** Press **Options**

- When multiple messages are selected, skip ahead to Step 6.

**5** Select *Manage Msg.* and press

**6** Select *Move to Folder* and press

**7** Select a folder and press

## Secret Folder

Hide folders to require Handset Code entry for access.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select **Received Msg., Sent Messages or Chat Folder** and press
- 2 Select a folder and press **Options**
- 3 Select **Set Secret** and press
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press
- 5 Press

**Unlock Temporarily**

■ After Step 1 above, press **Options** ► Select **Unlock Temporarily** ► Press ► Enter Handset Code ► Press

**Cancel Secret**

■ Unlock Secret folders temporarily and follow these steps.  
**Select a Secret folder** ► Press **Options** ► Select **Unset Secret** ► Press ► Enter Handset Code ► Press

■ Handset Code is not required for Chat Folders.

**Note** ► Messages appear in Chat Folders even if source messages are sorted into Secret folders. To hide messages, set Chat Folders to Secret as well.

## Chat Folder

Use Chat Folders to organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat Group members. Each folder (Group) holds up to 300 messages.

### Saving Members

- Create up to seven folders (Groups) in addition to default Group 1 - 3.
- Save up to 20 members per Group.

Main Menu ► Messaging ► Chat Folder

- 1 Select a folder (Group) and press **Options**
  - To rename folders, select one and press **Options** ► Select **Rename** ► Press ► Enter name ► Press
  - To add folders, press **Options** ► Select **Create New Folder** ► Press ► Enter name ► Press
  - To delete folders, select one and press **Options** ► Select **Delete Folder** ► Press ► Choose **Yes** ► Press
  - To select a Secret folder, see "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret" on the left.
- 2 Select **Add New Member** and press
- 3 Select a blank entry and press

## 4 Enter a member

- Repeat Steps 3 - 4 to add members.
- To enter members, see **P.14-5**.
- To edit number/address, select a member → Press **⏏** → Edit
- To change members, select one → Press **☰ Options** → Select **Change Member** → Press **⏏** → Perform from Step 4
- To delete members, select one → Press **☰ Options** → Select **Delete** → Press **⏏** → Choose **Yes** → Press **⏏**
- To delete all members, press **☰ Options** → Select **Clear All** → Press **⏏** → Choose **Yes** → Press **⏏**

## 5 Press **☑ Confirm**

- When a Secret folder warning appears, press **⏏**.

### Re-sorting Messages into Chat Folders

- Follow these steps after Step 1 in "Saving Members" on **P.14-30**.  
**Select Classify** → Press **⏏**
  - When source messages are sorted into Secret folders, enter Handset Code → Press **⏏**

### Resetting Chat Folders

- Follow these steps after Step 1 in "Saving Members" on **P.14-30**.  
**Select Reset** → Press **⏏** → Enter Handset Code → Press **⏏** → Choose **Yes** → Press **⏏**
  - Source messages in Received Msg. and Sent Messages remain.

## Opening Chat Folders

Main Menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Chat Folder

### 1 Select a folder (Group) and press **⏏**

Message list appears.

- When no members are saved, choose **Yes** → Press **⏏** → Perform from Step 3 in "Saving Members" on **P.14-30**
- To reply to messages, select one → Perform from Step 4 in "Replying to Messages" on **P.14-23**
- To delete all messages, press **☰ Options** → Select **Manage Msg.** → Press **⏏** → Select **Delete All** → Press **⏏** → Choose **Yes** → Press **⏏**
  - Source messages in Received Msg. and Sent Messages remain.
  - Messages are deleted from Chat Folder even if source messages are protected.

### 2 Select a message and press **⏏**

Message window opens.

### Switch to Read/Unread

- Select a received message in Chat Folder message list and follow these steps.  
Press **☰ Options** → Select **Manage Msg.** → Press **⏏** → Select **Switch to Read or Switch to Unread** → Press **⏏**
  - Source message status changes accordingly.

# Settings

## General Settings

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings* ▶ *General Settings*

<b>Sending Status</b> <small>Default: On</small>	Show or hide progress bar while sending messages <b>Select <i>Sending Status</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose <i>On or Off(Background)</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Delivery Report</b> <small>Default: Off</small>	Confirm message delivery to SoftBank handset numbers <b>Select <i>Delivery Report</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose <i>On (request report) or Off</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Anti Spam Measures</b> <small>Default: Off</small>	Filter incoming messages from numbers or addresses not saved in Phone Book <b>Select <i>Anti Spam Measures</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Enter Handset Code</b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose <i>On or Off</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> For <i>On</i>, press <input type="checkbox"/> again.</li> <li>• When Anti Spam Measures is active, unsolicited messages (spam) are filtered into <b><i>Spam Folder</i></b>.</li> <li>• Handset does not respond to filtered messages. (No ringtones, Information window, etc.)</li> </ul>
<b>Quick Reply Set.</b>	Edit Quick Reply text <b>Select <i>Quick Reply Set.</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select text</b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Edit text</b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/>

<b>Auto Delete</b> <small>Default: On</small>	Activate or cancel automatic deletion of oldest received/sent messages to save new ones when memory is full <b>Select <i>Auto Delete</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select <i>Received Msg. or Sent Messages</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose <i>On or Off</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Message Notice</b> <small>Default: View Setting: Name Alert Sound: On</small>	Change/hide notice or activate/mute alert sound (double beep) for messages received during handset use <b>Edit Message</b> <b>Select <i>Message Notice</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select <i>View Setting</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select an option</b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Alert Sound</b> <b>Select <i>Message Notice</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select <i>Alert Sound</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Choose <i>On or Off</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Secret Folder</b> <small>Default: Notify</small>	Select whether to notify (with ringtones, etc.) of incoming messages sorted to Secret folders <b>Select <i>Message Notice</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select <i>Secret Folder</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select <i>Notify or No Response</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Received/Sent Msg. View</b> <small>Default: Folder View</small>	Show or hide folders in Received Msg. and Sent Messages folders <b>Select <i>Received Msg. View or Sent Msg. View</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ <b>Select <i>List View or Folder View</i></b> ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When folders are hidden, messages in Secret folders appear in message list.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> When the folder contains a Secret folder, enter Handset Code ▶ <b>Press</b> <input type="checkbox"/></li> </ul>

<b>Scroll Unit</b> Default Single Line	Select from three scroll units
	Select <b>Scroll Unit</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select <b>Single Line, Half Page or Whole Page</b> → Press <input type="radio"/>

## S! Mail Settings

Follow these steps first.

<b>Main Menu</b> ▶ Messaging → Settings → S! Mail Settings
--

<b>Message DL (Japan)*</b> Default Always Download	Set complete S! Mail retrieval to auto or manual; adjust this setting when using handset in Japan <b>Always Retrieve Automatically or Manually</b> Select <b>Message DL(Japan)</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select <b>Always Download or Always Defer</b> → Press <input type="radio"/>
	<b>Retrieve Specified Messages</b> Select <b>Message DL(Japan)</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select <b>Specify</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Edit</b> → Select <b>Phone Number, Saved Address, My Folders or Individual Address</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Confirm</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Multiple items are selectable.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To save/edit Individual Address entries, select <b>Individual Address</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Edit</b> → Select an entry or a blank entry → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select or enter number/address → Press <input type="radio"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Confirm</b></li> <li>To delete Individual Address entries, select <b>Individual Address</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Edit</b> → Select an entry → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Delete or Clear All</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Choose <b>Yes</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Confirm</b></li> </ul> </li> </ul>

<b>Message DL (Abroad)*</b> Default Always Defer	Set complete S! Mail retrieval to auto or manual; adjust this setting when using handset outside Japan Select <b>Message DL(Abroad)</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select <b>Always Download or Always Defer</b> → Press <input type="radio"/>
	Designate a different mail address for receiving replies Select <b>Reply To Settings</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select <b>Switch On/Off</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Choose <b>On</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select or enter address (P.14-5) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To cancel, select <b>Reply To Settings</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select <b>Switch On/Off</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Choose <b>Off</b> → Press <input type="radio"/></li> <li>To edit address, select <b>Reply To Settings</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select <b>Edit Address</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select or enter address → Press <input type="radio"/></li> </ul>
<b>Reply To Settings</b> Default Off	
<b>Picture Appearance</b> Default Normal	Set display size for images in received messages Select <b>Picture Appearance</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> → Select <b>Normal or Fit for Screen</b> → Press <input type="radio"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Slides (P.14-21) always play at Normal size.</li> </ul>

\*When set to **Always Download**, complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; transmission fees apply depending on the price plan. Change Message DL setting as needed.

<p><b>Auto Play File</b>  <small>Default</small> Pictures: On                  Sounds: Off</p>	<p>Select whether to open/play attached images/sounds automatically</p> <p>Select <b>Auto Play File</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>Pictures or Sounds</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Choose <b>On or Off</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Images/sounds always open/play when playing slides (P.14-21).</li> <li>• Auto Play File settings do not apply to Arrange Mail.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Send File Settings</b>  <small>Default</small> Save &amp; Attach</p>	<p>Set pre-attachment save option for files newly captured with 816SH camera or Voice Recorder</p> <p>Select <b>Send File Settings</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>Save &amp; Attach</b> or <b>Attach Only</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p>

## SMS Settings

Follow these steps first.

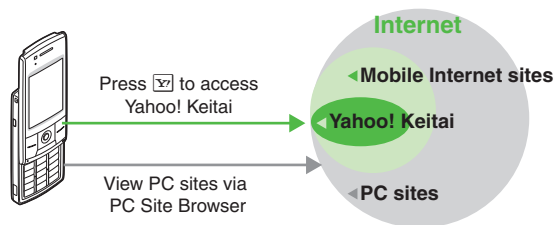
**Main Menu** ➔ *Messaging* ➔ *Settings* ➔ *SMS Settings*

<p><b>Expiry Time</b>  <small>Default</small> Maximum</p>	<p>Set Message Center sent message storage limit</p> <p>Select <b>Expiry Time</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select an option ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Expiry Time applies to SMS Center Number set to <b>Setting1(Default)</b> in Message Centre (below).</li> </ul>
<p><b>Message Centre</b>  <small>Default</small> Setting1                  (+819066519300)</p>	<p>Set SMS Center Number</p> <p><b>Editing Center Number</b></p> <p>Select <b>Message Centre</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>Setting1(Default), Setting2</b> or <b>Setting3</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Edit number ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <p><b>Deleting Center Number</b></p> <p>Select <b>Message Centre</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>Setting2</b> or <b>Setting3</b> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <b>Delete</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Choose <b>Yes</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <p><b>Setting Center Number</b></p> <p>Select <b>Message Centre</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select <b>Setting2</b> or <b>Setting3</b> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <b>Set Default</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selected number moves to <b>Setting1(Default)</b> and shifts the others down.</li> <li>• Do not change Center Number unless instructed to do so.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Char-code</b>  <small>Default</small> Shift JIS</p>	<p>Select character encoding for composing SMS messages</p> <p>Select <b>Char-code</b> ➔ Press <input type="radio"/> ➔ Select an option ➔ Press <input type="radio"/></p>

<b>Getting Started</b> .....	15-2	<b>Streaming</b> .....	15-13
<b>Using Yahoo! Keitai</b> .....	15-3	<b>Live Monitor (Japanese)</b> .....	15-14
■ Opening Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu .....	15-3	■ Live Monitor Basics .....	15-14
■ Using History .....	15-4	■ Registering with Live Monitor Items .....	15-14
■ Entering URLs Directly .....	15-4	■ Opening Information .....	15-15
<b>Basic Operations</b> .....	15-5	■ Automatic Update .....	15-15
■ Internet Content.....	15-5	<b>Using PC Site Browser</b> .....	15-16
■ Selecting Items .....	15-5	■ Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges....	15-16
■ Page Browsing .....	15-6	■ Using History .....	15-17
■ Function Shortcuts .....	15-7	■ Entering URLs Directly.....	15-17
■ Text Entry & Item Selection .....	15-8	<b>Additional Functions</b> .....	15-18
■ Options Menu .....	15-8	■ Common Settings .....	15-18
<b>Advanced Features</b> .....	15-10	■ PC Site Browser Settings.....	15-20
■ Bookmarks & Saved Pages .....	15-10		
■ Saving Files to Data Folder .....	15-12		
■ Using Linked Info.....	15-12		

# Getting Started

Access the Internet directly from handset.  
Press a single key to access **Yahoo! Keitai** SoftBank Mobile Internet portal, or view PC sites via PC Site Browser.



- In this manual, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal, "PC sites" to websites viewed via PC Site Browser, and "Internet" to both Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites.
- An additional contract is required to use the Internet.
- Retrieve Network Information (P.1-15) before using the Internet.

**Note** ▶

- Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. To disconnect, press [END].
- Requested pages may not appear due to transmission conditions/Server status.

**Tip** ▶ For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

## Security

### SSL

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is an encryption protocol for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers. Electronic certificates are saved on handset (P.15-19 "Root Certificates").

#### Disclaimer

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

### Secure Pages

A confirmation appears before entering and exiting secure pages. Press [OK] to proceed ([G] appears).

To disable confirmations, see P.15-19 "Secure Prompt."




# Using Yahoo! Keitai

## Opening Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

### 1 Press

Handset connects to the Internet and Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.

To disconnect, press  **Cancel**.


- Handset remains connected to the Internet even if Slider is closed.



### 2 Highlight a menu item and press



Corresponding page opens.


- Repeat Step 2 to open additional links.

Basic Operations: **P.15-5**

To return to the previous page, press  **Back**.

- To return to the initial page, press  **Options** → Select **Forward** → Press 

To jump to page top or bottom, press  **Options** → Select **Convenient Functions** → Press  → Select **Jump to Top** or **Jump to Bottom** → Press 







To return to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu, press  **Options** → Select **Yahoo! Keitai** → Press 

### 3 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

#### User Authentication

- If requested, enter user ID or password → Press  → Press  **Send**

#### Switching Browser

- Open a page and follow these steps.
  - Press  **Options** → Select **Change to PC Browser or Switch Browser** → Press  → Select **This Page or Linked Page** → Press  → Press  → Choose **Yes or No** → Press 
  - To hide warning message, choose **Yes**; Warning Message (P.15-18) is set to **Off**.
    - Warning message appears when activating PC Site Browser or when toggling between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser, unless Warning Message is **Off**.
  - Pressing  immediately after switching browser does not open previous page.

**Tip** ▶ Reloading Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu (P.15-8 "Reload") corrects Clock when Auto Corr. Setting (P.9-16 "Time Correction") is active.

## Using History

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ History

### 1 Select an item and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- To open properties, select an item ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Details** ▶ Press
  - Press to return.
- To sort items, press **Options** ▶ Select **Sort** ▶ Press ▶ Select **By Domain** or **By Date** ▶ Press

### 2 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

#### Sending URLs via S! Mail/SMS

- Open History and follow these steps.
  - Select an item ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Send URL** ▶ Press ▶ Select **S! Mail or SMS** ▶ Press ▶ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.)
  - S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if a URL exceeds the SMS character limit.

#### Deleting History

- Open History and follow these steps.
  - One Entry
    - Select an item ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press
  - All Entries
    - Press **Options** ▶ Select **Delete All** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

- Tip ▶
- History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.
  - From open pages, access **History** via Options menu.

## Entering URLs Directly

Enter URLs directly to access pages. **http://** may be omitted.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Enter URL

### 1 Enter URL and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

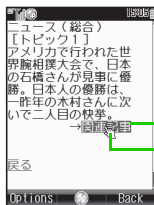
- PC Site Browser may activate depending on the URL.
- To select from previously entered URLs, press **Options** ▶ Select **URL Entry Log** ▶ Press ▶ Select a URL ▶ Press ▶ Press

### 2 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

- Tip ▶
- Up to 10 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.
  - From open pages, access **Enter URL** via Options menu. (Current page's URL is entered.)

# Basic Operations

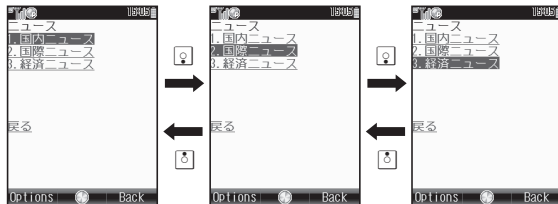
## Internet Content



- Scroll Bar (P.15-6)
- Cursor (see below)
- Pointer (see right)

## Selecting Items

Move cursor with to select items.



- Alternatively, use when multiple items are listed in one row.
- Cursor does not appear for unselectable items.

## Pointer Navigation

When pointer navigation is active (below), use to move . When appears, press to select the item.



### Activating/Canceling Pointer Navigation

- Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Cursor Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Cursor/ Yahoo! Keitai or Cursor/PC Site Browser** ➔ Press ➔ **Choose On or Off** ➔ Press

- Cursor/Yahoo! Keitai** is **Off** and **Cursor/PC Site Browser** is **On** by default. (Pointer navigation is canceled for Yahoo! Keitai but active for PC Site Browser.)
- Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds to toggle pointer navigation on/off.

### Changing Pointer Speed

- Open a page and follow these steps.

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Cursor Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Speed Settings** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Slow, Normal or Fast** ➔ Press

- Pointer speed is **Normal** by default.

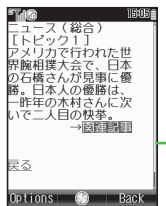
**Tip** ➤ Pointer graphic may vary by Custom Screen (P.9-9).

## Page Browsing

### Scrolling Pages

If page content continues beyond view, scroll bar appears beside/below window; a slider indicates current page position. Use to scroll pages.

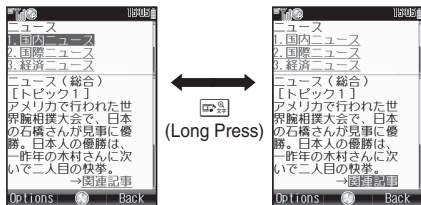
- Alternatively, press and hold designated key to scroll in the corresponding direction: (Up), (Left), (Right), (Down).
- When using (Long Press) to scroll PC site pages, use Page Navigation (P.15-17) to confirm current page position.



Scroll Bar

### Switching Frames

On framed pages, press for 1+ seconds to select other frames; scroll or select items within.

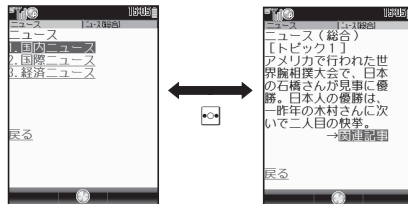


## Viewing Single Frame

- Open a framed page and select a frame  $\rightarrow$  Press **Options**
  - $\rightarrow$  Select **Frame In**  $\rightarrow$  Press
  - To return, press .

## Tabbed Browsing

Open up to three pages at one time using tabs. Yahoo! Keitai and PC site pages cannot be open simultaneously.



- 1 Highlight a menu item and press **Options**
- 2 Select **Open in New Tab** and press

Highlighted link opens in a new tab.

- To open a third page, press **Options**  $\rightarrow$  Select **Tab Menu**
  - $\rightarrow$  Press  $\rightarrow$  Select **Open in New Tab**  $\rightarrow$  Press

### Toggle Tabs

- Press (Long press) ➔ Use to switch between tabs
  - To cancel, press .
- Options menu, scrolling, etc. are not available while switching between tabs (after is pressed for 1+ seconds).
- Alternatively, point to a tab and press to open it.

### Closing Tabs

- Press Options ➔ Select **Tab Menu** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Close Tab or Close All Other Tabs** ➔ Press .

**Note** ▶ Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close old tabs.

- Tip** ▶
- Some pages automatically open in a new tab.
  - Alternatively, to open pages in a new tab, open Options menu from Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL or History and select **Open in New Tab**.

### Function Shortcuts

In a page window, press the indicated key for 1+ seconds for the corresponding function.

	Continuous scroll up/down/left/right (P.15-6) <sup>1</sup>
	Continuous scroll up (P.15-6) <sup>1</sup>
	Continuous scroll left (P.15-6) <sup>1</sup>
	Continuous scroll right (P.15-6) <sup>1</sup>
	Continuous scroll down (P.15-6) <sup>1</sup>
	Jump to a location (P.15-17)
	Toggle tabs (left)
	Activate/cancel Manner mode (P.2-18)
	Toggle pointer navigation on/off (P.15-5)
	Switch frames (P.15-6)

<sup>1</sup>Available along with Page Navigation (P.15-17) in PC Site Browser.

<sup>2</sup>Available for PC Site Browser only.

## Text Entry & Item Selection

Enter text or select items to send information.

### Text Entry Field

- Highlight  and press . Text entry window opens. Enter text and press .

### Check-box

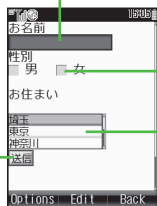
- Highlight  (check-box) and press . The box changes to , indicating that the item is selected.
- In addition to ,  may also appear as selection indicators.

### Menu List

- Highlight the field and press  to select an item. Some menu lists support multiple selection; select items and press  to exit list.

### Command Button

- Use to send, reset, etc.
- Highlight  and press  to execute the indicated command.



## Input Memory

- Entered text (except Security Code) is saved to Input Memory. Use saved text in other applications.
- To use Input Memory, follow these steps in a text entry window.  
**Press**  **Options**  $\rightarrow$  **Select Advanced**  $\rightarrow$  **Press**   $\rightarrow$  **Select Input Memory**  $\rightarrow$  **Press**   $\rightarrow$  **Select text**  $\rightarrow$  **Press**
- Up to 20 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

## Options Menu

### Copy Text

Copy text

- Press**  **Options**  $\rightarrow$  **Select Copy Text**  $\rightarrow$  **Press**   $\rightarrow$  **Perform from Step 3 on P.3-8**

### Reload

Update page content

- Press**  **Options**  $\rightarrow$  **Select Reload**  $\rightarrow$  **Press**

- Reload simultaneously updates the corresponding content saved in Saved Pages.

## Send URL

Send URLs via S! Mail/SMS

- Press **Options** → Select *Convenient Functions* → Press → Select *Send URL* → Press → Select *S! Mail or SMS* → Press → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.)
- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if a URL exceeds the SMS character limit.

## Search

Search current page

- Press **Options** → Select *Convenient Functions* → Press → Select *Search* → Press → Enter search text → Press
- First search result is highlighted; press to jump to next.
    - To cancel, press **Cancel**.

## Details

Open page properties/server certificates

### Opening Page Properties

- Press **Options** → Select *Convenient Functions* → Press → Select *Details* → Press → Select *Page Information* → Press
- Press to return.

### Opening Server Certificates

- Press **Options** → Select *Convenient Functions* → Press → Select *Details* → Press → Select *Server Certificate* → Press → Select a certificate → Press
- To return, press → Press four times

## Help

See key assignments

- Press **Options** → Select *Help* → Press
- Press to return.

## Flash® Menu

Handle Flash® files

### Pause

- Press **Options** → Select *Flash® Menu* → Press → Select *Pause* → Press
- To play Flash® files, press **Options** → Select *Flash® Menu* → Press → Select *Resume* or *Replay* → Press

### Replay

- Press **Options** → Select *Flash® Menu* → Press → Select *Replay* → Press

### Image Quality Setting

- Press **Options** → Select *Flash® Menu* → Press → Select *Quality* → Press → Select *Low, Medium or High* → Press

## Char-code

Change encoding when text appears distorted

- Press **Options** → Select *Settings* → Press → Select *Char-code* → Press → Select an option → Press
- Use Automatic whenever possible.

## Uploading Files

Upload images or other Data Folder files to the Center via Internet sites

- Open compatible site first.
- Select *select* → Press → Select a folder → Press → Select a file → Press → Select *Send* → Press
- Example above is for reference only. Follow site instructions for specific procedure.
  - Files are uploadable only via pages supporting uploads.

# Advanced Features

## Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmark sites or save page content to Saved Pages.

Item	Description
Bookmarks	Save links to sites. Handset connects to the Internet to access the site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Create folders to organize Bookmarks.</li><li>• Save up to 100 Bookmarks for Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites each.</li></ul>
Saved Pages	Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Save up to 100 pages for Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites each.</li></ul>

Tip ► The following links are saved in Bookmarks by default.

- **Sharp Space Town**  
Download Wallpaper, games, Dictionary files, etc.
- **加勢**  
Download Custom Screens (P.9-9).

## Saving Bookmarks & Pages

Follow these steps after opening a page.

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select **Bookmark** or **Saved Pages** and press
- 3 Select **Save** and press
  - **Save** appears only for savable pages.
- 4 Enter title and press

Tip ► Pages are saved with a preview page when available.

## Opening Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Main Menu ► Yahoo! Keitai

- 1 Select **Bookmarks** or **Saved Pages** and press   
Title/page list appears.
  - For Saved Pages, when Switch View (P.15-11) is set to **Preview View**, press to toggle Yahoo Keitai and PC site pages.
- 2 Use to select a title/page and press



Bookmarks List



## Opening Bookmarks & Saved Pages Online

Press **Options** → Select *Bookmark or Saved Pages* → Press **Enter** → Select *Open List* → Press **Enter** → Select a title/page → Press **Enter**

## Bookmarks/Saved Pages List Operations

Open Properties	Select a title/page → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Details</i> → Press <b>Enter</b> Press <b>Enter</b> to return.
Move	Select a title/page → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Move</i> → Press <b>Enter</b> → Use <b>Up/Down</b> to select target location → Press <b>Enter</b>
Delete	Select a title/page → Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Delete</i> → Press <b>Enter</b> → Choose <i>Yes</i> → Press <b>Enter</b>
Delete All	Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>Delete All</i> → Press <b>Enter</b> → Enter Handset Code → Press <b>Enter</b> → Choose <i>Yes</i> → Press <b>Enter</b>
Switch View (Saved Pages)	Press <b>Options</b> → Select <i>List View or Preview View</i> → Press <b>Enter</b>

## Editing Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Open Bookmarks or Saved Pages (Step 1 in "Opening Bookmarks & Saved Pages" on P.15-10) first.

Title Edit titles

### Bookmarks

Select a title → Press **Options** → Select *Edit* → Press **Enter** → Select *Title:* → Press **Enter** → Enter title → Press **Enter** → Press **Save**

### Saved Pages

Select a title/page → Press **Options** → Select *Rename* → Press **Enter** → Enter title → Press **Enter**

Bookmarks Folder Sort Bookmarks into folders

### Creating a Folder

Press **Options** → Select *Create Folder* → Press **Enter** → Enter name → Press **Enter**

### Moving to Folder

Select a title → Press **Options** → Select *Move* → Press **Enter** → Press **Folder** → Select a folder → Press **Enter** → Press **Enter**

### Moving from Folder

Select a title → Press **Options** → Select *Move* → Press **Enter** → Press **Parent** → Press **Enter**

### Changing Folder Names

Select a folder → Press **Options** → Select *Rename* → Press **Enter** → Enter name → Press **Enter**

## Saving Files to Data Folder

When memory is full, delete files (P.8-6) beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Open a page

### 1 Press Options

### 2 Select **Save Items** and press

To save background image, select **Save Background Image**

▶ Press 

- **Save Background Image** appears for pages with background images.

- If there is only one file, skip ahead to Step 4.

### 3 Select a file and press

To open files, select **View** or **Play** ▶ Press 


- Press  to return.

To open properties, select **Details** ▶ Press 


- Press  to return.

### 4 Select **Save** and press

Data Folder opens.

To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 


- **Options** ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ▶ Press 

To save to a sub folder, select folder ▶ Press 

### 5 Select **Save here** and press

File is saved to Data Folder.

- Handle File(s) menu may open with available file functions.

If the same file name exists, select **Rename**, **Overwrite** or **Cancel** ▶ Press 

## Automatic Saving

- Some files are saved automatically. Save location is indicated after download.

## Using Linked Info

- Available only when number, address or URL can be highlighted.
- Underlined words may serve as a linked number, address or URL.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

### 1 Open a page containing a phone number, mail address or URL

### 2 **Dialing Numbers**


#### 1 Highlight a number and press

#### 2 Select **Call** or **Video Call** and press

### **Sending Messages**

#### 1 Highlight a SoftBank handset number or mail address and press

#### 2 Select **Create Message** and press

- When confirmation for mail type appears, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** and press 

To complete and send message, perform from Step 6 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.

### **Accessing Internet Sites**

#### 1 Highlight a URL and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Video/sound plays for **rtsp://**URLs.

# Streaming

Enjoy audiovisual media while it downloads.

- Only compatible Yahoo! Keitai files support streaming.
- Downloaded content cannot be saved.

**Main Menu** ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ *Open a page*

## 1 Select a file and press

Streaming begins. (Playing Music/Video: P.7-6)

- To specify start point, see P.7-7 "Time Search."
- To pause/resume a stream, press .
- Streaming requires a continuous Internet connection. (Packet transmission fees apply.)

### Incoming Calls/Mail while Streaming

- Streaming stops for incoming calls. Press to answer calls.
  - After the call, **Reconnect?** appears.
- Notice appears or a double beep sounds for incoming mail (P.14-32 "Message Notice").

- Note** ▶
- Streaming continues even after Slider is closed.
  - Some streams do not support pause, fast forward, rewind or Options.

- Tip** ▶ Up to 10 previously accessed URLs are saved. When full, oldest URLs are deleted to make room for new ones.

## ■ Playback Operations

<b>Display Size</b>	Change display size Press <b>Options</b> ▶ <b>Select Settings</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Select Display Size</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Select a size</b> ▶ Press <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Press  to toggle Display Size for current stream.</li><li>• Display Size may not change depending on file/stream.</li></ul>
<b>Backlight</b>	Adjust Backlight Press <b>Options</b> ▶ <b>Select Settings</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Select Backlight</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Select a pattern</b> ▶ Press <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Selecting <b>Normal Settings</b> applies Display Backlight setting (P.9-12).</li></ul>
<b>Sound Effects</b>	Adjust Sound Effects Press <b>Options</b> ▶ <b>Select Settings</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Select Sound Effects</b> ▶ Press  ▶ <b>Select an effect</b> ▶ Press

**Streaming from Media Player**

Access the Internet from Media Player

**Main Menu** ▶ Media Player ▶ Streaming

## Resuming the File Played Last

**Select Last Played** ▶ Press

## Using Bookmarks

**Select Bookmarks** ▶ Press ▶ **Select an entry** ▶ Press

## Using History

**Select History** ▶ Press ▶ **Select an entry** ▶ Press

- To open properties, select an entry ▶ Press **Options** ▶ **Select Details** ▶ Press
- Press to return.

# Live Monitor (Japanese)

## Live Monitor Basics

Receive Yahoo! Keitai content/S! Loop item update notices.

- Information is saved in Live Monitor List (Yahoo! Keitai content) or S! Loop List (S! Loop items) according to the type.
- In Standby, view breaking news in Live Monitor List (P.9-6).

## Window Description (Example: Live Monitor List)



## Live Monitor List Indicators

	Unread News Flash		Unread General news
	Read News Flash		Read General news
	News Flash auto update disabled		General news auto update disabled

## S! Loop List Indicators

	Unread S! Loop		S! Loop auto update disabled
	Read S! Loop		

## Registering with Live Monitor Items

### Live Monitor List

Register with up to one News Flash item and four General news items.

**Main Menu** ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor ▶ Live Monitor List

**1** Select **Content List** and press

**2** Choose **Yes** and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

**3** Select an item and press

- Follow onscreen instructions.

### S! Loop List

Register with up to five S! Loop items.

**Main Menu** ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor ▶ S! Loop List

**1** Select **S! Loop** and press

**2** Choose **Yes** and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

### Resetting Live Monitor List/S! Loop List

- Press ▶ Select **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Live Monitor** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Reset Live Monitor** ▶ Press ▶ Enter **Handset Code** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

- Not available during auto updates.

## Deleting Live Monitor Items

■ Open Live Monitor List or S! Loop List and follow these steps.

### • One Entry

Select an item → Press  **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press  → Select **Delete This Monitor** → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 

### • All Entries

Press  **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press  → Select **Delete All** → Press  → Enter Handset Code → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 





## Opening Information

**Main Menu** ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

**1** Select **Live Monitor List** or **S! Loop List** and press 

**2** Select an item and press 




Title list appears.

 To update Live Monitor items, select one → Press  **Options** → Select **Reload** → Press  → Select **Reload This Monitor** or **Reload All** → Press 

**3** Select a title and press 

Information appears.

 Press  **Prev.** or  **Next** to open other titles.


 To access the Internet, select the title in information → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press 

## Automatic Update


Update Live Monitor items automatically.

- Updating Live Monitor items may incur high charges.
- Update Frequency
  - Live Monitor List News Flash: After a set interval
  - Live Monitor List General news: Once a day
  - S! Loop List items: Approximately four times a day
- Automatic Update is **Off** by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor ▶ Settings ▶ Automatic Update

**1** Select **Live Monitor** or **S! Loop** and press 

**2** **Live Monitor List**

**1** Select **News Flash** or **General** and press 

**2** Press 

**3** Select an interval or choose **On** and press 

 To cancel, choose **Off** → Press 

**S! Loop List**

**1** Press 

**2** Choose **On** and press 

 To cancel, choose **Off** → Press 

**Note** ▶

- Automatic Update does not affect Live Monitor List News Flash or S! Loop List update items overnight.
- Automatic Update is only available in Japan.
- Update may fail if signal is weak/handset is out-of-range.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.


# Using PC Site Browser

- Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges.
- Download/view document (.pdf, .doc, .xls, and .ppt)/image (JPEG, PNG and GIF) files. See **P.12-16** "Document Viewer."
  - PNG/GIF images larger than 300 KB cannot be saved.


## Opening Yahoo! JAPAN

**Main Menu** ▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ▶ *PC Site Browser*

### 1 Select **Homepage** and press









Handset connects to the Internet and Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens ( appears).

- When a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

- To disconnect, press  **Cancel**.
- Handset remains connected to the Internet even if Slider is closed.





### 2 Highlight a menu item and press





- Repeat Step 2 to open additional links.
- Basic Operations: **P.15-5**
- To return to the previous page, press  **Back**.
  - To return to the initial page, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Forward** ▶ Press 
- To jump to page top or bottom, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Convenient Functions** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **Jump to Top** or **Jump to Bottom** ▶ Press 
- To return to Yahoo! JAPAN Home, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Homepage** ▶ Press 

### 3 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press


#### Switching View

- Open a page and follow these steps.
  - Press  **Options** ▶ Select **PC Screen or Small Screen** ▶ Press 
  - In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.

#### Zoom


- Open a page and follow these steps.
  - Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Convenient Functions** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **Zoom** ▶ Press  ▶ Select a **scale** ▶ Press 

## Page Navigation

- Confirm current page position while scrolling using  (Long Press).
  - Available when Page Navigation (P.15-20) is **On**.




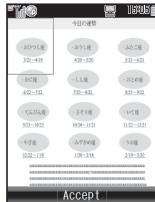
- To jump to a specific location, open a page and follow these steps.

Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔

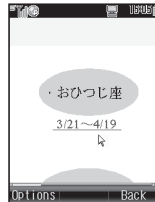
Press  ➔ **Select Quick Movement** ➔ Press  ➔

Use  to select a location ➔ Press 

- Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds to open the Quick Movement map.



Quick Movement Map



New Location

## Using History

**Main Menu** ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ PC Site Browser ➔ History

### 1 Select an item and press

- To open properties, send URL, sort items or delete, see **P.15-4**.

**Tip** ▶ History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.

## Entering URLs Directly

**Main Menu** ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ PC Site Browser ➔ Enter URL

### 1 Enter URL and press

- Yahoo! Keitai page may open depending on the URL.
- To select from previously entered URLs, see **P.15-4**.

# Additional Functions

## Common Settings

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

<b>Font Size</b> Default: Standard	Change character size Select <b>Common Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Font Size</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select a size ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Scroll Unit</b> Default: Single Line	Select from three scroll units Select <b>Common Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Scroll Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Scroll Unit</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select a unit ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Downloads</b> Default: Show Images/Play Sounds	Select whether to download images and sounds automatically or to open text information only <b>Images</b> Select <b>Common Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Downloads</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Images</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Show Images or Do not Show</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> <b>Sounds</b> Select <b>Common Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Downloads</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Sounds</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Play Sounds or Do not Play</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Memory Operation</b>	Clear cache (temporarily saved information in Cache Memory), cookies (information sent by a server for user identification) or authentication information (user ID or password previously entered) Select <b>Common Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Memory Operation</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Delete Cache, Delete Cookies or Delete Auth Info</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b>

<b>Download to</b> Default: Phone Preferred	Select whether to save downloaded files on handset or Memory Card Select <b>Common Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Download to</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Phone Preferred or Prefer Card</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If selected memory is low, downloaded files are not saved.</li> <li>Saving to Memory Card is prohibited depending on the file; such files are saved to handset.</li> </ul>
<b>Initialized Browser</b>	Restore default settings and reset Bookmarks and Saved Pages Select <b>Common Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Initialized Browser</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Reset Settings</b>	Restore default browser settings Select <b>Common Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Reset Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Choose <b>Yes</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b>
<b>Warning Message</b> Default: On	Show or hide message appearing before PC Site Browser activation or switching Select <b>PC Site Browser</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>PC Site Browser Settings</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>Warning Message</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Select <b>PC Site Browser or Yahoo! Keitai</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b> ▶ Choose <b>On or Off</b> ▶ Press <b>[OK]</b>



## Security Settings

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Security Settings

<b>Manufacture Number</b> Default: Off	Select whether or not to send handset manufacture number automatically for authentication <b>Select <i>Manufacture Number</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose <i>On</i> (send) or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press [OK]</b>
<b>Send Referer</b> Default: Send	Select whether or not to send referer information to the Server <b>Select <i>Send Referer</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>Send or Not Send</i> ▶ Press [OK]</b>
<b>Cookies</b> Default: Enabled	Enable or disable cookies (P.15-18) <b>Select <i>Cookies</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>Enabled, Disabled</i> or <i>Confirm</i> ▶ Press [OK]</b>
<b>Script Settings</b> Default: On	Select whether or not to run scripts <b>Select <i>Script Settings</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>On, Ask NW Access, Confirm</i> or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press [OK]</b>
<b>Secure Prompt</b> Default: Show	Show or hide confirmations before entering and exiting secure pages <b>Select <i>Secure Prompt</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>Show</i> or <i>Do not Show</i> ▶ Press [OK]</b>

<b>Root Certificates</b>	Open electronic certificates issued by Certificate Authorities saved on handset <b>Select <i>Root Certificates</i> ▶ Press [OK]</b> To open certificates, select one ▶ Press [OK] Press [OK] to return.
<b>Keep Auth Info</b> Default: Per Browsing	Previously entered user ID or password is entered automatically for authentication <b>Select <i>Keep Auth Info</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Select <i>Per Browsing, On</i> (authenticate automatically) or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press [OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>Per Browsing</i>, entered user ID or password remains for automatic authentication and is deleted upon exiting the Internet.</li> <li>For <i>On</i>, entered user ID or password remains even after exiting the Internet or turning handset power off.</li> <li>Saved user ID or password is applicable to Basic/Digest authentication. Some sites may employ other HTTP authentication schemes.</li> </ul>
<b>Flash® Restriction</b> Default: On	Select whether or not to restrict Flash® downloads <b>Select <i>Flash® Restriction</i> ▶ Press [OK] ▶ Choose <i>On</i> (restrict) or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press [OK]</b>

## PC Site Browser Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

<b>Page Navigation</b> Default: On	Show/hide navigation map for continuous scroll Select <b>Common Settings</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <b>Scroll Settings</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <b>Page Navigation</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <b>On</b> or <b>Off</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Zoom Setting</b> Default: 100%	Select page scale Select <b>PC Site Browser</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <b>PC Site Browser Settings</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <b>Zoom Setting</b> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a scale ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

# 16

## S! Applications

<b>Getting Started</b> .....	16-2
<b>Using S! Applications</b> .....	16-2
■ Starting S! Applications .....	16-2
■ Downloading S! Applications .....	16-3
■ Screensaver .....	16-4
<b>Managing S! Applications</b> .....	16-4
<b>S! Application Settings</b> .....	16-5

## Getting Started

Download S! Applications, including games.

- Download and use 816SH compatible S! Applications.
- Separate subscriptions are required for S! Applications downloaded via Yahoo! Keitai.

### Network S! Applications

- Network S! Applications require Internet connection.
  - Before using a Network S! Application, a message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. To skip this confirmation, see **P.16-4**.

### Memory Status

- S! Applications are saved in S! Appli Library. To check memory status, see **P.8-2**.

**Tip** ▶ For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).






## Using S! Applications

### Starting S! Applications

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli

#### 1 Select S! Appli and press

S! Appli Library opens.


- To open Java™ License Information, select **Information** ▶ Press 
- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 
  - Options** ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ▶ Press 
- To open properties, select an S! Application ▶ Press 
  - Options** ▶ Select **Details** ▶ Press 

#### 2 Select an S! Application and press

S! Application starts.

- For operations, refer to the source Internet site, etc.
- If the S! Application cannot be used, S! Appli Library returns.

#### 3 To exit, press

- To pause, select **Suspend** ▶ Press 
  - S! Application resumes from pause point.



#### 4 Select **End** and press


**Tip** ▶ Incoming transmissions automatically pause S! Application. To show notice instead, see **P.16-6** "Calls & Alarms."

## Resuming S! Applications

**1** While  appears in Standby, press 




**2** Select **Resume** and press 

To end the S! Application, select **End**  Press 


To open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused, select **Cancel**  Press 

## Memory Card S! Applications

Synchronize Memory Cards used on other SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices to update S! Appli Library. Retrieve Network Information beforehand (P.1-15).




**Main Menu**  **S! Appli**  **Settings**  **Synchronization**

**1** Choose **Yes** and press 

**Tip**  It may take some time to update S! Appli Library depending on the number of files saved, etc.

## Downloading S! Applications

- Make sure signal is strong.
- S! Applications cannot be downloaded while one is paused.

**Main Menu**  **S! Appli**  **S! Appli**  **Download**

**1** Open an Internet site offering S! Applications

**2** Select an S! Application and press 

Properties appear.

- Check S! Application title, file size, etc.

**3** Press  **Yes**

Download starts.


To return to the site, choose **No** and press  to cancel.

**4** Downloaded S! Application is automatically saved and a confirmation appears


- When you download a new version of S! Application set as Screensaver (P.16-4), Screensaver may be canceled.

**5** Choose **Yes** and press 

Internet connection ends and S! Appli Library opens.

To return to the site, choose **No** and press .

Starting S! Applications: P.16-2

- Tip** 
  - Some S! Applications require permission settings. Follow onscreen prompts (may be in Japanese).
  - Download compatible S! Applications to Memory Card.

## Screensaver

Set an S! Application to activate when handset enters Standby.

### Activating/Canceling Screensaver

Screensaver is **Off** by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Screensaver ▶ Switch On/  
Off

#### 1 Choose **On** and press

To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press

**Tip** ▶ To set Activation Time, see P.16-6.

### Setting Screensaver

- Only one compatible S! Application can be set for Screensaver.
- Screensaver cannot be set when an S! Application is paused.
- Memory Card S! Applications cannot be set.

**Main Menu** ▶ S! Appli ▶ S! Appli

#### 1 Select an S! Application and press **Options**

#### 2 Select **As Screensaver** and press

- **As Screensaver** appears for compatible S! Applications.

- Note** ▶
- Screensaver may not start or an active Screensaver may be canceled when Headphones or an external device (handsfree device, etc.) is connected to handset.
  - Screensaver which responds to incoming transmissions may cancel out selected Mode Settings profile.

## Managing S! Applications

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ S! Appli ▶ S! Appli

Customize the method of confirmation, etc. for each S! Application operation

**Select an S! Application** ▶ Press  **Options**  
▶ **Select Permission** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select an item** ▶ Press  ▶ **Select an option** ▶ Press

To reset, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Permission**  
▶ Press  ▶ Select **Reset Settings** ▶ Press   
▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

### Permission

- Options:
  - **Ask Once**  
Confirmation appears at initial activation
  - **Always Ask**  
Confirmations appear before operations
  - **Never Ask**  
Confirmations do not appear
  - **No**  
Operation is blocked
- Some S! Applications have no settings. Items/options vary by S! Application.

Move to Card	Move S! Applications to Memory Card <b>Select an S! Application</b> → Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Move to Card</b> → Press
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose <b>Yes</b> to overwrite or <b>No</b> → Press </li> <li>S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card when the same S! Application is already saved or when Memory Card memory is low.</li> <li>Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.</li> </ul>
Delete	Delete S! Applications one at a time <b>Select an S! Application</b> → Press <b>Options</b> → <b>Select Delete</b> → Press  → <b>Choose Yes</b> → Press
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Handset Code may be required.</li> <li>Some preloaded S! Applications can be deleted. To restore them, perform Memory All Clear (P.16-6).</li> </ul>

Cancel Screensaver to manage Screensaver S! Application.

## S! Application Settings

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings

Application Volume <small>Default</small> Level 3	Adjust the volume of S! Application sounds <b>Select Application Volume</b> → Press  → <b>Use</b> to adjust level → Press
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Manner mode, volume set in Manner settings applies.</li> </ul>
Backlight <small>Default</small> Normal Settings	Select a Backlight status for S! Applications <b>Select Backlight</b> → Press  → <b>Select Switch On/Off</b> → Press  → <b>Select Always On, Always Off or Normal Settings</b> → Press
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Always On</b> Backlight remains on while S! Application runs</li> <li><b>Always Off</b> Backlight remains off while S! Application runs</li> <li><b>Normal Settings</b> Applies Display Backlight setting (P.9-12)</li> </ul>
Blink <small>Default</small> On	When activated, Backlight flashes while compatible S! Applications play <b>Select Backlight</b> → Press  → <b>Select Blink</b> → Press  → <b>Choose On or Off</b> → Press
	When activated, handset vibrates while compatible S! Applications play <b>Select Vibration</b> → Press  → <b>Choose On or Off</b> → Press
Vibration <small>Default</small> On	When activated, handset vibrates while compatible S! Applications play <b>Select Vibration</b> → Press  → <b>Choose On or Off</b> → Press
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In Manner mode, vibration set in Manner settings applies.</li> </ul>

<b>Screensaver Activation Time</b> Default: 3 seconds	Enter time delay before Screensaver activates in Standby <b>Select Screensaver</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → <b>Select Activation Time</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter time (01 - 10 seconds) → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Calls &amp; Alarms</b> Default: *	Select handset response to incoming calls, etc. while an S! Application is active <b>Select Calls &amp; Alarms</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → <b>Select from Voice Calls to Start Demand</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → <b>Select handset response</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Handset response options:             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Accept Calls, Message/Alarm/Start Priority</b> S! Application pauses for incoming call/mail, Alarm or S! Appli Request</li> <li>▪ <b>Show Call Notice, Message/Alarm/Start Notice</b> A message appears for incoming calls, mail, etc. For example, <b>090392XXXX1</b> appears. Press <input type="checkbox"/> to answer a call.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Regardless of setting, a message appears for S! Applications started from Screensaver.</li> </ul>
<b>Set to Default</b>	Restore default S! Application settings <b>Select Set to Default</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter Handset Code → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Choose Yes → Press <input type="checkbox"/>

\*Voice Calls/Video Calls/Circle Talk: Accept Calls

Incoming Message: Message Notice

Alarm: Alarm Priority

Start Demand: Start Priority

<b>Memory All Clear</b>	Restore S! Appli Library to default setting <b>Select Memory All Clear</b> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Enter Handset Code → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Choose Yes → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Memory All Clear deletes downloaded S! Applications.</li> <li>• Memory All Clear resets Near Chat application password and thus cancels Near Chat access restriction.</li> </ul>
-------------------------	--



<b>S! Cast (Japanese)</b> .....	17-2
■ Service Registration & Content Subscription.....	17-2
■ New Received Information.....	17-2
■ Back Issues.....	17-2
■ Using Information.....	17-3
■ Using Weather Indicator .....	17-3
<b>e-Books (Japanese)</b> .....	17-4
■ e-Book Viewer.....	17-4
■ BookSurfing® .....	17-5

## S! Cast (Japanese)

Register with S! Cast to show Weather Indicator (P.17-3) in Standby and subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically overnight.

- A separate subscription and registration are required.
- Only available within Japan on compatible 3G handsets.

### Service Registration & Content Subscription

Complete service registration to use S! Cast, then subscribe to content.

Registration and subscription require Internet use (connection fees apply). Confirm signal strength beforehand.

**Main Menu** ▶ Entertainment ▶ S! CAST/Weather Icon

#### 1 Select **Registration/Cancel** and press **OK**

Handset connects to the Internet and service registration page opens.

- Follow onscreen instructions.

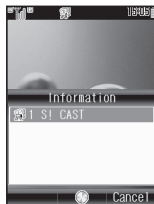
### New Received Information

#### 1 Information window opens for new information

#### 2 Select **S! CAST** and press **OK**

Information appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions. Information handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.
  - Selecting Items: P.15-5
  - Using Linked Info: P.15-12



Information

### 3 Press **OK** to exit

#### Show or Hide Information Window

- Press **OK** ▶ Select **Entertainment** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select **S! CAST Notif.** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press **OK**

#### Opening Unread Latest Information

- Press **OK** ▶ Select **Entertainment** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select **What's New** ▶ Press **OK**

#### Requesting Re-Delivery

- If information delivery fails, follow these steps to request re-delivery of latest information. (Make sure signal is strong and stable.)

Press **OK** ▶ Select **Entertainment** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Select **Get Latest Contents** ▶ Press **OK** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **OK**

### Back Issues

**Main Menu** ▶ Entertainment ▶ S! CAST/Weather Icon ▶ History

#### 1 Select date and press **OK**

#### 2 Press **OK** to exit

## Using Information

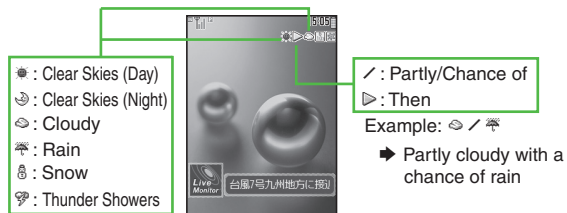
Open S! Cast information and follow these steps.

<b>Save File</b>	Press <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <b>Save Items</b> ➔ Press
<b>Change Font Size</b>	Press <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <b>Font Size</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select a size ➔ Press
<b>Change Scroll Unit</b>	Press <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <b>Scroll Unit</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Select a unit ➔ Press
<b>Copy Text</b>	Press <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <b>Copy Text</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Perform from Step 3 on P.3-8
<b>Open Properties</b>	Press <b>Options</b> ➔ Select <b>Page Information</b> ➔ Press ■ Press  to return.

## Using Weather Indicator

After S! Cast registration, local area weather indicator (updated automatically based on Location Information) appears in Standby.

- To check weather forecast, see right.



- (chance of rain), (fall foliage season), etc. appear at the same time.

### Manual Update

- Press ➔ Select **Entertainment** ➔ Press ➔ Select **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Weather Icon** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Manual Update** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
- Available when Icon Update is **On**.

### Weather Forecast (Japanese)

**Main Menu** ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ➔ **Weather Icon**

**1** Select **Weather** and press

### Weather Indicator Settings

Follow these steps first.

**Main Menu** ➔ **Entertainment** ➔ **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ➔ **Weather Icon** ➔ **Settings**

<b>Standby Settings</b> Default On	Show or hide Weather Indicator in Standby Select <b>Standby Settings</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <b>On or Off</b> ➔ Press
<b>Weather Notif.</b> Default On	Toggle Notification (Information window) on/off Select <b>Weather Notif.</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <b>On or Off</b> ➔ Press
<b>Icon Update</b> Default On	Activate or cancel automatic updates Select <b>Icon Update</b> ➔ Press  ➔ Choose <b>On or Off</b> ➔ Press ■ For <b>On</b> , choose <b>Yes</b> ➔ Press

## e-Books (Japanese)

Use BookSurfing® to download/view e-media (books, comics, photo books, etc.), or e-Book Viewer to open/view XMDF files on 816SH. Zoom pages or play embedded sounds/vibration. Content Key required for access to some e-media.

e-Book Viewer	Use to open or view XMDF files
BookSurfing®	Use to download/view e-media or CCF files

### Downloading e-Books

- Press **▽** ➔ Select **メニューリスト** ➔ Press **●** ➔ Select **書籍・コミック写真集** ➔ Press **●**
- Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).
  - Visit Sharp Space Town for e-Book order information, etc.

## e-Book Viewer

Read books and dictionary files saved in Data Folder (Books).

- Handset may not support some embedded sounds/images.
- e-Book Viewer cannot be started during Synchronization.
- e-Book Viewer is an S! Application.

## Reading Books/Dictionaries

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment

### 1 Select **e-Book Viewer** and press **●**

e-Book Viewer starts.

- Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

■ When an S! Application is paused, choose **Yes** ➔ Press **●**

- Note** ▶
- Only **zbf**, **zbs**, **zbk** files appear in Library.
  - Removing Memory Card while an e-Book is open ends e-Book Viewer.

- Tip** ▶
- Open handset/Memory Card Data Folder (Books) via e-Book Viewer. Open other Memory Card folders containing e-Books used on other handset models via Library (P.17-5).



















## Library

Open Memory Card books and dictionaries used on other handset models.



Perform Step 1 below first.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment

### 1 Select *e-Book Viewer* and press Library

Switch Folders	Switch folders Press  Options → Select <i>Switch Folders</i> → Press  → Select a folder → Press 
Change Name	Rename folders/files Select a folder/file → Press  Options → Select <i>Change Name</i> → Press  → Edit → Press 
Move	Move files Select a file → Press  Options → Select <i>Move</i> → Press  → Select a location → Press  → Press 
New Folder	Create new folders Press  Options → Select <i>New Folder</i> → Press  → Enter name → Press 
Details	Open file properties Select a file → Press  Options → Select <i>Details</i> → Press 
Delete	Delete folders/files Select a folder/file → Press  Options → Select <i>Delete</i> → Press  → Choose <i>Yes</i> → Press 

## Copy Text

- 1 In Reading window, press  (メニュー) → Select 文字列を北' -  
→ Press  → Perform from Step 3 on P.3-8
- Some text cannot be copied.


## BookSurfing®

Activate BookSurfing® S! Application to read comics, photo books and other CCF files saved in Data Folder (Books). To read fee-based CCF files, download Content Keys.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment

### 1 Select *BookSurfing* and press

BookSurfing® S! Application starts.

- Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.
- When an S! Application is paused, choose *Yes* → Press 

**Note** ▶ When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files via Memory Card and retrieve Content Key to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

**Tip** ▶ Save CCF files to handset/Memory Card Data Folder (Books).

<b>S! Town (Japanese)</b> .....	<b>18-2</b>	<b>Circle Talk</b> .....	<b>18-8</b>
■ Using S! Town.....	18-2	■ Initiating Circle Talk.....	18-8
<b>S! Loop (Japanese)</b> .....	<b>18-2</b>	■ Accepting a Circle Talk Request .....	18-10
<b>Hot Status</b> .....	<b>18-3</b>	■ Creating Circle Talk Member List .....	18-10
■ Changing My Status .....	18-3	■ Editing Circle Talk Member List.....	18-11
■ Registering Members .....	18-4	■ Circle Talk Settings .....	18-11
■ Opening Hot Status .....	18-5	<b>Near Chat (Japanese)</b> .....	<b>18-12</b>
■ Editing Hot Status Member List.....	18-6	■ Getting Started.....	18-12
■ Hot Status Settings.....	18-7	■ Sending Near Chat Request.....	18-13
		■ Receiving Near Chat Request .....	18-13

## S! Town (Japanese)

S! Town is an online communication application. Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can participate in events and meet other users.

- Usage requires the pre-installed S! Town S! Application.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.
- S! Town is not available if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

### Using S! Town

When using S! Town for the first time, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Communication*

#### 1 Select **S! Town** and press

S! Town starts.

- Refer to the S! Town S! Application's help menu for operational instructions.

- Tip** ▶
- Check registration status or cancel registration via Yahoo! Keitai.
  - An upgrade notice may appear when starting S! Town. Follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

### S! Town Library

- Downloaded S! Town-compatible S! Applications are saved to S! Town Library. To start an application in S! Town Library, follow these steps.

**Press**  ▶ **Select *Communication*** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Select *S! Town*** ▶ **Press**  **Library** ▶ **Select an application** ▶ **Press** 

## S! Loop (Japanese)

S! Loop is an online communication service. Share your diary, join BBS, etc.

- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.
- S! Loop is not available if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

**Main Menu** ▶ *Communication*

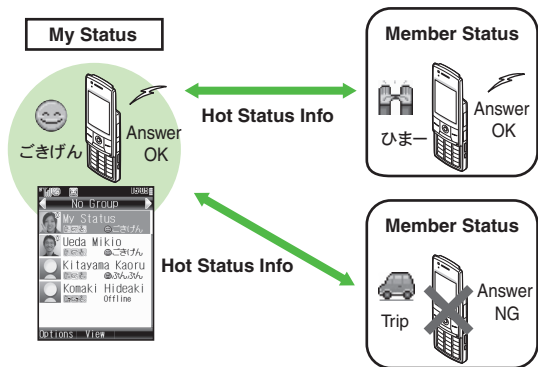
#### 1 Select **S! Loop** and press

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

# Hot Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

- A separate subscription is required.



- Register compatible handset numbers to member list. Hot Status information is updated automatically.

**Note** ▶ Hot Status is not available when IP Service Setting (P.9-18) is **Off**.

## Changing My Status

### 1 Press **[V+1194]** for 1+ seconds

My Status window opens.

- Only Connection Setting and Standby Window On/Off are available when Connection status (📶) is **Offline**.

### 2 Select an item and press **[OK]**

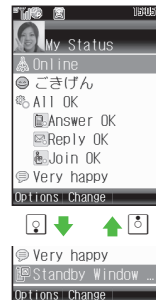
### 3 Select status and press **[OK]**

- To change more items, repeat Steps 2 - 3.  
■ For Comment (🗨️), enter text ▶ Press **[OK]**

### 4 Press **[F7] Update**

My Status is set.

- New status is sent to Hot Status members.
- Omit Step 4 for Connection Setting and Standby Window On/Off.





## ■ My Status Items & Settings

Item	Setting	Default
Connection Setting	Online <sup>1</sup> /Offline	Offline
Status	Select from 16 combinations <sup>2</sup>	☹ごきげん
Answer Status	All OK/Only Mail is OK/ All NG/User Setting <sup>3</sup>	All OK
Availability (Calls)	Answer OK/Urgency Only/ Answer NG	Answer OK
Availability (Mail)	Reply OK/Check Later	Reply OK
Availability (Circle Talk)	Join OK/Auto Join/ Join NG	Join OK
Comment	Up to 15 characters	—
Standby Window	On/Off	On

<sup>1</sup>Even if **Online** is set, Connection status is updated to **Unknown** or **Offline** after a period of no signal detection. (Connection status is updated to **Online** when signal returns.)

<sup>2</sup>Create custom combinations by changing Status Icon/Label (P.18-7 "Status Setting").

<sup>3</sup>See P.18-7 "Answer Status" to assign custom combination.

## Registering Members

Register members by sending or receiving a request.

- Register up to 30 members.
- Members cannot be registered when Connection Setting (left) is **Offline**.

### Registering by Sending a Request

Main Menu ▶ Communication

#### 1 Select **Hot Status** and press

- When members are already registered, use to select a Group ▶ Press ▶ Select **Add Member** ▶ Press ▶ Skip ahead to Step 3

#### 2 Choose **Yes** and press

#### 3 **Phone Book**

##### 1 Select **Phone Book** and press

##### 2 Select an entry and press

- For entries with multiple numbers, select one ▶ Press

#### **Direct Entry**

##### 1 Select **Add New Entry** and press

##### 2 Enter a phone number and press

#### 4 Choose **Yes** and press

Registration request is sent to the number.

- Registration is complete when an acceptance notice arrives.
- When registration is complete, My Status is sent and member's Hot Status information appears on handset.

## Registering from a Received Request

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.

### 1 Choose **Yes** and press

Acceptance notice is sent and the number is registered to Hot Status member list.

To reject, choose **No** → Press  → Choose **Yes** → Press

- Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.

**Tip** ▶ Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered in total or handset fails to respond within two hours.

## Opening Hot Status

**Main Menu** ▶ *Communication*

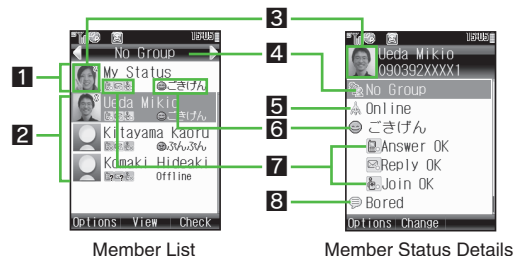
### 1 Select **Hot Status** and press

Hot Status member list (below) appears.

### 2 Use to select a Group

To open member status details, select a member → Press

## Window Description



#### 1 My Status

#### 2 Members

#### 3 Image

- Image set for **Picture:** in My Details or Phone Book appears.

#### 4 Group Name

#### 5 Connection Status

#### 6 Status

#### 7 Availability

#### 8 Comment

## Editing Hot Status Member List




### Renaming Groups

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

- 1 Use  to select a Group and press  Options
- 2 Select *Edit Group Name* and press 
- 3 Enter name and press 

### Moving Members

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status


- 1 Select a member and press  Options
- 2 Select *Change Group* and press 
- 3 Select target Group and press 

Tip ► Open Standby Window in Communication mode (P.9-7) to view member Status/availability in Standby.

## Deleting Members

Deleting a member simultaneously deletes your number from the deleted member's Hot Status member list.

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

- 1 Select a member and press 
- 2 Press  Options
- 3 Select *Registration Release* and press 
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press 
- 5 Choose *Yes* and press 

Cancellation notice is sent and the member is deleted from Hot Status member list.

- Note ►
- Deleted members cannot be registered for 24 hours.
  - Registration request arrives when the member fails to receive the cancellation notice within 24 hours.

### When Rejection/Cancellation Notice Arrives

- Member is deleted from Hot Status member list.
  - When handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours, registration request is sent to the member.

## Hot Status Settings

Follow these steps first.

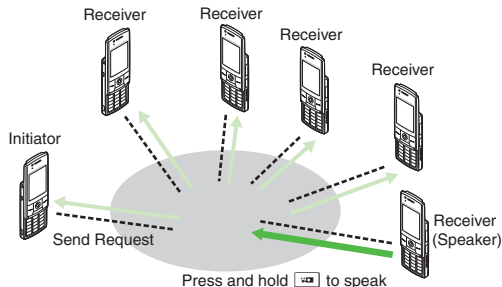
<b>Main Menu</b> ▶ <i>Communication</i> ▶ <i>Hot Status</i> ▶ <i>Options</i> (☒)	
<b>Request Reply</b> <small>Default:</small> Always Confirmed	Select handset response to registration requests <b>Select Settings</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select Request Reply</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select an option</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> • Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Always Confirmed</b> Show confirmation for all requests</li> <li>■ <b>Unregistered Entry</b> Reject requests from numbers not saved in Phone Book; otherwise, confirmation appears</li> <li>■ <b>Always Ignored</b> Reject all requests</li> </ul>
<b>Answer Status</b> <small>Default:</small> Calls: Answer OK[Mail] Mail: Reply OK[Mail] Circle Talk: Join OK	Assign custom combination to <b>User Setting</b> of Answer Status (P.18-4) <b>Select Settings</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select Answer Status</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select User Setting</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select a type</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select availability</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Save</b>

<b>Status Setting</b>	Change Status Icon Pictogram or edit Status Label description for My Status <b>Select Settings</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select Status Setting</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select a Status</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select Status Icon</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select a Pictogram</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select Status Label</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Enter text</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <b>Save</b> • Pictogram List: P.19-12 • Enter up to four characters for Status Label.
<b>Status Update</b>	Update Hot Status information manually <b>Select Settings</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ▶ <b>Select Status Update</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/>
<b>Hot Status Notification List</b>	Open list of unconfirmed Hot Status-related notices <b>Select Hot Status Notification List</b> ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> <input type="checkbox"/> To open details, select a notice ▶ Press <input type="radio"/> ■ For registration requests, see P.18-5 "Registering from a Received Request."

# Circle Talk

Circle Talk is a Walkie-Talkie type communication service. Press one key to speak to up to ten parties simultaneously.

- Only available on compatible 3G handsets.
- Press and hold **[V-M]** to take the floor and speak; other participants may only listen until the floor is released.
- A subscription to Hot Status (P.18-3) is required.
- Transmission/connection fees apply during Circle Talk.



**Note** ▶ Before use, set IP Service Setting (P.9-18) to **On** and Connection Setting of My Status (P.18-3) to **Online**. (Circle Talk is disabled when Connection Setting is **Offline**.)

## Initiating Circle Talk

Create Circle Talk member list beforehand (P.18-10).

### 1 Press **[V-M]**

- ▶ To register Circle Talk members, select **<Add New Entry>** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Perform Step 3 on P.18-10

### 2 Select a member or Group and press **[OK]**

- ▶ To add members, press **[Options]** ▶ Select **Add Member** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select how to specify member ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select a member, Group or entry, or enter a phone number ▶ Press **[OK]**
- ▶ To delete members, select one ▶ Press **[Options]** ▶ Select **Delete Member** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **[OK]**

### 3 Press **[OK]** **Call**

- Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.



#### 4 Press and hold to speak

Do so while initiating Circle Talk to be the first speaker.

- Speaker's voice is heard by all other participants.
- Speak for up to 30 seconds at one time.
- Warning tone sounds five seconds before limit.

Press  to toggle Loudspeaker on/off

#### 5 Release when finished

- The floor is released automatically when the time is up.

#### 6 To speak again, press and hold when **Press and Hold** appears

- **Own** appears when you have the floor.
- **Busy** appears if the floor is taken; try again later.

#### 7 Press to exit

- Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.





##### Direct Entry

- Enter a phone number → Press  → Perform from Step 3 on P.18-8

##### Incoming Calls/Alarm during Circle Talk

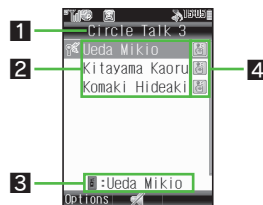
- Handset responds to incoming calls according to **Incoming Calls** settings (P.18-11).
- Alarm Times are announced after exiting Circle Talk.

##### Rejoining Circle Talk

- In Standby, press / to open **Dialled Numbers/Received Calls** → Select the most recent Circle Talk record → Press  **Options** → Select **Rejoin Circle Talk** → Press 

- An error message appears when all other participants have exited or 11 participants are already engaged.

##### Window Description



- 1 Total Number of Participants
- 2 Participants
- 3 Circle Talk Status
- 4 Connection Status

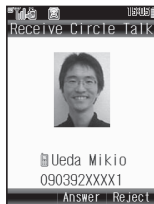
## Accepting a Circle Talk Request

- 1** While handset is ringing/vibrating, press **[vca]**, **[end call]** or **[end call]**

Circle Talk starts.

■ To take the floor, see **P.18-9**.

- 2** Press **[end call]** to exit



- Note** ▶
- To always accept Circle Talk requests automatically, set Circle Talk availability of My Status (**P.18-3**) to **Auto Join**. If **Join NG** is set, Circle Talk requests are always rejected.
  - Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: **P.9-15**)

## Creating Circle Talk Member List

Save phone numbers to create Circle Talk member list.

- Save members as individuals or Groups.
- Save up to 30 entries in total (up to ten members per Group).

- 1** Press **[vca]**

- 2** Select **<Add New Entry>** and press **[end call]**

■ When **Register the circle talk member right now?** appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press **[end call]**

- 3** **Saving as Individuals**

- 1** Select **Individual** and press **[end call]**

- 2** Select **Members List** or **Phone Book** and press **[end call]**

- 3** Select an entry and press **[end call]**

■ For entries with multiple numbers, select one ▶ Press **[end call]**

### Saving as Groups

- 1** Select **Group** and press **[end call]**

- 2** Select **Group Name:** and press **[end call]**

- 3** Enter name and press **[end call]**

- 4** Select from **No.1:** to **No.10:** and press **[end call]**

- 5** Select **Members List** or **Phone Book** and press **[end call]**

- 6** Select an entry and press **[end call]**

■ For entries with multiple numbers, select one ▶ Press **[end call]**

- 7** Repeat Steps **4** - **6** to add members

- 8** Press **[x7]** **Save**

## Editing Circle Talk Member List

### Editing Members or Groups

**1** Press **[vcr]**

### 2 Individual Members

**1** Select a member and press **[☰]** **Options**

**2** Select **Edit** and press **[●]**

**3** Press **[●]**

- Perform from Step **2** in "Saving as Individuals" on P.18-10.

### Groups

**1** Select a Group and press **[☰]** **Options**

**2** Select **Edit** and press **[●]**

- Perform from Step **2** in "Saving as Groups" on P.18-10.

### Deleting Members or Groups

**1** Press **[vcr]**

**2** Select a member or Group and press **[☰]** **Options**

**3** Select **Delete** and press **[●]**

**4** Choose **Yes** and press **[●]**

## Circle Talk Settings

<b>Loudspeaker</b> Default On	Activate or cancel Loudspeaker for Circle Talk Press <b>[vcr]</b> → Press <b>[☰]</b> <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Loudspeaker</b> → Press <b>[●]</b> → Choose <b>On</b> or <b>Off</b> → Press <b>[●]</b>
<b>Incoming Calls</b> Default Reject Calls	Set response to calls received during Circle Talk Press <b>[vcr]</b> → Press <b>[☰]</b> <b>Options</b> → Select <b>Incoming Calls</b> → Press <b>[●]</b> → Select <b>Voice Calls or Video Calls</b> → Press <b>[●]</b> → Select <b>handset response</b> → Press <b>[●]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Handset response options:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <b>Reject Calls</b> Incoming calls are ignored. (Caller hears a busy tone.)</li><li>■ <b>Accept Calls</b> Incoming calls interrupt Circle Talk sessions</li></ul></li></ul>



## Near Chat (Japanese)

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten meters.

- Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.
- Usage requires the pre-installed Near Chat S! Application.
- For details, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.
- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear (P.16-6) that may be used to reset the application password.
- For more about password restriction, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

**Note** ▶ Near Chat range may vary by ambient conditions.

### Getting Started

Activate the following Bluetooth® settings beforehand.

<b>Bluetooth®</b>	<b>P.10-7</b> (choose <b>On</b> )
<b>Visibility</b>	<b>P.10-9</b> (select <b>Show My Phone</b> )
<b>S! Appli Request</b>	Below (choose <b>On</b> )

- Note** ▶
- Handset may receive unsolicited connection requests. Choose **No** and press  in Step 2 of "Receiving Near Chat Request" on P.18-13 to reject such requests.
  - Set Visibility to **Show My Phone** and activate S! Appli Request to receive Near Chat requests.

- Tip** ▶ Starting Near Chat activates Bluetooth® and sets Visibility to **Show My Phone**. Bluetooth® remains active even after ending Near Chat but Visibility returns to its previous state.

### S! Appli Request

S! Appli Request is **On** by default.

**Main Menu** ▶ Connectivity ▶ Bluetooth ▶ My Device Settings  
 ▶ S! Appli Request ▶ Switch On/Off

#### 1 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

- ▶ For **On**, if **Activate Bluetooth?** appears, choose **Yes** ▶  
 Press

## Sending Near Chat Request

Main Menu ▶ Communication

### 1 Select *Near chat* and press

■ If *Activate Bluetooth?* appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

### 2 Send Near Chat request via the application

- Near Chat starts when the other party accepts your request.

### 3 To end Near Chat, exit the application (P.16-2)



## Receiving Near Chat Request

### 1 When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and Bluetooth® Notification appears

- After 30 seconds of inactivity, Information window opens, tone sounds and notification appears. (Information window will reopen after another 30 seconds of inactivity.)



### 2 Choose **Yes** and press

Near Chat S! Application starts.

■ To reject request, choose **No** ▶ Press

### 3 To end Near Chat, exit the application (P.16-2)

**Note** ▶ Tone volume or alert type may automatically adjust to protect hearing. (Sound Adjuster: P.9-15)

**Latest Information** Open details of the most recently received Near Chat request

Main Menu ▶ Connectivity ▶ Bluetooth ▶ My Device Settings ▶ S! Appli Request

Select **Latest Information** ▶ Press

■ Press  to return.

# 19

## Appendix

Software Update.....	19-2
Troubleshooting.....	19-4
Function List .....	19-8
Key Assignments .....	19-10
Pictogram List .....	19-12
Pager Code List.....	19-13
Character Code List.....	19-14
Specifications.....	19-20
Memory List.....	19-21
Index.....	19-22
Warranty & Service .....	19-36
Customer Service .....	19-37

# Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

- Choose to begin update or schedule update.
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.

## Precautions

**Before updating software, turn power off to end all active functions/applications, then restart handset.**


- Note** ▶
- Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).
  - Make sure signal is strong and stable beforehand.
  - Charge battery beforehand to reduce failure risk.
  - Do not remove battery; update may fail.
  - Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Tip** ▶ Software Update information is also available on SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

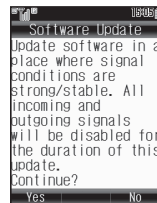
## Updating Software

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Software Update

### 1 Select Software Update and press

Confirmation appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions. (☰ appears during update.)
- Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- When updated, a message appears and handset reboots; a completion message appears and Information window opens (☰ appears).
  - While completion message appears, press  to acknowledge it and close Information window.




Confirmation



Update Complete

## Update Result

### ■ While Information window appears, select **Update Result** → Press


- Press  again to exit.

### ■ In Standby, press → **Select Settings**

- Press  → **Select Software Update**

- Press  → **Select Update Result** →

### Press


- Press  again to return.



### Note ▶

- Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.19-37).
- Phone Book entries, media files, and other handset contents are not affected by firmware updates, but always back up important information. (Some files cannot be copied.) SoftBank cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.
- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it.

## ■ Scheduled Update





Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press  or wait about ten seconds for update to start.

- Update will not start if other functions are in use. After all operations end, a confirmation appears. If operations do not end within ten minutes, scheduled update is automatically canceled.
- When Keypad Lock is Active
  - If set to **Link to Slider (P.9-18)**, handset reboot with Slider open automatically cancels it; remains active if Slider is closed.
  - If set to **Manual (P.9-18)**, handset reboot automatically cancels it regardless of Slider position.



Confirmation

# Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Was  pressed and held long enough?</li> <li>Battery may need to be charged or replaced.</li> <li>Battery may not be properly installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press and hold  longer.</li> <li>Charge battery or install a charged battery.</li> <li>Install battery properly.</li> </ul>
Handset won't respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Is <b>Switch On/Off</b> in PIN Entry <b>On</b>?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If <b>On</b>, PIN1 is required. Enter PIN1 according to onscreen instructions. For more, see <b>P.9-22</b>.</li> </ul>
<i>Insert USIM Card</i> appears in Standby and handset is unresponsive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>USIM Card may not be properly inserted.</li> <li>The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.</li> <li>There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure USIM Card is properly inserted. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.</li> <li>Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.</li> <li>Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.</li> </ul>
Keypad won't respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keypad Lock may be active. ( appears)</li> <li>Password Lock may be active. ( appears)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cancel Keypad Lock (<b>P.1-16</b>).</li> <li>Cancel Password Lock (<b>P.9-17</b>).</li> </ul>
Cannot place call from Phone Book	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The number may be saved as Secret entry.</li> <li>Phone Book Lock may be active.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Activate Show Secret Data (<b>P.9-23</b>).</li> <li>Cancel Phone Book Lock (<b>P.9-18</b>).</li> </ul>

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>out</b> appears in Standby and call won't connect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Handset may be outside the service area or otherwise beyond signal transmission range.</li> <li>• Is <b>GSM</b> selected in Select Service (P.2-15)?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.</li> <li>• Select another mode according to service area.</li> </ul>
Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Did you include the area code or the first 0?</li> <li>• Handset may be out-of-range. (<b>out</b> appears)</li> <li>• Handset Offline Mode may be active. (<b>⓪</b> appears)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dial the number including the area code or 0.</li> <li>• Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.</li> <li>• Cancel Offline Mode (P.2-19).</li> </ul>
Call is choppy or cut off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Network signal may be weak.</li> <li>• Battery may need to be charged or replaced.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.</li> <li>• Charge battery or install a charged battery.</li> </ul>
Line is noisy during calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Network signal may be weak or unstable.</li> </ul>	—
Battery won't charge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.</li> <li>• AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.</li> <li>• Battery may not be properly installed.</li> <li>• Battery terminals, AC Charger connector or External Device Port may need to be cleaned.</li> <li>• Battery may not charge outside 5°C to 35°C.</li> <li>• Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure connector is securely inserted and try again.</li> <li>• Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and try again.</li> <li>• Open handset, install battery properly and try again.</li> <li>• Clean terminals, connector and Port with a cotton swab and try again.</li> <li>• Charge within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.</li> <li>• Replace battery with a new one.</li> </ul>
Battery charges quickly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remaining charge shortens charging time.</li> <li>• Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace battery with a new one.</li> </ul>
Handset or Charger feels warm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• During charging, AC Charger normally becomes warm; handset may feel warm to the touch during extended periods of use.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unless handset/accessories become very hot to the touch, this should be considered normal; regardless, avoid prolonged skin contact which could cause burn injuries (P.xvii).</li> </ul>

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
<b>Battery Time seems shorter than usual</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Environmental factors (temperature, charging/signal conditions), usage or settings can affect Battery Time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For more on Battery Time, usage factors and ways to extend Battery Time, see <b>P.1-10</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Display flickers</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display may flicker under fluorescent lights.</li> </ul>	—
<b>Display went dark</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Leaving Slider open with no key presses for a preset period cancels Backlight (Time Out) then panel (Display Saving); this is not a malfunction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press any key to reactivate Display Backlight.</li> </ul>

**Tip** ▶ For repairs and after-sales services, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.19-37**).

### Warning Signs


#### **out** appears

Handset is out-of-range.  
Move for a better signal.


#### **Battery low. Please connect to charger!** appears and short beeps sound

Battery is low (**P.1-11**).  
Charge or replace battery immediately.

#### **Keypad Lock** appears

Keypad Lock is active (**P.1-16**).  
Cancel to use Keypad. Press  to answer calls.





#### **Password Lock** appears

Password Lock is active (**P.9-17**).  
Cancel to place calls, etc.  
Press  to answer calls.

### S! Application Display Messages

Display	Cause & Solution
<b>Application suspended. End application?</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An S! Application is paused. ↓</li> <li>Choose <b>Yes</b> to exit application and proceed.</li> </ul>
<b>Application is suspended.</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An S! Application is paused. ↓</li> <li>Select <b>End</b> to exit application or <b>Cancel</b> to proceed with the application paused.</li> </ul>
<b>○○ will be downloaded to Phone.</b> <b>Download Size: XXKB</b> <b>Save Size: XXKB</b> <b>Download?</b> <b>Battery low. Download may fail.</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Download may fail due to low battery. ↓</li> <li>Charge battery then try again.</li> </ul>



Display	Cause & Solution
○○ will be downloaded to Memory Card. Not enough memory in Phone. Download Size: XXKB Save Size: XXKB Download?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Memory is full. ↓</li> <li>Press  to download or  to cancel.</li> </ul>
Exceeds limit. Cannot save.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>100 S! Applications are already saved. (The message disappears automatically.) ↓</li> <li>Delete applications (P.16-5) and try again.</li> </ul>
Same version found. Continue download?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The same version of selected S! Application is already saved. ↓</li> <li>Choose <b>Yes</b> (download) or <b>No</b> (cancel) and press .</li> </ul>
New version found. Continue download?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An older version of the same S! Application is saved. ↓</li> <li>Choose <b>Yes</b> (download) or <b>No</b> (cancel) and press .</li> </ul>

**Tip** ▶ If one of these messages appears, S! Application cannot be downloaded:

- Improper data. Cannot download application.**
- Size too large. Cannot receive.**

## Messaging Mishaps

### ■ When S! Mail is not delivered as sent

Causes include the following. For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

- **Recipient is not subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail.**
- **Recipient handset is not S! Mail-compatible.**
  - The maximum size of messages/attachments recipient handsets can receive varies by make and model.
- **Recipient handset is not JPEG-compatible.**
  - Some Long Mail-compatible handsets may only be able to process PNG images; convert JPEG files to PNG (P.8-13), then attach and send.

### ■ When handset memory is insufficient

New messages cannot be delivered (✉ appears in red). Undeliverable mail is saved in Server Mail Box.


- Delete messages to free memory for new ones (P.14-25). When memory is available, new messages are delivered automatically.
- Delete unprotected messages automatically to receive new ones (P.14-32).
- Even if memory is not full, handset cannot receive new messages larger than remaining memory.

# Function List

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to
Communication	S! Town	P.18-2
	S! Loop	P.18-2
	Hot Status	P.18-3
	Circle Talk	P.18-8
	Near chat	P.18-12
Yahoo! Keitai	Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-3
	Bookmarks	P.15-10
	Saved Pages	P.15-10
	Enter URL	P.15-4
	History	P.15-4
	Live Monitor	P.15-14
	PC Site Browser	P.15-16
	Common Settings	P.15-18
Media Player	Music	P.7-6
	Videos	P.7-6
	Streaming	P.15-13
Messaging	Setting	P.7-9
	Received Msg.	P.14-21
	Create Message	P.14-4
	Retrieve New Msg.	P.14-16
	Drafts	P.14-26
	Templates	P.14-10
	Sent Messages	P.14-21
	Unsent Messages	P.14-21
	Chat Folder	P.14-30
	Server Mail Box	P.14-20
	Create New SMS	P.14-11
	Settings	P.14-32
	Memory Status	P.14-20

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to	
Camera	-	P.6-2	
Data Folder	Pictures	P.8-2	
	DCIM	P.8-2	
	My Pictograms	P.8-2	
	Ring Songs·Tones	P.8-2	
	S! Appli	P.16-2	
	Music	P.8-2	
	Videos	P.8-2	
	Books	P.8-2	
	Custom Screens	P.9-9	
	Flash®	P.8-2	
	Flash®Ringtones	P.8-2	
Other Documents	P.8-2		
Memory Status	P.8-2		
Tools	Tools 1	Calendar	P.12-2
		Alarms	P.12-10
		Calculator	P.12-14
		Tasks	P.12-8
	Tools 2	World Clock	P.12-13
		Voice Recorder	P.12-15
		Document Viewer	P.12-16
		Stopwatch	P.12-17
		Countdown Timer	P.12-18
	Tools 3	Hour Minder	P.12-19
		Expenses Memo	P.12-21
		Notepad	P.3-10
		Barcode/Scan	P.12-22
	Phone Help	P.12-29	

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to
Entertainment	S! CAST/Weather Icon	P.17-2
	BookSurfing	P.17-5
	e-Book Viewer	P.17-4
S! Appli	S! Appli	P.16-2
	Settings	P.16-5
	Information	P.16-2
Connectivity	Bluetooth	P.10-6
	Infrared	P.10-2
	Mass Storage	P.11-8
	USB Charge	P.10-12
	Memory Card	P.11-2
Phone	Phone Book	P.4-2
	Add New Entry	P.4-4
	Information	P.2-7
	Call Log	P.2-12
	Play Messages	P.2-9
	Call Voicemail	P.13-4
	Category Control	P.4-11
	My Details	P.4-18
	Speed Dial List	P.4-13
	Mail Groups	P.4-12
	S! Address Book	P.4-15
	Ph.Book Settings	P.4-14
Manage Entries	P.4-3	

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to	
Settings	Phone Settings	Mode Settings	P.9-2
		Display	P.9-4
		Custom Screens	P.9-9
		Sounds & Alerts	P.9-2
		Date & Time	P.9-15
		言語選択 (Language)	P.9-12
		User Dictionary	P.3-9
		Ringer Output	P.9-15
		Earpiece Volume	P.9-25
		Change Menu	P.1-21
		Locks	P.9-17
		Software Update	P.19-2
	Master Reset	P.9-23	
	Call/Video Call	Call Time & Cost	P.2-13
		Answer Phone	P.2-8
		Voicemail/Divert	P.13-3
		Video Call	P.5-5
		Show My Number	P.13-8
		 Missed Calls	P.13-5
		Int'l Calling	P.9-25
		Disp. Time/Call	P.9-26
		Call Barring	P.13-6
		Minute Minder	P.9-26
		Slider Settings	P.9-25
		Auto Answer	P.9-24
	Call Waiting	P.13-5	
	Network Settings	Select Network	P.10-10
		Select Service	P.2-15
		Offline Mode	P.2-19
		Retrieve NW Info	P.10-11
		Location Info	P.10-11
	Network Info	P.10-11	

# Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@./_-1 □ (Space)	1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4	たちつとっ	タチツテトツ	GHghi4	4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkI5	5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
8	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0	わをんー	ワヲンー	0	0	0
	・ ・ Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List	・ ・ - <sup>1</sup> Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List <sup>2</sup> (Symbol List → Log/History → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List <sup>2</sup> (Symbol List → Log/ History → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	* + P (Pause) ? - <sup>3</sup> Symbol List, Log/ History, Pictogram List	_____
	.. ♯ (Line Break) ? ! □ (Space)		.. ♯ (Line Break)?! □ (Space)	#	_____

<sup>1</sup> - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

<sup>2</sup> Double or single-byte according to the entry mode.

<sup>3</sup> \*, +, P (Pause), ? and - are for phone number entry.

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion (Up) <sup>4</sup>	Cursor Up			
	Conversion (Down) <sup>5</sup>	Cursor Down ↓ (Line Break)			
	Cursor Left				
	Cursor Right				
	Change Entry Mode				
	Toggle Case (for some characters)	Toggle Case + Toggle Mode (upper/lower and lower case)		_____	_____
 Press	Delete One Character, Cancel Conversion	Delete One Character			Delete Code/ One Character
 Long Press	Delete before or after cursor				
	Re-convert <sup>6</sup> Recover up to 64 deleted characters <sup>7</sup>	Recover up to 64 deleted characters <sup>7</sup>			
	OK				
	Phonetic Conversion	_____			_____
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion	_____			_____

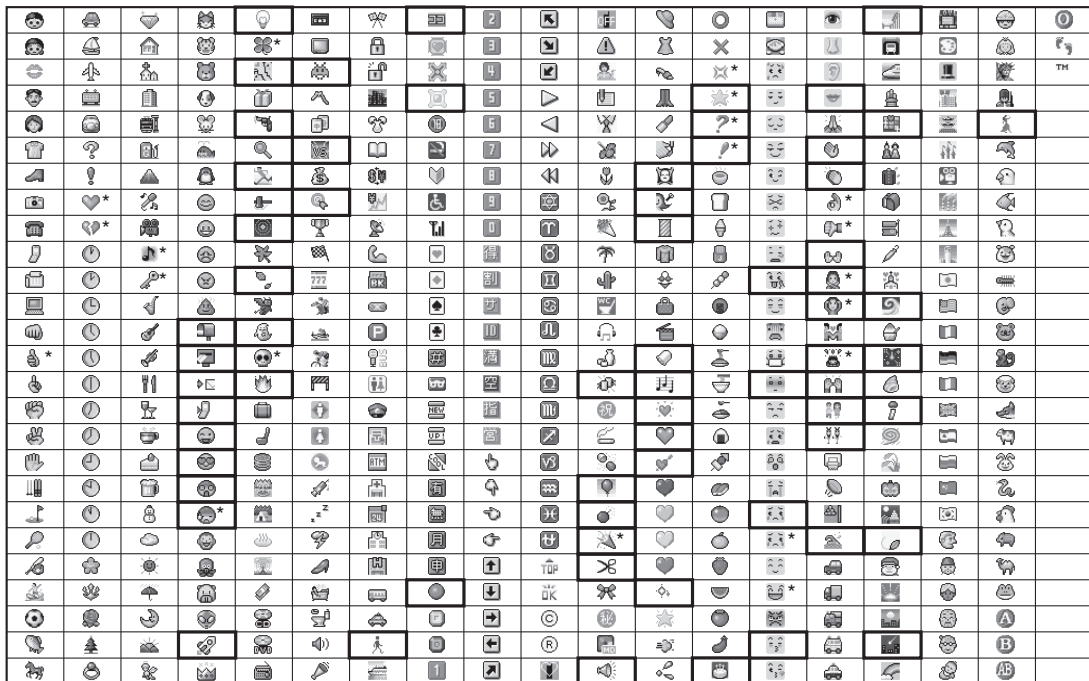
<sup>4</sup>Cursor moves up except during conversion.

<sup>5</sup>Cursor moves down except during conversion.

<sup>6</sup>Press immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them. (Not available for Arrange Mail.)

<sup>7</sup>Press once for each character to recover immediately after deletion. (Not available for Arrange Mail or after using (Long Press).)

# Pictogram List





**Note** ▶ Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

- Tip** ▶
- Pictograms in  are animated.
  - \*Animation View Pictogram (P.14-22).

# Pager Code List



- Blanks indicate no entry.
- Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press  to switch immediately after character entry.

## Double-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		*1	
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#	Space		*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん			6	7	8	9	0



## Double-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				,	。					

\*1 Press   to insert line breaks (in mail message text, Notepad, etc.).

\*2 Press   to toggle between upper and lower case modes.

## Single-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&		*1	
	8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#	Space		*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン			6	7	8	9	0

## Single-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0				,	。					







First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit																									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																
363											392	粘	乃	之	莖	惱	濃	納	能	424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	警	茂	篋	偏	奕	449																												
364	槌	追	痛	通	椽	津	墜	椎	393	腦	膿	農	規	蜜	惱	濃	納	能	425	片	編	編	邊	返	遍	便	勉	婉	弁	450	愉	愈	油	癒	優	優	優	友	幽																				
365	漬	拓	瓜	吊	綉	樺	樺	樺	393											426	鞭										451	悠	憂	愉	愉	優	優	優	友	幽																			
366	孀	瓜	瓜	吊	綉	樺	樺	樺	394											426											452	祐	裕	誘	遊	遊	遊	遊	遊	夕																			
366									395											426											452																												
366									396											426											452																												
367	刺	貞	堤	定	亭	帝	低	偵	397										428											452																													
368	梯	抵	提	提	庭	庭	庭	庭	398										429											453																													
369	艇	訂	蹄	蹄	蹄	蹄	蹄	蹄	399										430											454																													
370	邱	鄧	鄧	鄧	鄧	鄧	鄧	鄧	400										431											455																													
371	邱	鄧	鄧	鄧	鄧	鄧	鄧	鄧	401										432											456																													
372	鐵	典	典	典	典	典	典	典	402										433											456																													
373	軫	點	點	點	點	點	點	點	403										434											456																													
									404										435											457																													
373									405										436											458																													
374	堵	途	屠	徒	斗	渡	兎	吐	405										436											458																													
375	賭	途	屠	徒	斗	渡	兎	吐	406										437											459																													
376	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	407										438											460																													
377	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	408										439											461																													
378	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	409										440											462																													
379	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	410										440											463																													
381	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	411										441											464																													
382	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	412										441											465																													
383	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	413										442											466																													
384	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	414										442											467																													
385	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	415										442											468																													
386	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	途	415										444											470																													
386									416										444											470																													
387									417										444											471																													
388									418										444											472																													
388									419										445											473																													
388									420										446											474																													
389									421										447											475																													
390									422										447											476																													
390									422										448											476																													
391									423										449											476																													







# Specifications

## ■ SoftBank 816SH

<b>Weight</b>	Approximately 93 g
<b>Continuous Talk Time</b>	Approximately 230 minutes (3G) Approximately 230 minutes (GSM)
<b>Continuous Standby Time (Slider closed)</b>	Approximately 300 hours (3G) Approximately 290 hours (GSM)
<b>Continuous Video Call Talk Time</b>	Approximately 140 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)
<b>Charging Time (power off)</b>	AC Charger: Approximately 140 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 140 minutes
<b>Dimensions (W x H x D)</b>	Approximately 48 x 101 x 15 mm (Slider closed, without protruding parts)
<b>Maximum Output</b>	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Values above were calculated with battery installed.

- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if signal is weak.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with Slider closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).
- Talk Time/Standby Time decreases with frequent use of Display/Keypad backlights.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may decrease when an S! Application is active.
- Talk Time/Standby Time decreases with handset use in poor signal conditions (**P.1-10** "Battery Time").
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

## ■ AC Charger

<b>Power Source</b>	AC 100V-240V, 50/60 Hz
<b>Power Consumption</b>	13VA
<b>Output Voltage/Current</b>	DC 5.4V/700 mA
<b>Charging Temperature</b>	5°C to 35°C
<b>Dimensions (W x H x D)</b>	Approximately 51 x 48 x 20 mm (without protruding parts, cord)
<b>Cord Length</b>	Approximately 1.5 m

## ■ Battery

<b>Voltage</b>	3.7V
<b>Battery Type</b>	Lithium-ion
<b>Capacity</b>	800 mAh
<b>Dimensions (W x H x D)</b>	Approximately 35.2 x 54.4 x 4.0 mm (without protruding parts)

## Memory List

Messaging	
<b>Received Msg.</b>	Approximately 5 MB or 1,000 messages
<b>Drafts</b>	Approximately 3 MB <sup>1</sup>
<b>Templates</b>	Approximately 50 MB <sup>2</sup>
<b>Sent Messages</b>	Approximately 3 MB or 500 messages <sup>1</sup>
<b>Unsent Messages</b>	Approximately 3 MB <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Drafts, Sent Messages and Unsent Messages share memory.

<sup>2</sup>Shared with S! Appli Library and Data Folder.

S! Applications	
<b>S! Appli</b>	Approximately 50 MB* (100 items) on handset

\*Shared with Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder.

Data Folder	
<b>Data Folder</b>	Approximately 50 MB*

\*Shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library.

# Index

## Numbers

- 3D Pictogram .....14-23
- 3G.....2-15

## A

- AC Charger.....x, 1-13
- Accessories ..... x
- Add New Member (Chat Folder) ....14-30
- Add, Edit & Delete (Networks).....10-11
- After-Sales Services.....19-36
- Alarms .....12-10
  - Alarm Options .....12-10
  - Alarm Settings .....12-11
  - Alarm Volume .....12-11
  - Assign Tone/Video.....12-10
  - Canceling .....12-12
  - Custom Screen.....12-11
  - Deleting .....12-13
  - Duration .....12-11
  - For Manner Mode.....12-11
  - Link To World Clk .....12-11
  - Reactivating.....12-12
  - Snooze ..... 12-11, 12-12
  - Stopping .....12-12
  - Subject .....12-10
  - Vibration .....12-11
- All Calls .....2-12
- Answer Phone..... 2-8, 2-17

- Activating.....2-8
- Answer Time .....2-9
- Canceling .....2-8
- Volume .....2-9
- Answer Phone (Mode Settings) .....9-4
- Attach File .....14-6
- Auto Answer .....9-24
- Auto Focus.....6-4

## B

- Backlight (Display/Keypad) .....9-12
- Battery .....x, 1-9
- Battery Disposal.....1-12
- Battery Strength .....1-11
- Black List .....13-8
- Bluetooth®.....10-6
  - All File Transfer (sending).....10-9
  - Authorisation Code.....10-7
  - Connecting to Paired Devices .....10-8
  - Connection .....10-7
  - Connection requests .....10-9
  - Device Name .....10-10
  - Device Search .....10-8
  - Handsfree Setting .....10-10
  - My Device Details.....10-7
  - One File Transfer (sending).....10-9
  - Paired Devices .....10-8
  - Settings .....10-10

- Sound Output.....10-10
- Switch On/Off.....10-7
- Timeout .....10-10
- Transferring files.....10-9
- Visibility .....10-9
- BookSurfing®.....17-5

## C

- Calculator.....12-14
- Calendar (schedule).....12-2
  - Alarm Settings.....12-6
  - All Appointments .....12-7
  - All This 2Months.....12-7
  - All This Month/Up to Last Month ...12-7
  - All This Week/Up to Last Week....12-7
  - Assign Tone/Video .....12-5
  - Calendar Options .....12-5
  - Category .....12-4
  - Default View .....12-2
  - Deleting entries .....12-7
  - Duration.....12-5
  - Edit.....12-7
  - Editing entries .....12-7
  - Format.....9-16
  - Location.....12-4
  - Memory Status.....12-6
  - Opening Calendar.....12-2
  - Opening entries.....12-6



Repeat.....	12-5	Anti-flicker.....	6-15	<b>Center Access Code .....</b>	<b>1-24</b>
Saving entries.....	12-4	Auto Save .....	6-17	<b>Change Menu.....</b>	<b>1-21</b>
Secret.....	12-5	Auto Shut-off .....	6-2	<b>Change to Bcc.....</b>	<b>14-5</b>
Set Colour .....	12-3	Camera Effects.....	6-12	<b>Change to Cc.....</b>	<b>14-5</b>
Set Holiday .....	12-3	Capturing Still Images .....	6-7	<b>Change to To .....</b>	<b>14-5</b>
Stamp .....	12-3	Continuous Shoot.....	6-11	<b>Character Code .....</b>	<b>3-5</b>
Stopping Alarm.....	12-5	Display Indicators .....	6-15	<b>Character Code List .....</b>	<b>19-14</b>
This Appointment/All This Day .....	12-7	Exposure .....	6-16	<b>Charger .....</b>	<b>xvii, xix, 1-9</b>
Unlock Temporarily .....	12-6	Focus Lock .....	6-4	<b>Charging .....</b>	<b>1-9</b>
<b>Call Barring .....</b>	<b>13-6</b>	Focus Setting .....	6-15	<b>Circle Talk .....</b>	<b>18-8</b>
<b>Call Costs .....</b>	<b>2-14</b>	Image Settings .....	6-16	Accepting requests.....	18-10
Checking .....	2-14	Internal Camera/External Camera .....	6-3, 6-17	Call Circle Talk .....	2-12
Clear Costs.....	2-14	Key Assignments.....	6-3	Creating member list.....	18-10
Cost Units.....	2-14	Manual Focus.....	6-4	Deleting members/Groups .....	18-11
<b>Call Forwarding .....</b>	<b>13-3</b>	Microphone .....	6-16	Editing member list.....	18-11
<b>Call Log .....</b>	<b>2-12</b>	Opening Still Images .....	6-9	Editing members/Groups .....	18-11
<b>Call Settings.....</b>	<b>9-24, 9-25</b>	Panorama Picture.....	6-13	Incoming Calls.....	18-11
<b>Call Time Counter.....</b>	<b>9-26</b>	Picture Size .....	6-16	Initiating.....	2-12, 18-8
<b>Call Timers .....</b>	<b>2-13</b>	Picture/Video Quality.....	6-16	Loudspeaker .....	18-11
Checking .....	2-13	Playing Video .....	6-9	Rejoining .....	18-9
Clear Timers.....	2-13	Record Time/Size.....	6-16	Settings .....	18-11
<b>Call Waiting .....</b>	<b>13-5</b>	Recording Video.....	6-8	Window Description .....	18-9
Incoming Calls.....	13-5	Save Pictures to .....	6-17	<b>Clear Counter .....</b>	<b>9-24</b>
While Someone is on Hold .....	13-5	Save Videos to .....	6-17	<b>Close To .....</b>	<b>9-26</b>
<b>Caller ID.....</b>	<b>13-8</b>	SD VIDEO .....	6-9	<b>Conference Call.....</b>	<b>13-6</b>
Show My Number.....	13-8	Sending Images .....	6-14	Dial New Number .....	13-6
<b>Caller Voice .....</b>	<b>2-11</b>	Shooting Options.....	6-15	Multi Party .....	13-6
<b>Calling from Outside Japan.....</b>	<b>2-16</b>	Shutter Click.....	6-2	Swap Call .....	13-6
<b>Calls (placing/ending) .....</b>	<b>2-2</b>	Shutter Sound .....	6-15	<b>Content Key .....</b>	<b>1-7</b>
<b>Camera .....</b>	<b>6-2</b>	Video Encode.....	6-16	<b>Content Search.....</b>	<b>i</b>
Add Frame.....	6-12			<b>Correction (Picture Editor).....</b>	<b>8-13</b>

<b>Cost Units</b> .....	2-14	<b>Digital Zoom</b> .....	6-3	Reset Settings.....	11-7
<b>Countdown Timer</b> .....	12-18	<b>Display</b> .....	1-6, 9-4	<b>Drive Mode</b> .....	2-17, 9-2
<b>Country Codes</b> .....	9-25	Backlight.....	9-12	<b>E</b>	
Adding .....	9-25	Caller Display .....	9-13	<b>Earpiece Volume</b> .....	2-10, 9-25
Changing .....	9-25	Clock/Calendar.....	9-6	<b>e-Book Viewer</b> .....	17-4
Deleting .....	9-25	CLS Disp. Time .....	9-12	Deleting folders/files.....	17-5
<b>Custom Screens</b> .....	9-9	Dial Number .....	9-13	Details .....	17-5
Custom Screen Keys.....	9-10	Display Saving.....	9-12	Downloading e-Books .....	17-4
Downloading.....	9-9	Font Settings .....	9-5	Moving files .....	17-5
Setup.....	9-10	Greeting Message.....	9-13	New Folder.....	17-5
<b>Customer Service</b> .....	19-37	Light Settings .....	9-12	Reading Books.....	17-4
<b>Customizing Handset Modes</b> .....	9-4	Settings .....	9-4, 9-13	Reading Dictionaries .....	17-4
<b>Customizing Handset Responses</b> ....	9-2	Show Indicators.....	9-13	Renaming folders/files.....	17-5
Any Key Answer .....	9-3	Show Operator Name.....	9-13	Switch Folders.....	17-5
Event Light .....	9-3	System Graphics.....	9-5	<b>e-Books (Japanese)</b> .....	17-4
Status Light .....	9-3	Wallpaper .....	9-4	<b>Emergency Calls</b> .....	2-20
Vibration .....	9-3	<b>Display Call Cost</b> .....	9-26	Handset restrictions .....	2-20
Volume .....	9-2	<b>Display Indicators</b> .....	1-6	<b>Emergency Location Report</b> .....	2-20
<b>Customizing Normal Mode</b> .....	9-2	<b>Document Viewer</b> .....	12-16	<b>Encode</b> .....	11-5
<b>D</b>		Key Assignments.....	12-17	<b>Engaged Call Operations</b> .....	2-10
<b>Data Counter</b> .....	9-24	Loupe .....	12-17	<b>English</b> .....	9-12
<b>Data Folder</b> .....	8-2	<b>Download Dictionary</b> .....	3-9	<b>Entertainment</b> .....	17-1
Details .....	8-3	Acquire .....	3-9	<b>Estimated Hours of Use</b> .....	1-10
Memory Status .....	8-2	Cancel .....	3-9	<b>Event Light (Mode Settings)</b> .....	9-4
Switching File List View .....	8-3	Info .....	3-9	<b>Expenses Memo</b> .....	12-21
<b>Date &amp; Time</b> .....	9-15	<b>DPOF</b> .....	11-6	Add New Expense.....	12-21
<b>Date Format</b> .....	9-16	Add Date .....	11-7	Change Amount .....	12-21
<b>Datum On/Off</b> .....	10-11	Check Settings .....	11-7	Change Category .....	12-21
<b>Daylight Saving</b> .....	9-16, 12-13	For All Pictures .....	11-7	Deleting entries .....	12-21
<b>Dialled Numbers</b> .....	2-12	Index Print .....	11-7	Editing entries .....	12-21
		Number of Copies .....	11-7		

Totals .....	12-21
<b>F</b>	
<b>Face Arrange</b> .....	<b>8-12</b>
<b>Face Recognition</b> .....	<b>9-19</b>
Activating & Canceling .....	9-20
Conductor Setting.....	9-22
Link to Slider.....	9-21
Opening Contact Information .....	9-21
Report .....	9-22
Saving Portraits .....	9-20
Security Level .....	9-21
Settings .....	9-21
Unlocking.....	9-21
User Registration.....	9-19
<b>Familiar Usability</b> .....	<b>9-11</b>
Canceling .....	9-11
Downloading.....	9-11
Setup.....	9-11
<b>File Format (Picture Editor)</b> .....	<b>8-13</b>
<b>Files (copying)</b> .....	<b>8-7</b>
<b>Files (moving)</b> .....	<b>8-7</b>
<b>Files (opening)</b> .....	<b>8-3</b>
<b>Files (sorting)</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>
<b>Files (switching list view)</b> .....	<b>8-3</b>
<b>Files/folders (deleting)</b> .....	<b>8-6</b>
<b>Files/folders (managing)</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>
<b>Files/folders (renaming)</b> .....	<b>8-6</b>
<b>Flash®</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>
<b>Folders (adding)</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>
<b>Font Settings</b> .....	<b>9-5</b>

<b>Frame (Picture Editor)</b> .....	<b>8-13</b>
<b>Function List</b> .....	<b>19-8</b>

## G

<b>GSM</b> .....	<b>2-15</b>
------------------	-------------

## H

<b>Handset</b> .....	<b>1-4</b>
<b>Handset Code</b> .....	<b>1-24</b>
Changing.....	9-17
<b>Handset Locks</b> .....	<b>9-17</b>
<b>Handset Menus</b> .....	<b>1-17</b>
<b>Handset Security</b> .....	<b>9-17</b>
<b>Handsfree devices</b> .....	<b>10-9</b>
<b>Hide My ID</b> .....	<b>2-2</b>
<b>History Lock</b> .....	<b>9-18</b>
<b>Hold</b> .....	<b>2-10</b>
<b>Hot Status</b> .....	<b>18-3</b>
Answer Status .....	18-7
Cancellation notice.....	18-6
Changing My Status.....	18-3
Connection Setting.....	18-4
Editing member list.....	18-6
Moving Members.....	18-6
Notification List.....	18-7
Opening.....	18-5
Registering by sending requests .....	18-4
Registering from received requests .....	18-5
Registering Members .....	18-4
Registration Release .....	18-6
Rejection notice.....	18-6

Renaming Groups .....	18-6
Request Reply.....	18-7
Settings .....	18-7
Standby Window .....	18-4
Status Setting.....	18-7
Status Update .....	18-7
Window Description .....	18-5
<b>Hour Minder</b> .....	<b>12-19</b>
Assign Tone/Video .....	12-19
Custom Screen .....	12-19
Duration.....	12-20
For Manner Mode.....	12-20
Hour Minder Options.....	12-19
Link To World Clk .....	12-20
Vibration .....	12-20
Volume .....	12-20

## I

<b>In-Car Charger</b> .....	<b>1-14</b>
<b>Incoming calls (answering)</b> .....	<b>2-6</b>
<b>Incoming Calls (Call Barring)</b> .....	<b>13-6</b>
Canceling .....	13-7
Setting.....	13-7
<b>Information</b> .....	<b>2-7</b>
Opening items .....	2-7
Opening list manually.....	2-7
<b>Infrared</b> .....	<b>10-2</b>
All File Transfer (receiving).....	10-5
All File Transfer (sending) .....	10-4
Authorisation Code.....	10-2
One File Transfer (receiving).....	10-5

- Receiving files ..... 10-4
  - Receiving Folders..... 10-5
  - Sending files..... 10-4
  - Transfer Options ..... 10-2
  - Transferable Files ..... 10-3
  - Initial Setup (Network Information) ... 1-15**
  - Internal Antenna ..... 1-5**
  - International calls (Int'l Prefix) ..... 9-25**
  - International calls (placing) ..... 2-3**
  - International calls (Quick Operation).... 2-3**
  - International calls (settings)..... 9-25**
  - IP Service Setting ..... 9-18**
- K**
- Key Assignments ..... 1-22, 19-10**
  - Keypad Lock ..... 1-16**
    - Activating/canceling..... 1-16
    - Link to Slider..... 9-18
  - Keypad Tones ..... 9-14**
- L**
- Language ..... 9-12**
  - Large Font Menu..... 1-23**
    - Activating ..... 1-23
    - Canceling ..... 1-23
  - Link to Slider (Keypad Lock) ..... 9-18**
  - Link to Sound ..... 9-3**
  - Linked Information ..... 7-6**
  - Live Monitor (Japanese) ..... 15-14**
    - Automatic Update ..... 15-15
    - Deleting items..... 15-15
  - Indicators..... 15-14
  - Opening Information..... 15-15
  - Registering with items ..... 15-14
  - Reset Live Monitor ..... 15-14
  - S! Loop List (indicators) ..... 15-14
  - S! Loop List (registering with items)
    - ..... 15-14
    - Window Description ..... 15-14
  - Location Info ..... 10-11**
  - Location Property..... 10-11**
  - Loudspeaker ..... 2-10**
- M**
- Mail & Web Extensions ..... 3-5**
  - Main Menu..... 1-17**
  - Manner mode ..... 2-17**
    - Activating/canceling..... 2-18
  - Manufacture Number ..... 15-19**
  - Mass Storage..... 11-8**
  - Max Cost ..... 9-24**
  - Media Player ..... 7-2**
    - AAC Files (Music Player)..... 7-3
    - Add to Playlist..... 7-11
    - Adding Text Effects..... 7-14
    - Additional Operations ..... 7-9
    - Bit rate (Music Player) ..... 7-4
    - Change Order ..... 7-11
    - Delete ..... 7-11
    - Details ..... 7-9
    - Edit ..... 7-11
    - Fast forward/rewind ..... 7-7
  - Music Search ..... 7-3
  - Obtaining Music/Video ..... 7-3
  - Pause ..... 7-7
  - Playback..... 7-6
  - Playback Operations ..... 7-7
  - Playback Settings..... 7-8, 7-9
  - Playlists ..... 7-10
  - Sampling frequency (Music Player) .... 7-4
  - Sound Effects ..... 7-8
  - Sound Output..... 7-9
  - Subtitles ..... 7-12
  - Supported File Formats ..... 7-3
  - Time Search..... 7-7
  - Toggle Display Size..... 7-7
  - Volume Control..... 7-7
  - Memory Card ..... 11-2**
    - Backup ..... 11-4
    - Format Card ..... 11-3
    - Inserting/removing ..... 11-2
    - Restore..... 11-6
  - Memory List..... 19-21**
  - Memory Status ..... 8-2**
  - Merge Panorama ..... 8-13**
  - Messaging..... 14-2**
    - Animation View ..... 14-22
    - Anti Spam Measures..... 14-32
    - Arrange Mail..... 14-8
    - Arrange Mail (previewing) ..... 14-9
    - Assign Tone (Feeling Mail) ..... 14-17
    - Attach File (images) ..... 14-6
    - Attach File (sounds) ..... 14-6

Auto Delete.....	14-32	Light .....	14-17	Picture Appearance.....	14-33
Auto Play File .....	14-34	Mailbox Volume .....	14-20	Placing calls (using linked info) .....	14-27
Auto Resend.....	14-14	Memory Status .....	14-20	Priority.....	14-11
Background Colour (3D Pictogram) .....	14-23	Message Centre.....	14-34	Quick Reply Set. ....	14-32
Canceling Outgoing Message .....	14-3	Message Contents .....	14-18	Quiz.....	14-12, 14-16
Capturing & attaching images .....	14-7	Message Details.....	14-19	Received Msg. View.....	14-32
Character Entry Limits.....	14-3	Message DL (Abroad).....	14-33	Recording & attaching sounds .....	14-7
Char-code.....	14-22, 14-34	Message DL (Japan).....	14-33	Remote Forward .....	14-19, 14-20
Chat Folder.....	14-30	Message List View .....	14-18	Remote Fwd. Action.....	14-11
Classify.....	14-29	Message Notice .....	14-32	Reply.....	14-23
Customizing Handset Address.....	14-2	Messages (checking) .....	14-21	Reply All.....	14-23
Delete (Server Mail) .....	14-19, 14-20	Messages (copying content) .....	14-22	Reply Request.....	14-12, 14-15
Delete All (Server Mail) .....	14-20	Messages (creating).....	2-12, 14-3	Reply To Settings .....	14-13, 14-33
Delete NG.....	14-12	Messages (deleting).....	14-25	Retrieve All Mails .....	14-20
Delivery Failure.....	14-3	Messages (forwarding).....	14-24	Retrieve New Msg. ....	14-16
Delivery Report .....	14-11, 14-32	Messages (protecting).....	14-24	Retrieving Mail List.....	14-19
Delivery Report (opening) .....	14-16	Messages (receiving).....	14-15	Ringtone volume .....	2-17
Display Effect (3D Pictogram) .....	14-23	Messages (receiving calls during creation) .....	14-3	S! Mail .....	14-2
Display Speed (3D Pictogram).....	14-23	Messages (receiving out of Standby) .....	14-15	S! Mail (retrieving all Server Mail) .....	14-19
Editing/Deleting Recipients .....	14-5	Messages (sending).....	14-3	S! Mail (retrieving remaining portion) .....	14-19
Expiry Time .....	14-12, 14-34	Messages (sending from Sent Messages).....	14-3	S! Mail (sending).....	14-4
Feeling Mail .....	14-10	Messages (sending from Unsent Messages).....	14-26	S! Mail Notice .....	14-18
Feeling Mail (customizing handset response) .....	14-17	Messaging Folder Contents .....	14-17	S! Mail Settings .....	14-33
Feeling Mail (receiving) .....	14-16	Messaging Folders.....	14-20	Save Address.....	14-26
Files (attaching).....	14-7	Messaging Settings.....	14-11	Save to Phone Book .....	14-26
Folders (adding) .....	14-28	Move to Folder .....	14-29	Saving attachments.....	14-27
Folders (deleting) .....	14-28	My Folders.....	14-29	Scroll Unit.....	14-33
Font Size .....	14-22			Secret Folder.....	14-32
Forward NG .....	14-12			Selecting Multiple Messages.....	14-22
Idle Screen Info. (Feeling Mail).....	14-17			Send File Settings.....	14-34





<b>Ringer Output</b> .....	9-15	Starting .....	16-2	Open Images .....	12-24
<b>Ringtone/Ringvideo</b> .....	9-2	Synchronization .....	16-3	Open Properties .....	12-24
<b>Roaming</b> .....	2-15	Vibration .....	16-5	Place Calls .....	12-23
<b>S</b>					
<b>S! Address Book</b> .....	4-15	<b>S! Cast (Japanese)</b> .....	17-2	Play Melodies .....	12-24
Auto Sync Settings .....	4-18	Back Issues .....	17-2	Quote & Send Mail .....	12-23
Backup .....	4-17	Copy Text .....	17-3	Save to Data Folder .....	12-23
Service Usage Outline .....	4-15	Font Size .....	17-3	Save to Phone Book .....	12-23
Synchronization .....	4-17	Get Latest Contents .....	17-2	Saving .....	12-23
View Log .....	4-18	Opening information .....	17-2	Scan Code .....	12-23
<b>S! Applications</b> .....	16-2	Page Information .....	17-3	Scanned Results .....	12-24
Application Volume .....	16-5	Save Items .....	17-3	Scanning during Text Entry .....	12-23
Backlight .....	16-5	Scroll Unit .....	17-3	Send Mail .....	12-23
Blink .....	16-5	Service Registration & Content		Use for System Graphics .....	12-24
Calls & Alarms .....	16-6	Subscription .....	17-2	Using Scan Results .....	12-23
Deleting .....	16-5	Using Information .....	17-3	Wallpaper .....	12-24
Details .....	16-2	<b>S! Loop (Japanese)</b> .....	18-2	<b>Scan Card</b> .....	12-28
Display Messages .....	19-6	<b>S! Town (Japanese)</b> .....	18-2	Anti-flicker .....	12-29
Downloading .....	16-3	S! Town Library .....	18-2	Exposure .....	12-29
Managing .....	16-4	<b>Safety Precautions</b> .....	xi	Focus .....	12-29
Memory All Clear .....	16-6	<b>SAR</b> .....	xxix	Focus Lock .....	12-29
Memory Status .....	16-2	<b>Save and Send</b> .....	6-14	Help .....	12-29
Move to Card .....	16-5	<b>Scan Barcode</b> .....	12-22	Saving to Phone Book .....	12-28
Permission .....	16-4	Access Internet Sites .....	12-23	<b>Scan Text</b> .....	12-26
Resuming .....	16-3	Anti-flicker .....	12-23	Anti-flicker .....	12-27
S! Appli Request .....	18-12	Continuous Mode .....	12-23	Continue Part .....	12-27
Screensaver (activating/canceling) .....	16-4	Copy Text .....	12-24	Exposure .....	12-27
Screensaver Activation Time .....	16-6	Exposure .....	12-23	Focus .....	12-27
Set to Default .....	16-6	Focus .....	12-23	Focus Lock .....	12-27
Settings .....	16-5	Focus Lock .....	12-23	Help .....	12-27
		Help .....	12-23	Reversed Text .....	12-27
		Open Barcode .....	12-24	Scan More .....	12-27



Scan Operations.....	12-27
Scanning during Text Entry .....	12-27
Text Scanner.....	12-27
<b>SD Local Contents</b> .....	<b>11-3</b>
<b>Secret entries</b> .....	<b>9-23</b>
<b>Security Codes</b> .....	<b>1-24</b>
<b>Select Network</b> .....	<b>10-10</b>
<b>Self-timer</b> .....	<b>6-10</b>
<b>Set as Ring Video</b> .....	<b>8-8</b>
<b>Set as Ringtone</b> .....	<b>8-8</b>
<b>Set as Wallpaper (Data Folder)</b> .....	<b>8-7</b>
<b>Set Date/Time</b> .....	<b>9-15</b>
<b>Set Preferred (Networks)</b> .....	<b>10-10</b>
<b>Set Time Zone</b> .....	<b>9-16, 12-13</b>
<b>Sharp Space Town</b> .....	<b>15-10</b>
<b>Shortcuts</b> .....	<b>1-18</b>
Assigning.....	1-18
Moving.....	1-18
Opening menu.....	1-18
Set to Default.....	1-18
<b>Show My ID</b> .....	<b>2-2</b>
<b>Show Secret Data</b> .....	<b>9-23</b>
<b>Side Keys</b> .....	<b>ii</b>
<b>Simple Menu</b> .....	<b>1-21</b>
Activating.....	1-21
Canceling .....	1-21
Operations.....	1-22
<b>Slide Show</b> .....	<b>8-4</b>
<b>Slider Closed</b> .....	<b>1-8</b>
<b>Slider Open</b> .....	<b>1-8</b>
<b>Slider Positions</b> .....	<b>1-8</b>

<b>Slides</b> .....	<b>14-21</b>
<b>Small Light</b> .....	<b>1-11</b>
<b>Softkeys</b> .....	<b>1-17</b>
<b>Software Update</b> .....	<b>19-2</b>
Scheduled Update.....	19-3
Update Result .....	19-3
<b>Sound Adjuster</b> .....	<b>9-15</b>
<b>Sound Settings</b> .....	<b>9-14</b>
<b>Space</b> .....	<b>3-4</b>
<b>Specifications</b> .....	<b>19-20</b>
<b>Speed Dial List</b> .....	<b>4-13</b>
Clear All.....	4-14
Delete.....	4-14
Saving Phone Numbers .....	4-13
Speed Dial.....	4-14
<b>Split Picture</b> .....	<b>8-14</b>
<b>Stamp (Picture Editor)</b> .....	<b>8-11</b>
<b>Standby</b> .....	<b>1-15, 1-17</b>
<b>Standby Window (Japanese)</b> .....	<b>1-19, 9-6</b>
Add News Content .....	9-8, 9-9
Assign Bookmark .....	9-8
Assign Member .....	9-8, 9-9
Assign Shortcut.....	9-8
Calendar mode.....	9-7
Change Member Icons .....	9-8, 9-9
Change Templates .....	9-8
Communication mode .....	9-7
Customizing .....	9-8
Delete Member Icons .....	9-8
Delete Members.....	9-9
Delete Shortcuts/Bookmarks .....	9-8

Headline mode.....	9-6
Move Members .....	9-8, 9-9
My Status Settings .....	9-8, 9-9
News Speed .....	9-8
Shortcut mode.....	9-6
Target News .....	9-8
<b>Stopwatch</b> .....	<b>12-17</b>
<b>Streaming</b> .....	<b>15-13</b>
<b>SVG Files</b> .....	<b>8-4</b>
<b>Symbols</b> .....	<b>3-4</b>
<b>System Graphics</b> .....	<b>9-5</b>
<b>System Sounds</b> .....	<b>9-14</b>

## T

<b>Tasks</b> .....	<b>12-8</b>
All Comp. Tasks .....	12-9
All Tasks .....	12-9
Deleting entries .....	12-9
Edit.....	12-9
Editing entries .....	12-9
Memory Status.....	12-9
Opening entries.....	12-9
Saving entries .....	12-8
Task Options .....	12-8
This Task.....	12-9
Unlock Temporarily.....	12-9
<b>Text Entry</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>
Adding * .....	3-4
Adding ° .....	3-4
Alphanumerics .....	3-4
Copy.....	3-8

Cut.....	3-8	<b>Time Correction.....</b>	<b>9-16</b>	Hold.....	5-4
Deleting characters .....	3-8	<b>Time Format.....</b>	<b>9-16</b>	Hold Guidance Pict .....	5-5
Deleting characters on and after cursor .....	3-8	<b>Touch Tones.....</b>	<b>2-11</b>	Incoming Picture .....	5-5
Editing Characters.....	3-8	<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>19-4</b>	Initiating/answering .....	5-3
Emoticons.....	3-5			Loudspeaker .....	5-2, 5-4, 5-5
Entering Characters .....	3-3	<b>U</b>		Mirror Image.....	5-4
Font Size .....	3-6	<b>URL Setting.....</b>	<b>10-11</b>	Mute Microphone .....	5-5
Help.....	3-3	<b>USB Charge (Japanese).....</b>	<b>10-12</b>	Outgoing Picture .....	5-5
Hiragana.....	3-3	<b>User Dictionary.....</b>	<b>3-3, 3-9</b>	Remote Monitor.....	5-6
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion .....	3-6	Deleting entries .....	3-9	Settings.....	5-5
Jump to.....	3-6	Editing entries .....	3-9	Switch Images.....	5-4
Kanji .....	3-3	New Entry.....	3-9	Transfer Audio .....	5-4
Katakana .....	3-3	<b>USIM Card .....</b>	<b>1-2, 4-3</b>	Window Description .....	5-2
Key Assignments.....	19-10	About USIM Card .....	1-2	<b>Voice Output .....</b>	<b>2-10</b>
Line Break .....	3-4	USIM Card Installation .....	1-3	<b>Voice Recorder .....</b>	<b>12-15</b>
One Hiragana Word Call .....	3-7	USIM PINs .....	1-3	Playback.....	12-16
One-Hiragana Conversion.....	3-7	<b>Using This Manual.....</b>	<b>ii</b>	Recording.....	12-15
Paste .....	3-8	<b>Utility Software .....</b>	<b>x</b>	Recording Setting.....	12-16
Paste List.....	3-8			Save Recording To.....	12-16
Phone Book (quoting information) .....	3-6	<b>V</b>		<b>Vicemail.....</b>	<b>13-4</b>
Phonetic Conversion .....	3-6	<b>Vibration.....</b>	<b>2-17</b>	Call Voicemail.....	13-4
Previous Usage (conversion) .....	3-4	<b>Video Call .....</b>	<b>5-2</b>	Initiating/Canceling.....	13-4
Quick Conversion .....	3-7	Anti-flicker.....	5-4	Missed Call Notification.....	13-5
Recovering Deleted Characters .....	3-8	Auto Focus .....	5-4	<b>Volume (ringtone).....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
Reset Learning.....	3-7	Backlight.....	5-5	<b>Volume (System Sounds) .....</b>	<b>9-14</b>
Set Low Priority.....	3-7	Camera Picture .....	5-4, 5-5		
Small Kana.....	3-4	Digital Zoom .....	5-4	<b>W</b>	
Switching Entry Modes.....	3-2	Enable/Disable DTMF .....	5-4	<b>Wallpaper .....</b>	<b>9-4</b>
Undo.....	3-6	Engaged Video Call Operations.....	5-4	<b>Warning Signs .....</b>	<b>19-6</b>
		Exposure .....	5-4	<b>Warning Tone.....</b>	<b>9-14</b>
		Help.....	5-4	<b>Warranty.....</b>	<b>19-36</b>

<b>Weather</b> .....	<b>17-3</b>
<b>Weather Indicator</b> .....	<b>17-3</b>
Manual Update .....	17-3
Settings .....	17-3
<b>World Clock</b> .....	<b>12-13</b>

## Y

<b>Yahoo! Keitai</b> .....	<b>15-2</b>
Activating/Canceling Pointer Navigation .....	15-5
Advanced Features .....	15-10
Basic Operations .....	15-5
Bookmarks .....	15-10
Bookmarks (editing) .....	15-11
Bookmarks (editing titles) .....	15-11
Bookmarks (saving & opening) .....	15-10
Bookmarks (using folders) .....	15-11
Change to PC Browser .....	15-3
Char-code .....	15-9
Cookies .....	15-19
Copy Text .....	15-8
Cursor .....	15-5
Delete Auth Info .....	15-18
Delete Cache .....	15-18
Delete Cookies .....	15-18
Details .....	15-9
Download to .....	15-18
Downloads .....	15-18
Enter URL .....	15-4
Flash® Menu .....	15-9
Flash® Restriction .....	15-19

Font Size .....	15-18
Function Shortcuts .....	15-7
Help .....	15-9
History (deleting) .....	15-4
History (using) .....	15-4
Initialized Browser .....	15-18
Input Memory .....	15-8
Jump to Bottom .....	15-3
Jump to Top .....	15-3
Keep Auth Info .....	15-19
Manufacture Number .....	15-19
Opening Main Menu .....	15-3
Page Browsing .....	15-6
Pointer .....	15-5
Reload .....	15-8
Reset Settings .....	15-18
Root Certificates .....	15-19
Save Items .....	15-12
Saved Pages .....	15-10
Saved Pages (editing) .....	15-11
Saved Pages (editing titles) .....	15-11
Saved Pages (saving & opening) .....	15-10
Script Settings .....	15-19
Scroll Bar .....	15-6
Scroll Unit .....	15-18
Scrolling Pages .....	15-6
Search .....	15-9
Secure Prompt .....	15-19
Security .....	15-2
Security Settings .....	15-19
Selecting Items .....	15-5

Send Referer .....	15-19
Send URL .....	15-4, 15-9
Speed Settings .....	15-5
SSL .....	15-2
Streaming .....	15-13
Streaming (Backlight) .....	15-13
Streaming (Display Size) .....	15-13
Streaming (Sound Effects) .....	15-13
Switch Browser .....	15-3
Switching Frames .....	15-6
Tab .....	15-7
Tabbed Browsing .....	15-6
Uploading Files .....	15-9
User Authentication .....	15-3
Using Linked Info (mail addresses) .....	15-12
Using Linked Info (URLs) .....	15-12
Viewing Single Frame .....	15-6
アドレス .....	15-10

## Objectives

### Backing Up

- Files..... 11-4
- Phone Book entries..... 4-17

### Canceling

- Alarms ..... 12-12
- Answer Phone ..... 2-8
- Call Barring (Incoming Calls)..... 13-7
- Call Barring (Outgoing Calls)..... 13-7
- Call Waiting ..... 13-5
- Download Dictionary ..... 3-9
- Keypad Lock..... 1-16
- Manner mode ..... 2-18
- Missed Call Notification ..... 13-5
- Offline Mode..... 2-19
- Password Lock ..... 9-17
- Password Lock (Face Recognition)..... 9-21
- Secret (Messaging folders) ..... 14-30
- Secret (Phone Book entries) ..... 4-7
- Secret (schedule entries) ..... 12-6
- Secret (tasks) ..... 12-9
- Show My Number..... 13-8
- Simple Menu ..... 1-21

### Changing

- Font Size ..... 3-6
- Handset Code ..... 9-17
- Handset mail address..... 14-2
- Mode settings ..... 9-4
- Network Password..... 13-7
- PINs..... 9-22

### Checking/Opening

- Battery Strength ..... 1-11
- Call Costs ..... 2-14
- Call Log ..... 2-12
- Call Time ..... 2-13
- Hot Status ..... 18-5
- Information ..... 2-7
- Information (Live Monitor) ..... 15-15
- Mailbox Volume ..... 14-20
- Memory Status (Messaging folders) ..... 14-20
- Memory Status (Phone Book) ..... 4-3
- My Details ..... 4-18
- Network Information ..... 10-11
- New messages..... 14-15
- Notepad..... 3-10
- Schedule entries ..... 12-6
- Sender/recipient details..... 14-21
- Status (Optional Services) ..... 13-2
- Update Result ..... 19-3
- Weather forecast..... 17-3

### Copying

- Files..... 8-7
- Message contents ..... 14-22
- Phone Book entries..... 4-10
- Scan results (Barcodes)..... 12-24
- Text..... 3-8
- Text (S! Cast)..... 17-3

### Deleting

- Alarm entries ..... 12-13
- Circle Talk members/Groups ..... 18-11

- Files/folders..... 8-6
- Messages..... 14-20, 14-25
- Music/video files..... 7-11
- My Details ..... 4-18
- Notepad entries..... 3-10
- Phone Book entries..... 4-10
- S! Applications ..... 16-5
- Schedule entries ..... 12-9
- Server Mail..... 14-20
- Tasks..... 12-9

### Editing

- Characters..... 3-8
- Phone Book entries..... 4-9
- User Dictionary entries..... 3-9

### Initiating

- Domestic calls ..... 2-2
- Emergency calls..... 2-20
- International calls ..... 2-3
- Video Calls..... 5-3

### Inserting/Removing

- Battery..... 1-12
- Memory Card ..... 11-2
- USIM Card ..... 1-3

### Opening/Showing

- Call Costs..... 9-26
- Call Time ..... 9-26
- Caller information ..... 9-13
- Clock ..... 9-6
- Data Folder ..... 8-2
- Network Information..... 10-11
- Schedule entries ..... 12-7

Shortcuts menu .....	1-18	Bluetooth® devices .....	10-8	Hour Minder .....	12-19
Standby Window .....	1-19, 9-6	Music .....	7-3	IP Service .....	9-18
<b>Playing</b>		Phone Book entries .....	4-9	Keypad Lock .....	1-16
Music/video .....	7-6	<b>Sending</b>		Location Info .....	10-11
Scanned images/melodies (Barcodes) .....	12-24	Manufacture Number .....	15-19	Manner mode .....	2-18
Voice files .....	12-16	S! Mail .....	14-4	Messaging .....	14-32
Voicemail messages .....	13-4	SMS .....	14-11	Modes .....	9-2
<b>Protecting</b>		URL .....	15-4, 15-9	Network .....	10-10
Call Log .....	9-18	<b>Setting</b>		Offline Mode .....	2-19
Mail records .....	9-18	Alarms .....	12-10	PC Site Browser .....	15-20
Messages .....	14-24	Answer Phone .....	2-8, 9-4	PIN Entry .....	9-22
Phone Book entries .....	4-7, 9-18	Anti Spam Measures .....	14-32	PINs .....	9-22
<b>Receiving</b>		Any Key Answer .....	9-3	Rejected Numbers .....	13-8
Complete messages .....	14-18	Backlight .....	9-12	S! Application .....	16-5
Feeling Mail .....	14-16	Bluetooth® .....	10-10	S! Mail .....	14-33
Messages .....	14-15	Calendar (Standby) .....	9-6	Screensaver .....	16-4
S! Cast information .....	17-2	Call Barring (Incoming Calls) .....	13-7	Show My Number .....	13-8
<b>Resetting/Formatting</b>		Call Barring (Outgoing Calls) .....	13-7	Simple Menu .....	1-21
Handset .....	9-23	Calls .....	9-24, 9-25	SMS .....	14-34
Memory Card .....	11-3	Clock (Standby) .....	9-6	Sound Output (Bluetooth®) .....	7-9
Mode Settings .....	9-2	Country Codes .....	9-24	Sounds .....	9-14
PC Site Browser .....	15-18	Custom Screen .....	9-10	Speed Dial List .....	4-13
S! Application .....	16-6	Date/time .....	9-15	System Sounds .....	9-14
Yahoo! Keitai .....	15-18	Display .....	9-4, 9-13	Time/date .....	9-15
<b>Saving</b>		Encode .....	11-5	Vibration .....	2-17, 9-4
Hot Status members .....	18-4	Event Light .....	9-4	Video Call .....	5-5
Notepad entries .....	3-10	Face Recognition .....	9-21	Volume (incoming communications) .....	9-4
Phone Book entries .....	4-4, 4-7	Familiar Usability .....	9-11	Volume (ringtones) .....	9-2
User Dictionary entries .....	3-9	Fonts .....	9-5	Wallpaper .....	9-4
<b>Searching</b>		Format (date, time or Calendar) .....	9-16	Weather Indicator .....	17-3
		Handset Security .....	9-17		

# Warranty & Service

## ■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- **Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.**
- **Read through contents and keep in a safe place.**
- **The warranty term is described in the warranty.**

## ■ After-Sales Services

See **P.19-4** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.19-37**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- **Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.**
- **Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.**

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.19-37**). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

## Note ►

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

# Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

## SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**  
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

## SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**  
(International charges apply.)

■ Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎ 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎ 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎ 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎ 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-250-113

# SoftBank 816SH Instruction Manual

October 2007, First Edition

**SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.**

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank shop.

**Model: SoftBank 816SH**

**Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION**



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク  
携帯電話・PDAのリサイクルにご協力を。

**Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:**

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.